

点金训练

教师用书

《点金训练》编写组 编

► 英语

选择性必修 第三册

配外研版



四川教育出版社

CONTENTS

目录

Unit 1 Face values

| | | |
|----------------|---|----|
| Section I | Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending | 2 |
| Section II | Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points | 6 |
| Section III | Using language | 11 |
| Section IV | Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending | 16 |
| Section V | Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points | 19 |
| 读后续写技能养成 | | 24 |

Unit 2 A life's work

| | | |
|----------------|---|----|
| Section I | Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending | 27 |
| Section II | Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points | 31 |
| Section III | Using language | 35 |
| Section IV | Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending | 40 |
| Section V | Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points | 44 |
| 读后续写技能养成 | | 56 |

Unit 3 War and peace

| | | |
|----------------|---|----|
| Section I | Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending | 59 |
| Section II | Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points | 63 |
| Section III | Using language | 68 |
| Section IV | Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending | 72 |
| Section V | Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points | 76 |
| 读后续写技能养成 | | 81 |



Unit 4 A glimpse of the future

| | | |
|---------------|---|-----|
| Section I | Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending | 84 |
| Section II | Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points | 88 |
| Section III | Using language | 92 |
| Section IV | Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending | 97 |
| Section V | Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points | 100 |
| 读后续写技能养成..... | | 112 |

Unit 5 Learning from nature

| | | |
|---------------|---|-----|
| Section I | Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending | 115 |
| Section II | Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points | 118 |
| Section III | Using language | 122 |
| Section IV | Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending | 128 |
| Section V | Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points | 132 |
| 读后续写技能养成..... | | 138 |

Unit 6 Nature in words

| | | |
|---------------|---|-----|
| Section I | Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending | 141 |
| Section II | Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points | 144 |
| Section III | Using language | 148 |
| Section IV | Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending | 156 |
| Section V | Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points | 160 |
| 读后续写技能养成..... | | 173 |

Unit 1 Face values

主题语境

人与自我——外表与内心的关系

| | |
|--------|--|
| 必背单词 | boost, pretend, identical, dormitory, overlook, bother, pill, acknowledge, assumption, saving, welfare, psychology, finding, novelist, comprehension, accent, motive |
| 重点表达 | a lack of, a desire for, be surprised at, boost one's confidence, from head to toe, leave an impression on, make an effort, compare... to..., attempt to do |
| 重点知识 | 1. as 引导状语从句 2. there 引起的完全倒装 3. 否定词置于句首引起的部分倒装 |
| 单元语法 | 主语从句 |
| 单元写作 | 文学作品简介 |
| 主题美文赏读 | <p>If you want to learn to be charming, you have to learn the art of politeness. Nobody likes someone who is rude and bad-tempered all the time, and if you are cordial (热情友好的) and polite to people around you, they will obviously appreciate your presence.</p> <p>Sincerity is the key to becoming charming. If you genuinely wish to win people over and appear charming in their eyes, you need to genuinely feel what you say to them.</p> <p>The most charming men and women have the ability to make people laugh. Everyone loves to be humorous as it can greatly remove the despair or sadness in everyone's lives.</p> <p>如果你想学着变得迷人,你就得学会礼貌的艺术。没有人喜欢总是粗鲁和坏脾气的人,而如果你对周围的人热情和礼貌,他们显然会感激你的存在。</p> <p>真诚是变得迷人的关键。如果你真的想赢得别人的好感,并且在他们眼中显得有魅力,你需要真诚地去感受你对他们说的话。</p> <p>最有魅力的男人和女人都有让人发笑的能力。每个人都喜欢幽默,因为它可以极大地消除每个人生活中的绝望或悲伤。</p> |

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. pretend *v.* 假装, 装作
2. bother *v.* (使) 苦恼
3. acknowledge *v.* 承认(某事属实或某情况存在)
4. identical *adj.* 完全相同的; 非常相似的
5. enlarge *v.* (使) 增大, 扩大
6. misjudge *v.* 对(人或情况) 判断错误
7. roommate *n.* (尤指大学里的) 室友
8. skinny *adj.* 极瘦的, 皮包骨的
9. boost *v.* 促进, 推动
10. dormitory *n.* 寝室
11. pill *n.* 药丸, 药片
12. a lack of 缺乏……
13. be surprised at 对……感到惊奇
14. make an effort 努力
15. leave an impression on 给……留下印象
16. keep fit 保持健康
17. tend to 易于; 倾向于
18. care about 关心, 在乎

19. in terms of 就……而言; 在……方面

20. in addition to 除……之外(还)

21. play a part in 发挥作用; 扮演角色

22. stare at 盯着, 凝视

23. come across 偶然遇到; 无意中发现; 被理解

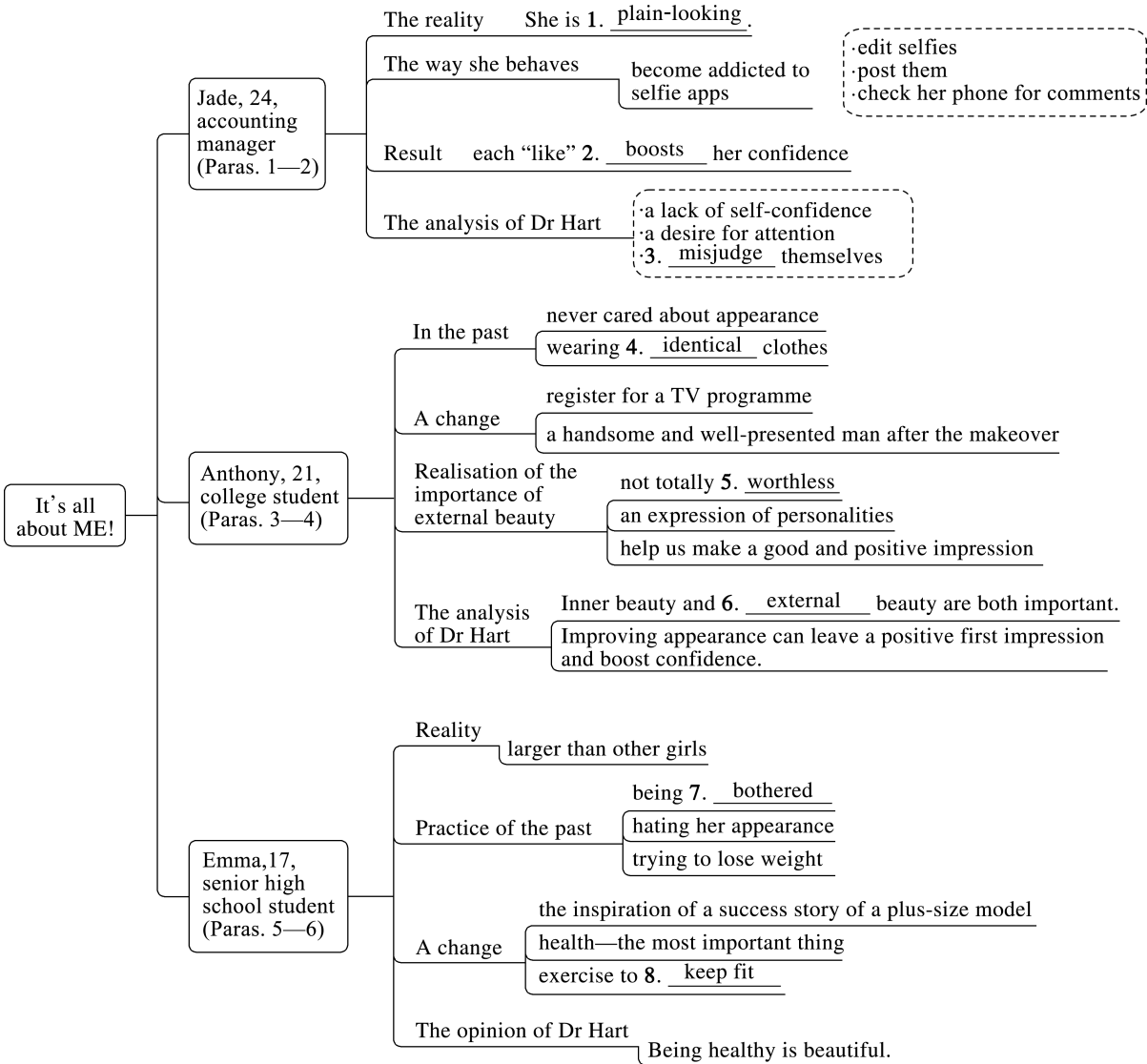
(二) 阅读词汇

1. obsessive *adj.* 痴迷的, 迷恋的; 过度的(含贬义)
2. lipstick *n.* 唇膏, 口红
3. overlook *v.* 忽视, 忽略
4. self-critical *adj.* 自我批评的, 自我批判的
5. makeover *n.* (以新衣服、新发型等进行的) 打扮, 装扮
6. freckle *n.* (尤指脸上的) 雀斑, 斑点
7. jawline *n.* 下巴的形状
8. narcissist *n.* 自我陶醉者
9. bizarre *adj.* 古怪的; 奇异的
10. stereotype *n.* 模式化的思想
11. boost one's confidence 增加某人的信心
12. from head to toe 从头到脚
13. a desire for 渴望……

多维化析文

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Why does Jade eagerly check her phone a hundred times every day?
- A. Because she is addicted to using mobile phones.
B. Because she wants to edit more beautiful selfies.
C. Because she is afraid of missing important messages.
D. Because she wants to see others' comments on her image.
- 答案:D
2. When did Anthony begin to realise the importance

- of external beauty?
- A. After he heard a song in *Ugly Betty*.
B. After he received a letter from Dr Hart.
C. After he attended a TV programme.
D. After he came across the success story of Tess Holliday.
- 答案:C
3. What made Emma change her ideas about being beautiful?
- A. Dr Hart's advice.
B. Her failure in trying to lose weight.
C. The change of her roommates' attitude.
D. The success story of a plus-size model, Tess

Holliday.

答案:D

4. What does the word “well-presented” in Paragraph 3 probably mean?

- A. Gentle. B. Good-looking.
C. Hard-working. D. Considerate.

答案:B

▶ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

In order to discover what “me” means to other people, Dr Hart, a psychologist, made some interviews and comments.

Jade is a plain-looking girl who would love to look good. Since she 1. discovered (discover) selfie apps that could 2. beautify (beauty) one's image, she has become addicted 3. to them. Dr Hart says that obsessive online photo editing indicates a lack of self-confidence and a desire for attention and that 4. what Jade does tends to misjudge herself.

Anthony, 21, a college student, never used to care about his 5. appearance (appear). However, a TV programme changed him. He realised that external beauty wasn't 6. totally (total) worthless. Dr Hart agrees with him, saying that inner beauty is very important, but external beauty can't be completely 7. overlooked (overlook).

Emma, 17, a senior high school student, has been 8. larger (large) than other girls. She tried every means possible to lose weight, only 9. to bring (bring) herself nothing but pain and poor health. The success story of a plus-size model changed her ideas about what it means to be beautiful. She realised that 10. keeping (keep) fit was the most important thing.

Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Through interviews, I was able to discover what “me” means to other people, and how they have

learnt to appreciate the beauty in themselves.

[句子分析]句中 and 连接两个宾语从句, what “me” means to other people 为第一个从句,由 what 引导,how they have learnt to appreciate the beauty in themselves 为第二个从句,由 how 引导。
[尝试翻译]通过采访,我能够发现“我”对其他人意味着什么,以及他们如何学会欣赏自己的美。

2. That's why I could never understand my sister, who has 17 lipsticks and can't decide which one to use every morning.

[句子分析]句中 why I could never understand my sister 为 why 引导的表语从句,构成 that's why... 句式,who has 17 lipsticks and can't decide which one to use every morning 为关系代词 who 引导的非限制性定语从句,修饰先行词 my sister,其中 which one to use 作动词 decide 的宾语。

[尝试翻译]那就是我永远无法理解我妹妹的原因。她有 17 支口红,每天早上都不知道该用哪一支好。

3. What I really admire is the way she has acknowledged that good health not only makes us more beautiful, but happier, too!

[句子分析]本句中 What 引导主语从句,What 在从句中作 admire 的宾语;表语 the way 后是一个省略 that/in which 的定语从句,定语从句中 that 引导的从句作 acknowledged 的宾语,该从句中还有一个包含“not only... but (also)...”的并列结构,其中,happier 前省略了 makes us。

[尝试翻译]我真正欣赏她的一点是,她认可身体健康不仅使我们更美丽,而且也让我们更快乐!

▶ 思维品质培养

Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. Why do we care so much about how we look?

略

2. Are there more important things in life than beauty? What do you think they are?

略

课后素养评价(一)

I. 阅读理解

Have you ever made your life look a little more charming than it actually is by posting truths on social media? If so, you may be damaging your mental health.

The posts we make on social media platforms allow us to look back and see what we did on a given

day. But what happens when, in an effort to impress our online friends, photos and videos we post become beautified versions of the things we did?

A young girl named Sophia went out to a romantic anniversary dinner with her boyfriend, had a near relationship-ending fight during dessert, then came home and posted, “Had the best time out with

the love of my life!”—even with a photo of the meal. No surprise, but according to a new study, Sophia was by no means unique. Two-thirds of users admit lying about their lives on social media with 20 percent of young people between the ages of 18 and 24 stating that they edit their own stories by frequently lying about relationships and promotions.

By beautifying our online stories, we are harming our memories. We start believing the stories we tell rather than remembering what really happened. Soon, the real experience is lost and all that remains is the beautified version of history.

Scientists fear that these edited stories will end up changing our memories. It's well confirmed through research that our own memories are often unreliable and can be easily controlled. Writing down one's life in the form of a journal, or even on social media can help us keep our memories undamaged, but only if we tell the truth. So recording our experiences through whatever medium, to later recall lessons we learned, is not only acceptable but desirable. In fact, looking back at our own past—however embarrassing or uncomfortable—is not just healthy but can be enjoyable.

【语篇解读】文章主要说明在社交媒体上美化自己的故事会损害我们的心理健康,因为如此无异于撒谎,欺骗别人就是欺骗自己,最终自己免不了受伤。

1. Why did Sophia post her story with a photo of the meal?
 - A. To make her post attractive.
 - B. To show her photography skill.
 - C. To convince others of her story.
 - D. To show how enjoyable the meal was.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“in an effort to impress our online friends”和第三段中的“even with a photo of the meal”可知,索菲娅发帖时配上吃饭的照片目的就是要使别人信服她的故事。故选 C。
2. In what kind of tone did the writer write the text?
 - A. Encouraging.
 - B. Critical.
 - C. Humorous.
 - D. Enthusiastic.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“If so, you may be damaging your mental health.”和第四段中的“By beautifying our online stories, we are harming our memories.”以及最后一段中的“but only if we tell the truth”可知,作者对美化我们的网络故事持批判的观点,故而文章的笔调是批判性的。故选 B。
3. What do NOT many people realise according to the last paragraph?
 - A. Recalling the unpleasant past can also be

enjoyable.

- B. Writing down our life on social media does no good to us.
- C. Recording experiences through media is unacceptable.
- D. Recording our experiences through media is beneficial.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段最后一句“In fact, looking back at our own past—however embarrassing or uncomfortable—is not just healthy but can be enjoyable.”可知,“In fact”在句中起强调的作用,作者强调回忆不愉快的过往也可能是令人愉悦的,人们大多没有意识到这一点。故选 A。

4. What lesson can be drawn from the text?
 - A. Leaving others a good impression is desirable.
 - B. Editing our online stories weakens our memory.
 - C. Posting our experiences on social media is risky.
 - D. Beautifying our history ends up hurting ourselves.

D 推理判断题。全文主要说明在社交媒体上美化自己的故事会损害我们的心理健康,因为如此无异于在撒谎,欺骗别人就是欺骗自己,最终自己免不了受伤。故选 D。

II. 七选五

Reading is a key to developing wisdom that guides you through challenging life decisions, and enhances your creative abilities. It holds importance for children. To make reading enjoyable for your young ones, you might need to set off their interest in it. Today's post is for you if you want to assist your children in developing the life-changing practice of reading. 1.

Boosting the Cognitive Activity

Reading aloud to youngsters or encouraging them to develop the habit helps understand what they see, read, or hear. 2. They are more perceptive (有洞察力的) and have more complicated cognitive capacities.

Improved Focusing and Learning Abilities

It is not surprising that children have a limited attention time and quickly switch between tasks. You can eventually beat greater discipline and attentiveness into your children's head by scheduling a set reading activity each day. 3, within a couple of days they will speed up their pace and actively participate in these activities and develop

newer competencies.

Proficiency in Language and Literature

When children begin reading, they discover words and sentences that greatly expand their vocabulary. 4, it improves their ability to interact socially and talk efficiently.

5. We hope the advice and suggestions in this article will help you spread in your kids the virtuous practice of reading and raise awareness of the world surrounding them. Knowing the value of reading to children, you may assist them develop abilities that will make them smarter.

A. Reading is both fun and educational

- B. It will show you how to effectively promote reading
- C. When you're thinking why reading is essential to children
- D. If the area of the brain that comprehends language has been excited
- E. So exposing your children to reading has long-term educational benefits
- F. Even though it might take them a little longer to adjust to daily reading activities
- G. As a result, their knowledge and understanding of their surroundings grow as they read more

答案:1~5 BGFDA

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Lower interest rates can **boost** the economy by reducing borrowing costs for consumers and businesses. 促进,推动
2. He would ask who we were and **pretend** not to know us. 假装
3. I'm surprised to find that her dress is almost **identical** to mine. 完全相同的
4. He no longer lives in the school **dormitory** because his new house is just nearby. 寝室
5. To solve its problems, it needs more open discussion and more **self-critical** thinking. 自我批判的
6. I wake up at 6 am as the sleeping **pill** doesn't work for more than nine hours. 药丸

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <u>skinny</u> <i>adj.</i> 极瘦的,皮包骨的 | <u>skin</u> <i>n.</i> 皮肤 |
| <u>bother</u> <i>v.</i> (使)苦恼 | <u>bothered</u> <i>adj.</i> 担心的;烦恼的;生气的 |
| | <u>bothersome</u> <i>adj.</i> 引起麻烦的;令人讨厌的;令人难为的 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--|---|
| <u>acknowledge</u> <i>v.</i> 承认(某事属实或某情况存在);(公开)感谢 | <u>acknowledgement</u> <i>n.</i> 承认;(公开的)感谢 |
| <u>personality</u> <i>n.</i> 个性,性格 | <u>person</u> <i>n.</i> 人 |
| | <u>personal</u> <i>adj.</i> 个人的,自己的 |
| | <u>personally</u> <i>adv.</i> 就个人而言 |

III. 补全短语

1. from head to toe 从头到脚
2. a lack of 缺乏……
3. leave an impression on 给……留下印象
4. keep fit 保持健康
5. make an effort 努力
6. be surprised at 对……感到惊讶
7. nothing but 仅仅,不过
8. a desire for 渴望……

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:as 引导状语从句
As a song in Ugly Betty puts it, “It's a pretty person's world”.
正如《丑女贝蒂》中的那首歌所唱的:“这是个看脸的世界。”
2. 句型公式:what 引导名词性从句

Dad thinks I am a narcissist, but what I say is that my pictures aren't hurting anyone, so who cares?

爸爸认为我是个自我陶醉者,但我要说的是我的照片不会伤害任何人,所以谁在乎呢?

3. 句型公式: why 引导表语从句

That's why I could never understand my sister, who has 17 lipsticks and can't decide which one to use every morning.

那就是我永远无法理解我妹妹的原因。她有 17 支口红,每天早上都不知道该用哪一支好。

任务型课堂

1. pretend v. 假装, 装作

[教材原文] People who **pretend** to be someone they are not tend to misjudge themselves.

假装成别人的人往往会错误地判断自己。

[归纳拓展]

pretend to be sb./sth. 假装是某人/某物

pretend to do sth. 假装做某事

pretend to be doing sth. 假装正在做某事

pretend to have done sth. 假装做过某事

pretend that... 假装……

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① If you pretend to know (know) what you don't know, you'll only make a fool of yourself.

② When the father came home, the naughty boy pretended to be doing (do) his homework.

③ Jim pretended to have solved (solve) the difficult problem and left the company.

(2) 句型转换

In nature, in order to protect themselves, some animals always pretend that they are dead when running across humans.

→ In nature, in order to protect themselves, some animals always pretend to be dead when running across humans.

2. identical adj. 完全相同的; 非常相似的

[教材原文] I only used to have five **identical** pairs of trousers and five identical shirts.

我以前只有五条一模一样的裤子和五件一模一样的衬衫。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be identical to 和……一模一样; 等同于

(2) identity n. 身份; 同一性; 一致

identity card (ID card) 身份证

(3) identify v. 确认; 识别; 鉴别

identify... with... 使……等同于……, 使成为一致

(4) identification n. 确定; 鉴定; 辨认; 身份证明

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① She is innocent; it was a case of mistaken identity (identical).

② The early identification (identify) of children with special educational needs is very important.

③ People who had identified (identify) themselves as not wealthy were more likely to listen to and look at the stranger.

(2) 完成句子

The name used must be identical to that shown in your identity document.

所使用的姓名必须与你身份证件上显示的姓名相同。

3. bother v. (使) 苦恼 n. 麻烦; 不便; 困难

[教材原文] For a long time, this really **bothered** me.

很长一段时间, 这真的使我苦恼。

[归纳拓展]

(1) bother to do/doing sth. 花费时间精力做某事

It bothers sb. to do sth. 做某事使某人苦恼/担心/不高兴。

Don't bother! 不必麻烦!

It is no bother! 没什么麻烦的!

(2) bothered adj. 担心的; 烦恼的; 生气的
not bothered 无所谓的

(3) bothersome adj. 引起麻烦的; 令人讨厌的; 令人为难的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Why bother to ask/asking (ask) if you're not really interested in it?

② —Where shall we eat?

—I'm not bothered (bother)!

③ If the symptoms (症状) continue or are bothersome (bother), check with your doctor in time.

(2) 完成句子

① It bothers me to think of her alone in that big house.

想到她孤零零地待在那所大房子里, 我便坐立不安。

- ②—I'll fetch you a chair.
—No, please don't bother.
——我去给你拿把椅子。
——不,请不必麻烦了。
- ③—Thanks for your help!
—It is no bother!
——多谢你的帮助!
——没什么麻烦的!

4. acknowledge v. 承认(某事属实或某情况存在)

[教材原文] What I really admire is the way she has **acknowledged** that good health not only makes us more beautiful, but happier, too!

我真正欣赏她的一点是,她认可身体健康不仅使我们更美丽,而且也让我们更快乐!

[归纳拓展]

(1) acknowledge doing/having done sth. 承认做过某事

acknowledge sb./sth. as/to be 承认某人/某物是……

acknowledge that... 承认……

It's (universally/widely) acknowledged that... 人们(普遍)认为……

(2) acknowledgement n. 承认; 感谢; 收件复函

名师点拨

acknowledge 作“承认”讲时,后跟动词时要用动名词形式。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① She acknowledged making/having made (make) the same mistake again.

② I didn't receive an acknowledgement (acknowledge) of my application until yesterday morning.

(2) 句型转换

She is acknowledged as/to be one of the best singers.

→ It is acknowledged that she is one of the best singers.

(3) 完成句子

All applications will be acknowledged.

所有的申请都会得到复函告知收悉。

5. as 引导状语从句

[教材原文] As a song in *Ugly Betty* puts it, "It's a pretty person's world".

正如《丑女贝蒂》中的那首歌所唱的:“这是个看脸的世界。”

[句式分析] 句中 As 引导方式状语从句,意为“正如,像……那样”。

[归纳拓展]

(1) as 用作连词,可以引导方式、时间、原因、让步和比较状语从句。

(2) as 引导让步状语从句时要用部分倒装。

名师点拨

as 引导让步状语从句时要把形容词、副词、名词或动词原形放到 as 前面,此时可用 though 替代。注意此时名词前无冠词。

Young **as** he is, he knows a lot.

尽管年轻,他懂得很多。

Try **as** he might, he failed again.

尽管他尝试了,但又失败了。

[即学即练]

(1) 写出下列句中 as 的含义

① **As** I stepped nearer the bus station, the noise became louder. 随着,当……时候

② Much **as** I liked you, I couldn't live with you. 尽管

③ **As** it was getting late, we soon turned back. 因为

④ I have changed it **as** you suggested. 按照

⑤ He ran **as** fast **as** he could. 像……一样

⑥ **As** years went by, his theory proved to be correct. 随着

(2) 句型转换

Although the film was interesting, we didn't see it.

→ Interesting as the film was, we didn't see it.

多义词汇专练

1. identical: A. adj. 相同的, 同样的 B. adj. 同一的

① The two pictures are similar, although not **identical**. A

② This is the **identical** room we stayed in last year. B

2. acknowledge: A. v. 承认(属实) B. v. 告知收悉 C. v. (公开)感谢

① They wish to **acknowledge** the assistance of the police in the making of this film. C

② We must **acknowledge** his letter as soon as we receive it. B

③ He unwillingly **acknowledged** having made a mistake. A

课后素养评价(二)

I. 单词拼写

1. The upset girl opened a book, pretending (假装) to read, with tears dropping on the open page.
2. Judging from the appearance, she is identical (完全相同的) to her twin sister.
3. But dormitories (宿舍) are not for being alone—I've been told—they're about learning to get along with others.
4. What bothers (使苦恼) his mother most is that he seems to show no interest in his study.
5. She lost the race because she misjudged (错判) the ability of the other competitors.
6. I often surf the Internet and browse *Enjoy Reading*, which enlarges (扩大) my vocabulary.
7. That people are skinny (极瘦的) doesn't mean they are beautiful and healthy.
8. It is universally acknowledged (承认) that learning English well will be of great benefit to us all.

II. 短语填空

be surprised at; make an effort; a lack of; come across; keep fit; leave a positive impression on

1. Hit by a lack of fresh air, many climbers suffered from headaches.
2. It was not your beauty but the way you dealt with the conflicts that left a positive impression on the manager.
3. The story written by him has a surprising ending and everyone is surprised at it.
4. The prisoner made an effort to escape, but he couldn't climb over the prison wall.
5. It was when I got back to my apartment that I first came across my new neighbour.
6. She and her family bicycle to work, which helps them keep fit.

III. 完成句子

1. Ever since entering senior high school, I have been used to sharing a dormitory with a couple of roommates.
自从进入高中,我已经习惯了和几个室友共用一间宿舍。
2. Her parents didn't approve of the way that/in which she lost weight.

她的父母不赞同她减肥的方式。

3. What we care about is the students' safety in the camp.
我们所关心的是学生们在营地的安全。
4. He not only didn't concentrate on his study but also pretended to have reviewed his lessons very well. That was why he failed to pass the College Entrance Examination.
他不仅不专注于学习而且还假装已经把功课复习得很好。那就是他高考失败的原因。
5. We'd better leave things as they are until the police arrive.
在警察到来前,我们最好让现场保持原样。

IV. 完形填空

Lately, I have been struggling to connect with my dad because our conversations have seemed unimportant to him. In a half-hearted attempt to find something that 1 him, I pulled out my phone and showed him a few 2 of Jay, my new pet rabbit.

"Did Mum tell you I got a bunny?" It was a strange question. To my surprise, my dad's 3 were lifted. "A black bunny!" he called out, getting closer to 4 the photos. He wanted to know more. I hurried to find more photos, holding on to this 5 opportunity.

I shouldn't be 6 that it was a bunny that broke through the 7 between my dad and me. Growing up, we never talked much. 8, our time together centred around animals, like catching crayfish at the river and caring for turtles and crabs. 9 animals has always been our thing.

A few months later, I came prepared with more photos and videos of Jay on my laptop so my dad could see them more 10. I had been 11 that his initial interest in Jay was a one-off event, but he 12 up again when I showed him the new stuff.

Our love for animals is the 13 that connects us. There was no 14 to start having deep conversations if that had never been our style—just finding 15 together in a photo of a bunny was enough.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了“我”成

年以后和父亲之间的谈话变少,但是对于动物的喜爱又将“我们”联系到一起的故事。

1. A. connects B. comforts
C. inspires D. interests
D 根据上文“Lately, I have been struggling to connect with my dad”可知,“我”一直在努力与父亲建立联系。由此推断出为了引起他的兴趣,“我”掏出手机给他看兔子的照片。故选 D。
2. A. gifts B. photos
C. videos D. posters
B 根据下文“I hurried to find more photos”可知,“我”掏出手机是为了给父亲看照片。photos 为原词复现。故选 B。
3. A. spirits B. feelings
C. eyes D. hands
A 根据下文“He wanted to know more.”可知,父亲想要对兔子了解更多,说明他对兔子感兴趣,他的精神振奋了。故选 A。
4. A. point at B. glance at
C. go over D. watch over
C 根据下文“He wanted to know more.”可知,父亲想要了解更多关于兔子的事情。由此推断出他走近去细看照片。故选 C。
5. A. unexpected B. unfinished
C. unimportant D. unsuccessful
A 根据上文“Lately, I have been struggling to connect with my dad because our conversations have seemed unimportant to him.”以及“He wanted to know more.”可知,这个机会是“我”意想不到的。故选 A。
6. A. disappointed B. annoyed
C. satisfied D. surprised
D 根据下文“it was a bunny that broke through the 7”可知,一只兔子就能冲破“我”和父亲之间的隔阂,这件事让“我”觉得很惊讶。故选 D。
7. A. chat B. routine
C. bridge D. fog
D 根据下文“Growing up, we never talked much.”可知,“我”在长大后和父亲之间就没有太多的谈话,说明“我”和父亲之间存在困惑、隔阂。故选 D。
8. A. Plus B. Thus
C. Meanwhile D. Instead
D 根据上文“Growing up, we never talked much.”和下文“our time together centred around animals, like catching crayfish at the river and caring for turtles and crabs”可知,“我”长大后和父

亲谈话很少,相反的是“我们”可以在一起围绕动物展开活动。前后句之间形成了对比,故用 instead。故选 D。

9. A. Respecting B. Loving
C. Researching D. Catching
B 根据下文“Our love for animals is the 13 that connects us.”可知,“我”和父亲对于动物是热爱的。由此推断出爱动物一直是“我们”的共同点。故选 B。
10. A. easily B. gradually
C. patiently D. quickly
A 根据上文“A black bunny!’ he called out, getting closer to 4 the photos. He wanted to know more.”可知,“我”的父亲对 Jay 是感兴趣的,所以“我”准备 Jay 的照片和视频是为了让父亲更容易看见。故选 A。
11. A. pleased B. ashamed
C. worried D. discouraged
C 根据下文“his initial interest in Jay was a one-off event”可知,“我”之前担心父亲对 Jay 的热情是否是一次性的。故选 C。
12. A. cheered B. stood
C. gave D. looked
A 根据上文“To my surprise, my dad’s 3 were lifted.”和后文“again”可知,父亲第一次看见 Jay 的照片是精神振奋的,通过“again”推断出父亲看见 Jay 的照片再一次振奋起来。cheer up 意为“振奋精神”,符合语境。故选 A。
13. A. trick B. privilege
C. bond D. routine
C 根据上文“9 animals has always been our thing.”可知,爱动物是“我们”的共同点,说明“我们”对动物的爱是连接“我们”的纽带。故选 C。
14. A. need B. help
C. harm D. chance
A 根据上文“Growing up, we never talked much.”及“Our love for animals is the 13 that connects us.”可知,“我”和父亲之间话不多,但是对动物的爱就是连接“我们”的纽带。由此推断出“我们”没必要开始深入的对话就能找到快乐。故选 A。
15. A. hope B. joy
C. success D. freedom
B 根据上文“9 animals has always been our thing.”可知,爱小动物是“我”和父亲的共同点,说明看兔子 Jay 的照片会带给“我们”快乐。故选 B。

Section III Using language

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Child **welfare** services are well established and comprehensive. 福利
2. She endured the **monstrous** behaviour for years. 骇人的
3. He became as wild as a **beast** and no one could comfort him. 野兽
4. “May I come in?” she asked in a **timid** voice. 胆小的,胆怯的
5. She accused her husband of being a **coward**. 胆小鬼;懦夫
6. As far as I know, Mr White is a **righteous** man, and he always behaves justly. 正派的,正直的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <u>assumption</u> <i>n.</i> 假定,假设 | <u>assume</u> <i>v.</i> 假定;认为 |
| | <u>assuming</u> <i>conj.</i> 假定;假设 |
| <u>saving</u> <i>n.</i> 积蓄 | <u>save</u> <i>v.</i> 储蓄,积攒,节省;挽救 |
| <u>psychology</u> <i>n.</i> 心理,心理过程 | <u>psychological</u> <i>adj.</i> 心理的;心理学的 |
| | <u>psychologist</u> <i>n.</i> 心理学家 |
| <u>independence</u> <i>n.</i> 独立,自主 | <u>independent</u> <i>adj.</i> 独立的;自力更生的 |
| | <u>dependence</u> <i>n.</i> 依赖,依靠 |
| | <u>dependent</u> <i>adj.</i> 依赖的,依靠的 |
| <u>frightful</u> <i>adj.</i> 可怕的 | <u>fright</u> <i>n.</i> 害怕,恐惧 |
| | <u>frightening</u> <i>adj.</i> 吓人的,令人恐惧的 |
| | <u>frightened</u> <i>adj.</i> 恐惧的,害怕的 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <u>loyal</u> <i>adj.</i> 忠贞的,忠实的,忠诚的 | <u>loyalty</u> <i>n.</i> 忠贞,忠实的,忠诚 |

III. 补全短语

1. for instance 例如
2. in secret 秘密地
3. donate... to ... 把……捐赠给……
4. transform into 转变成
5. regard... as ... 认为……是……
6. in reality 实际上,事实上
7. to sum up 总而言之,总之

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:how 引导名词性从句
How others are feeling is not something that we should make assumptions about, because it's not always obvious who is truly happy.
我们不应该推测别人的感受,因为谁是真正快乐的并不总是显而易见的。
2. 句型公式:不定式作后置定语
She also set a national record as the oldest enlisted woman to do a parachute jump, at the age of 51.
她还创造了一项全国纪录,成为最年长的跳伞女兵,那时她 51 岁。
3. 句型公式:现在分词短语作状语
However,he performs brave actions even when he feels afraid, proving that he is in fact a courageous individual.
然而,即使他在感到害怕的时候,他也会做出勇敢的行为,证明他实际上是一个勇敢的人。

任务型课堂

1. **assumption** *n.* 假定,假设

[教材原文]How others are feeling is not something that we should make **assumptions** about, because it's not always obvious who is truly happy.
我们不应该推测别人的感受,因为谁是真正快乐的

并不总是显而易见的。

[归纳拓展]

(1)make assumptions/an assumption about
对……做出臆断
on the assumption that... 假定……

- (2) assume *v.* 假设; 认为
 assume sb./sth. to be... 假定某人/事……
 assume that... 假如……
 It is assumed that... 假定……; 人们认为……
 (3) assuming *conj.* 假定; 假设; 假如……

名师点拨

assuming (that) 后跟句子, 相当于 if 引导的条件状语从句, 类似的结构还有 suppose/supposing (that), providing/provided (that), given (that) 等。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① The theory is based on a series of wrong assumptions (assume).
 ② Many people tend to make assumptions about you based on your appearance.
 ③ Assuming (assume) that we start out at six, we are bound to get there before dark.

(2) 句型转换

If you work hard at your lessons, you'll get good results sooner or later.

→ Assuming (that) you work hard at your lessons,

you'll get good results sooner or later.

2. 不定式作后置定语

[教材原文] She also set a national record as the oldest enlisted woman **to do a parachute jump**, at the age of 51.

她还创造了一项全国纪录, 成为最年长的跳伞女兵, 那时她 51 岁。

[归纳拓展]

名词或代词前有 the very, the only, the next, 序数词、形容词最高级修饰时, 常用不定式作后置定语。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① Do you think the young man was the best man to do (do) the job?
 ② Denmark is said to be the first country to discover (discover) amber.

(2) 翻译句子

要想成功, 首先要做的是热爱你所做的事。

To be successful, the first thing to do is (to) love what you are doing.

多义词汇专练

Although the programme asks the members only to drive students to and from their classes, Wilson often goes beyond to ensure the **welfare** and safety of the students. C

A. *n.* 社会保障金

B. *n.* (政府给予的) 福利

C. *n.* (个体或群体的) 幸福

语法探究

主语从句

「语法感知」

- ① **That** he finished writing the composition in such a short time surprised us.
 ② It's true **that** inner beauty is very important, but external beauty shouldn't be completely overlooked.
 ③ **Whether** we will go for an outing tomorrow remains unknown.
 ④ **Who** will be our monitor hasn't been decided yet.
 ⑤ Dad thinks I am a narcissist, but **what** I say is that my pictures aren't hurting anyone.
 ⑥ **Whom** we must study for is a question of great importance.
 ⑦ **When** we arrive at the destination doesn't matter.
 ⑧ **How** this happened is not clear to anyone.

1. 以上句子中, ①②③为 从属连词 引导的主语从句;

④⑤⑥为 连接代词 引导的主语从句; ⑦⑧为 连接

副词 引导的主语从句。

2. 句①和句②中的 that 不作句子成分, 没有任何意义, 只起连接作用。句②中 that 引导的从句为真正的主语, it 作 形式主语。
 3. 句③中的 Whether 不作句子成分, 意为“是否”。
 4. 句④⑤⑥中的连接代词在从句中作 主语 或 宾语。
 5. 句⑦⑧中的连接副词在从句中作 状语。

「语法精讲」

一、概述

在句子中起名词作用的各种从句统称为名词性从句。根据它们在句中的语法作用, 这类从句又可分为主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。其中充当主语从句叫主语从句。

二、引导词

主语从句的常用引导词:

1. 连接词 that;

2. 连接词 whether;
3. 连接代词 what, who, which, whom, whose, whatever, whoever, whomever, whichever 等;
4. 连接副词 when, where, how, why, whenever, wherever 等。

三、that 引导的主语从句

1. that 引导主语从句时只起连接作用,在从句中不作任何成分,也无任何意义。

That he will win the medal seems unlikely.
他似乎不大可能获得奖牌。

Thatshe survived the accident is a miracle.
这次事故她幸免于难是个奇迹。

名师点拨

that 引导主语从句时通常不能省略,尤其是位于句首时。

2. 有时为了平衡句子结构,用 it 充当形式主语,而将 that 从句置于后面。

Itis certain **that**she will do well in her exam.
毫无疑问她的考试成绩会很好。

It'sa pity **that**we can't go.
遗憾的是,我们不能去。

3. 主语从句中常用 it 作形式主语的句型。

(1) **It** + be + 形容词 (clear, obvious, true, possible, certain, important, necessary, strange, natural, likely, surprising, vital 等) + **that** 从句
It is important thathe should know about it.
重要的是他应当知道此事。

It is likely thatthe meeting will be put off.
会议很可能被推迟。

(2) **It** + be + 名词(词组) (a pity, a shame, an honour, a fact, no wonder, no surprise 等) + **that** 从句

It's an honour thatwe have been invited to the party.

很荣幸我们被邀请参加宴会。

It's no surprise thathe won first prize in the English speaking contest.

他在这次英语演讲比赛中获得一等奖并不令人惊奇。

(3) **It** + be + 过去分词 (said, reported, announced, proved, thought, expected, hoped, decided, suggested, advised, ordered, required, demanded 等) + **that** 从句

It is said thathe has been to Australia.

据说他去过澳大利亚。

It is expected thatair quality will become better

and better.

人们期望空气质量会变得越来越好。

名师点拨

该句型中,如果动词是表示建议、命令、要求、请求,那么 that 从句使用虚拟语气,即从句中的谓语动词形式要用“should + 动词原形”,其中 should 可以省略。

It is suggested thatthe government (**should**) **take** effective measures to control housing prices.

人们建议政府应该采取有效措施控制房价。

(4) **It** + 不及物动词(短语) (happen, occur, seem, appear, turn out 等) + **that** 从句

It happened thathe was out when I called on him.
当我拜访他时,他碰巧不在家。

It occurred to me thatI had left the door unlocked.
我突然想起来我忘记锁门了。

四、whether 引导的主语从句

whether 意为“是否”,引导主语从句时只起连接作用,在从句中不作任何成分。

Whetherthey would support us was still a problem.
他们是否会支持我们仍然是个问题。

Itmakes no difference to me **whether**he comes or not.

他来不来对我来说无关紧要。

名师点拨

(1) whether 引导主语从句时可以放在句首,也可以用 it 充当形式主语,将真正的主语后置。

(2) whether 引导主语从句时一般不能用 if 替代。

五、连接代词引导的主语从句

连接代词包括 what, who, which, whom, whose, whatever, whoever, whomever, whichever 等,在从句中作主语、宾语、表语或定语。

Whatshe did is not yet known.

她做了什么尚不清楚。

Whowill present the meeting has not been decided yet.

由谁来主持会议还没有决定。

Whateveryou choose in the end will be supported by us, your loyal friends.

无论你最终选择了什么,都会得到我们这些忠诚的朋友们的支持。

Whicheverof you join our competition will be rewarded with our specially designed souvenirs.

你们中任何参加我们比赛的人都会获得我们特殊设计的纪念品作为奖励。

1. what 引导主语从句时在从句中作主语、宾语、表语

或定语,相当于定语从句中的“先行词+关系代词”的形式,表示“……的事情(时间、地点、样子等)”。

What (= The thing that) you did yesterday was right.

昨天你做得对。

She made a trip to **what** (= the place that) was once a battlefield.

她去了一个以前是战场的地方旅游。

2. **who** 意为“谁”,表示疑问含义;**whoever** 意为“无论是谁”,表示肯定意义,相当于 anyone who.

Whoever (= Anyone who) did the job must be rewarded.

无论谁做了这项工作都一定要得到酬谢。

六、连接副词引导的主语从句

连接副词包括 when, where, how, why, whenever, wherever 等,在主语从句中作状语。

When we'll start tomorrow will be told soon.

我们很快会被告知明天何时动身。

Why he came here is not known.

他为什么来这里尚不清楚。

Wherever he'll go for his journey makes no difference to me.

无论他去哪里旅行对我来说都无所谓。

名师点拨 ■■■■

“疑问词+ever”既可引导主语从句,又可引导让步状语从句。而“no matter+疑问词”只能引导让步状语从句。

Whoever breaks the law should be punished. (主语从句)

Whoever (= **No matter who**) breaks the law, he or she should be punished. (让步状语从句)
无论谁违反法律,都应该受到惩罚。

「语法冲关」

I. 用适当的连接词填空

1. Whether they can solve the problem is still unknown.
2. Whoever wants to stay in a hotel has to pay the bill.
3. Where he comes from still puzzles all of us.
4. It is said that the bridge has existed for more than three centuries.
5. Who will be the winner hasn't been announced.
6. What my mother had told me was deeply rooted in my mind.
7. That we go swimming every day does a lot of good to us.
8. It's uncertain whether the experiment is worth doing.

II. 完成句子

1. It is a pity that he should feel so upset.
遗憾的是,他感到如此难过。
2. To fight against the disease, what we need most are scientific instructions and close cooperation.
与该疾病抗争,我们最需要的是科学的指导和紧密的合作。
3. Whoever leaves the room last ought to turn off the lights.
最后一个离开房间的人应该把灯关上。
4. Whether we'll go camping tomorrow depends on the weather.
明天我们是否去露营视天气而定。
5. That the boy didn't take the medicine made his mother very angry.
男孩没吃药,这使他母亲很生气。

课后素养评价(三)

I. 选词填空

finding; for instance; welfare; in addition to; psychology; transform into; regard... as; in reality

1. It seems as if he knew everything, but in reality, he is as stupid as he can be.
2. There were calls for major changes to the welfare system.
3. We regarded this as a chance to prove the human spirit at that time.

4. Surveys conducted in other countries reported similar findings.
5. He graduated from New York University with a degree in psychology.
6. Seeing the beast, Monkey King quickly transforms into an animal.
7. Several of his friends came: Ben, Carol and Mike, for instance.
8. Of course, in addition to my weekly pay, I got a lot of tips.

II. 单句语法填空

1. The old man donated most of his savings (save) to the local school to give more children a good education in the mountain villages.
2. Who will set a record can't be predicted, because all the competitors are competitive.
3. The newly-elected leader applied to take (take) charge of welfare services.
4. That sounds rather simple, but in fact it's very difficult.
5. Who do you think is the best man to do (do) the work?
6. Whether we will hold a party in the open air tomorrow depends on the weather.
7. Having watered (water) the flowers, he began to cut the grass.
8. His grandparents often give him some pocket money in secret to meet his need of buying junk food.
9. Who made the assumption (assume) that our football team wouldn't win the final match?
10. More and more people have realised that what they really need is not wealth but health.
11. How the accident happened is not clear to anyone.
12. It's reported that a frightful (fright) accident happened there.

III. 阅读理解

If you've followed dieting advice and experienced significant weight loss, only to have it return, you're not alone. It's also not your fault. The human body is designed to maintain balance as much as possible. In a restricted calorie environment, the body adapts to using fewer calories each day to function. This leads to a slowing in metabolism (新陈代谢), which makes it even more difficult to lose weight and ultimately leads to gaining weight again. Muscle is more metabolically active than fat, which means it burns more calories at rest than fat does. If your body starts breaking down muscle to fuel its basic functions, that can further slow your metabolism and make losing weight and keeping it off long term difficult.

Because the body wants to preserve weight, a slow approach to losing extra pounds is healthier than sharply cutting calories. It's better to pace your weight loss by eating just enough calories to keep you at insufficiency while still meeting most of your body's energy needs. This will help keep your metabolism working efficiently.

Determining the number of calories you need to eat to meet that rate of weight loss will depend on several factors, including your age, starting weight, activity level and sex. Candace Pumper, a staff dietitian with the Ohio State University Wexner Medical Center in Columbus, says, "The Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics position statement on adult weight management recommends 1,200 to 1,500 calories per day for women and 1,500 to 1,800 calories per day for men to support weight loss."

She notes, however, those guidelines are "not meant to substitute for professional nutritional advice or treatment. It's recommended individuals follow the advice of their dietitian's guidance regarding appropriate calorie intake, as many factors affect calorie needs". She also notes that if one is looking to lose weight quickly, he has to work with and be supervised by a health care provider.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要说明了人们长时间节食后体重会增加是因为节食导致身体运作缓慢。身体想要保持体重,因此缓慢的减肥方法比大幅减少卡路里更健康。要想达到理想的减肥速度,你需要摄入多少卡路里取决于几个因素,包括你的年龄、初始体重、活动水平和性别。

1. Why do people gain weight after dieting for long?
 - A. The muscle burns fewer calories at rest than fat.
 - B. The body functions slowly because of dieting.
 - C. It is hard to strike a balance while in hunger.
 - D. It is impossible to have a long-term effect.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的 "In a restricted calorie environment, the body adapts to using fewer calories each day to function. This leads to a slowing in metabolism (新陈代谢), which makes it even more difficult to lose weight and ultimately leads to gaining weight again." 可知,人们长时间节食后体重会增加是因为节食导致身体运作缓慢。故选 B。
2. What does the underlined part "at insufficiency" probably mean in Paragraph 2?
 - A. Being improper.
 - B. Being unhealthy.
 - C. Being inadequate.
 - D. Being unnecessary.

C 词义猜测题。根据第二段中的 "Because the body wants to preserve weight, a slow approach to losing extra pounds is healthier than sharply cutting calories." 以及画线词上文 "It's better to pace your weight loss by eating just enough calories to keep you" 和下文 "while still meeting most of your body's energy needs" 可知,健康的减

肥最好是通过摄入足够的卡路里来控制你的减肥速度,以保持你的身体里的卡路里不是很多,同时仍然满足你身体的大部分能量需求。因此画线词的意思是“不足”。故选 C。

3. Which of the following may determine calorie loss?

①age ②weight ③identity ④gender

A. ②③④

B. ①②③

C. ①②④

D. ①③④

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Determining the number of calories you need to eat to meet that rate of weight loss will depend on several factors, including your age, starting weight,

activity level and sex.”可知,年龄、体重和性别决定了卡路里的损失。故选 C。

4. What is suggested in the last paragraph?

A. Individual efforts matter a lot.

B. Professional advice is important.

C. Calorie needs vary from person to person.

D. Care providers can be relied on for weight gain.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,本段建议人们听从营养师的建议,摄入适当的卡路里。如果一个人想快速减肥,他必须与医疗保健提供者合作,并在其监督下进行。由此推知,最后一段表明专业建议很重要。故选 B。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. graceful *adj.* 优美的,优雅的

2. comprehension *n.* 理解(力)

3. accent *n.* 口音

4. monster *n.* 怪物

5. profound *adj.* (感情)强烈的,深切的

6. motive *n.* (尤指隐藏的)动机,原因,目的

7. exclaim *v.* (因惊讶、愤怒或兴奋而)呼喊,惊叫

8. expression *n.* 表情;神色

9. compare... to... 把……与……比较

10. fall in love with 喜欢,爱上

11. adjust to 适应;适应于

12. regardless of 不管,不顾

13. take on 呈现;承担;雇用

14. attempt to do 企图做;努力做;尝试做

(二)阅读词汇

1. novelist *n.* 小说家

2. kidnap *v.* 绑架;劫持

3. execution *n.* (尤指依法的)处死

4. heartbreaking *adj.* 令人悲伤的

5. defect *n.* 缺点,缺陷,毛病

6. heartfelt *adj.* 衷心的,诚挚的

7. compassion *n.* 怜悯;同情

8. syllable *n.* 音节

9. immense *adj.* 巨大的

10. resemble *v.* 像;与……类似,与……相似

11. repay *v.* 报答

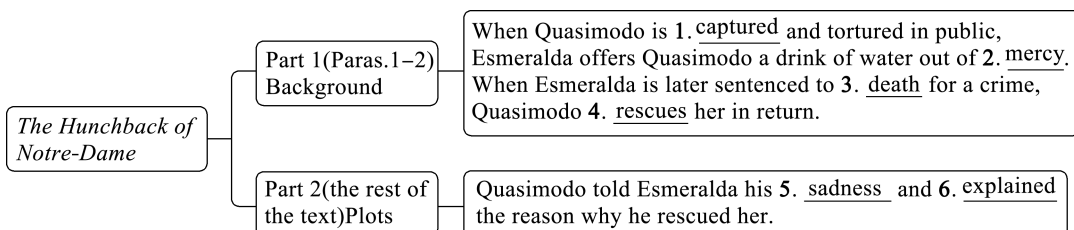
12. in pursuit of 追求

13. once again 再一次

多维化析文

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



▶ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Where did the story of *The Hunchback of Notre-Dame* happen?

- A. In London. B. In Paris.
C. In New York. D. In Tokyo.

答案: B

2. Why couldn't Quasimodo hear what Esmeralda said?

- A. Because he was deaf.
B. Because they were far away from each other.
C. Because Esmeralda spoke in a low voice.
D. Because there was so much noise while they were talking.

答案: A

3. Why did Quasimodo rescue Esmeralda?

- A. Because she did not commit the crime.
B. Because he wanted to capture her heart.
C. Because he wanted to repay her for her help.
D. Because he would be sentenced to death if not.

答案: C

4. What kind of person was Esmeralda according to the text?

- A. Generous and helpful.
B. Indifferent and cruel.
C. Considerate and brave.
D. Kind and sympathetic.

答案: D

▶ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

1. Published (publish) in 1831, *The Hunchback of Notre-Dame* tells a tragic story of events in Paris. A hunchback man named Quasimodo 2. is sent (send) to kidnap the young lady Esmeralda, but he fails and is captured and tortured in public. 3. Out of mercy, Esmeralda offers a drink of water to the man before the execution (处决), 4. which saves the man's life and also captures his heart. When Esmeralda is later sentenced 5. to death for a crime she didn't commit, Quasimodo rescues

her from an 6. angry (anger) crowd. They have to stay inside the cathedral. The following is what happened between them: At first, Esmeralda glanced at him 7. carefully (careful) and she discovered some fresh defect in him. She wondered 8. how anyone could be formed in such a way and that was beyond her 9. comprehension (comprehend). 10. Later (late), she listened to him and found there was so much melancholy and so much gentleness spread over all this.

Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Every moment Esmeralda discovered some fresh defect in Quasimodo, as her glance travelled from his knock knees to his hunched back, from his hunched back to his single eye.

[句子分析] 本句是一个复合句。主句中的 Every moment 为时间状语, as 引导时间状语从句, 从句中含有 from... to... 结构, 意为“从……到……”。

[尝试翻译] 每一刻, 随着埃斯梅拉达的目光从卡西莫多畸形的腿移到驼背, 再从他的驼背移到独眼上, 她都在他身上发现更多的毛病。

2. When I compare myself to you, I feel an immense pity for myself, poor unfortunate monster that I am!

[句子分析] 本句是一个复合句。When 引导时间状语从句, poor unfortunate monster that I am 是 myself 的同位语, 同位语中 that 引导的定语从句修饰先行词 monster。

[尝试翻译] 当我把自己和你比较时, 我就非常怜悯自己, 我是多么可怜而不幸的怪物啊!

▶ 思维品质培养

Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. How did Esmeralda feel when she looked at Quasimodo's appearance?
Surprised.
2. What can a person's appearance and face say about him or her? How do we perceive the looks and faces of others?

略

课后素养评价(四)

I. 单词拼写

- The success of this novel has made her one of the most highly paid novelists (小说家) in history.
- Your reading speed and comprehension (理解力) are tested during this exercise.
- The expression (表情) on his face changed from sympathy to surprise.
- The man spoke to the assistant with a slight American accent (口音).
- She must have some motive (动机) for being nice to me—what does she really want?

II. 短语填空

as long as; in pursuit of; compare... to...; fall in love with; engage in; adjust to; take on; in any case; remind... of...; be concerned with

- Nowadays, more and more young people move to cities in pursuit of their dreams.
- As long as you have your health, nothing else matters.
- I compared the copy to the original, and there wasn't much difference.
- I fell in love with it instantly and continued with ballet dancing for about ten years.
- It takes time to adjust to a new zone when you travel.
- Much of his early work is concerned with the minutiae (细枝末节) of rural life.
- I got this card to remind you of your birthday.
- Right after your evening meal, engage in some sort of physical activity—a sport such as bowling, perhaps.
- The mountain village has taken on a new look in the past few years.
- In any case, you shouldn't give up.

III. 补全句子

- 远处矗立着那座世界闻名的建筑。(there 位于句首引起的倒装)
There stands the world-famous building in the distance.
- 她叫我不问任何问题,照她说的那样做就行了。(as 引导方式状语从句)
She told me not to ask any questions, just to do as she said.

- 她之前从未见过任何一个人打乒乓球能和罗伯特一样好。(never 位于句首引起的倒装)

Never before has she seen anyone who can play table tennis as well as Robert.

- 约翰应该因这次失败受到责备。(强调句型)

It is John who is to blame for the failure.

IV. 七选五

Habits can greatly alter our mood. While we should always minimise our bad habits, it might be a good idea to focus on developing some healthy ones first. Here are some habits that keep you mentally happy.

Practise gratitude

Are you grateful for what you have? 1 If your answer is not often, then you should reconsider practising gratitude. Why? One study found that practising gratitude has a strong impact on our feelings of hope and happiness.

Give compliments (赞美)

Did you know that paying someone a compliment can really pay off? In one study, participants were randomly assigned to perform acts of kindness or no act every day for 10 days. Researchers measured their satisfaction with life before the experiment was conducted, and then after. Performing acts of kindness resulted in an increase in overall life satisfaction. 2 In fact, it will make you both happy.

Exercise

Continuous exercise has been shown to reduce stress, anxiety, and symptoms of depression. So, it's a good habit to practise. 3 Then when that becomes a habit, add an extra five minutes. Continue doing so until you feel comfortable.

Get enough sleep

4 Did you know that lack for sleep kills brain cells? And not getting enough sleep can damage our memory, judgment and reaction time. That's why it's best to get an adequate amount of rest each night.

Experience nature

According to one study, spending 30 minutes or more per week outside in nature can help lower your

- blood pressure and depression. 5 Those who walked down city streets didn't show any benefits compared to those who walked in a natural environment.
- A. How often do you express it?
 - B. A compliment never hurts anyone.
 - C. Or are you sorry for what you have?
 - D. So you'd better have a walk after dinner.

- E. Sleep is extremely important to our mental health.
- F. Start with just five minutes a day when you wake up.
- G. Make sure you take your walks outside in nature, though.

答案:1~5 ABFEG

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. She **resembles** her sister in appearance but not in character. 像;与……相似
- 2. I think rats and snakes are **repulsive**. 令人厌恶的
- 3. The baby was born with a hearing **defect**. 缺陷
- 4. There are **immense** commercial pressures to exploit the country's tourism potential. 巨大的
- 5. The children **exclaimed** with excitement. 惊呼
- 6. Please allow us to show our **heartfelt** welcome to you. 衷心的
- 7. He teaches us to have **compassion** for the poor. 怜悯
- 8. She had a lot to say, but at the time she was unable to **utter** a word. 发出(声音)

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <u>novelist</u> n. 小说家 | novel n. 小说 adj. 新颖的;新奇的 |
| <u>graceful</u> adj. 优美的, 优雅的 | grace n. 优美, 优雅 |
| <u>heartbreaking</u> adj. 令人悲伤的 | heartbroken adj. 极度伤心的, 心碎的 |
| | heartbreak n. 心碎, 悲伤 |
| <u>tenderness</u> n. 柔情 | tender adj. 温柔的;娇嫩的 |
| <u>motive</u> n. (尤指隐藏的) 动机, 原因, 目的 | motivate v. 激励, 激发……的热情 |
| | motivation n. 动力, 积极性 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| <u>comprehension</u> n. 理解(力) | comprehend v. 理解, 领悟 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. compare... to ... 把……与……比较
- 2. in public 公开地
- 3. next to 靠近;仅次于
- 4. be concerned with 与……有关
- 5. start with 从……开始
- 6. as long as 只要
- 7. engage in 参与;参加
- 8. attempt to do 企图做;努力做;尝试做

IV. 重点句式补全

- 1. 句型公式: 否定词 never 置于句首引起的部分倒装
Never have I viewed my ugliness as at the present moment.
我从来没有像现在这样觉得自己丑。
- 2. 句型公式: there 引起的完全倒装
There lay in the accents of the unfortunate man so significant an awareness of his sadness that she had not the strength to utter a syllable.
从那不幸的人的声调里, 可以明显听出他是多么难过, 以致她连一个字也说不出。
- 3. 句型公式: so that 引导目的状语从句
He hides the painting away so that no one else may see it.
他把画藏起来, 不让别人看到。

任务型课堂

1. expression n. 表情;神色;表达;表示

[教材原文]“Poor wretch!” exclaimed Esmeralda, with an **expression** of heartfelt compassion.

“可怜的家伙!”埃斯梅拉达喊道,发自内心地对他表示同情。

[归纳拓展]

(1) facial expression 面部表情

beyond expression 难以表达,无法形容

(2) express v. 表达;表示;描绘

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① Laughter is one of the most infectious expressions (express) of emotion.

② —Oh, you sound just like a native.

—Well, not quite. I still have trouble expressing (express) myself.

③ He and Mr Johnson come from the other side of the earth, so our joy tonight is beyond expression (express).

2. there 引起的完全倒装

[教材原文] **There lay** in the accents of the unfortunate man so significant an awareness of his sadness that she had not the strength to utter a syllable.

从那不幸的人的声调里,可以明显听出他是多么难过,以致她连一个字也说不出。

[句式分析]句中 There lay... 是 There 引起的完全倒装,句子的主语是 so significant an awareness of his sadness, in the accents of the unfortunate man 是地点状语,that 引导结果状语从句。

[归纳拓展]

完全倒装的几种常见结构:

(1) there + be/stand/live/lie... + 主语 + 地点。

(2) now, then, here, in, out, away, up, down 等副词位于句首,句子的主语为名词,且谓语动词是 go, come, fly, fall, run 等动词。

(3) 表示地点的介词短语置于句首。

名师点拨 ■■■■

在上述结构中,若句子的主语是人称代词时,则不用倒装形式。

Here **he comes**. 他来了。

[即学即练]

完成句子

① There stands a temple on the top of the mountain.

山顶有座庙。

② Then followed three days of heavy rain, which made the situation much worse.

紧随其后的便是三天的大雨,这让情况变得更加糟糕。

③ Away went our teacher just now.

我们的老师刚才走了。

④ By the window sat a young man with a magazine in his hand at that time.

窗户边坐着一个年轻人,那时他手里拿着一本杂志。

3. 否定词置于句首引起的部分倒装

[教材原文] **Never have** I viewed my ugliness as at the present moment.

我从来没有像现在这样觉得自己丑。

[句式分析]句中否定词 Never 置于句首,句子用部分倒装,即把助动词 have 提到主语之前。

[归纳拓展]

never, little, seldom, hardly, scarcely, not, at no time, in no sense, on no account, under no circumstances 等含有否定意义的词或短语置于句首时,句子要用部分倒装,即把 be 动词、助动词或情态动词提到主语前面。

名师点拨 ■■■■

对于 not... until 结构,当 not until... 置于句首时,其后的主句要用倒装语序。

Not until he took off his dark glasses **did** I recognise him.

直到他摘下墨镜我才认出他来。

[即学即练]

把下列句子改为倒装句

① I never had such a special drink.

→ Never did I have such a special drink.

② She hardly has time to listen to music.

→ Hardly does she have time to listen to music.

③ He didn't leave the house until the rain stopped.

→ Not until the rain stopped did he leave the house.

④ You should give away the secret under no circumstances.

→ Under no circumstances should you give away the secret.

多义词汇专练

1. **expression**: A. *n.* 词语, 措辞, 表达方式 B. *n.* 表示, 表达 C. *n.* 表情, 神色
- ① The researchers then tested the dogs' ability to distinguish between human facial **expressions** by showing them the other half of the person's face or images totally different from the ones used in training. C
- ② Touched by their enthusiastic **expression** of affection, Mabry thanked them all. "They're like my children," Mabry said. B
- ③ Can you think of a situation where we can use this **expression**? A
2. **repay**: A. *v.* 报答 B. *v.* 偿还 C. *v.* 值得
- ① She asked for the woman's name and address so that she could **repay** her. B
- ② How can I ever **repay** you for your generosity? A
- ③ These sites would **repay** more detailed investigation. C
3. E-book exerts a **profound** impact on the traditional industry. A
- A. *adj.* 深远的 B. *adj.* 知识渊博的 C. *adj.* 玄奥的

写作探究

文学作品简介

「 写作指导 」

(一) 写作内容

文学作品简介属于论说文, 一般包括该作品及作者的背景介绍、主要人物、故事梗概、主要故事情节的介绍以及对该作品的评价和得到的启示。

介绍主要内容时要根据文章的体裁及所要表达的观点抓住要点进行介绍。比如, 议论文要抓住文章的论点及论据, 记叙文要抓住主要人物、时间及事件。

(二) 语言特点

文学作品简介的语言要简练、生动形象。介绍主要内容时要详略得当、清晰准确。表达看法及评价时要有理有据。

「 典题示例 」

“传承中华优秀传统文化, 满足人民日益增长的精神文化需求”是党的二十大报告中的重要内容。为了弘扬中华优秀传统文化, 推进文化自信自强, 某英文杂志社正在征集有关中国古典文学作品介绍的文章, 以此让更多的外国人了解中国文化。请你写一篇有关《西游记》的介绍进行投稿。

注意: 词数 150 左右。

参考词汇: 佛经 Buddhist scriptures; 神话学的, 神话的 mythological; 灾难 calamity; 弟子, 门徒 disciple

Step 1: 审题谋篇

| | |
|----|--|
| 文体 | 论说文 |
| 时态 | 一般现在时 |
| 人称 | 以第三人称为主 |
| 要点 | 1. 简要介绍小说的背景信息及故事梗概 2. 小说的主要内容简介 3. 对该书的评价 |

Step 2: 要点补全

- ① Journey to the West is one of the four great classical novels (《西游记》是四大古典小说之一) of Chinese literature.
- ② It's a mythological novel which is based on many centuries of popular tradition (基于数百年民间传说).
- ③ It tells us thrilling stories (给我们讲述了惊心动魄的故事) about a Buddhist monk, the Monkey King and their trusted companions who go through many amazing adventures (经历许多神奇的冒险) while they are travelling to the West to get some Buddhist scriptures (求取一些佛经).
- ④ The story of Journey to the West is divided into three parts (被分为三部分).
- ⑤ It is not only a novel for entertainment (不仅是一本供消遣的小说), but it is a book full of philosophy and reflection about life and values.

Step 3: 句式升级

①用同位语及过去分词短语作定语升级并连接 Step 2 中的①②两句。

Journey to the West, one of the four great classical novels of Chinese literature, is a mythological novel based on many centuries of popular tradition.

②用 while 从句的省略形式升级 Step 2 中的③句。

It tells us thrilling stories about a Buddhist monk, the Monkey King and their trusted companions who go through many amazing adventures while travelling to the West to get some Buddhist scriptures.

③用倒装句式升级 Step 2 中的⑤句。

Not only is it a novel for entertainment, but it is a book full of philosophy and reflection about life and values.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Journey to the West, one of the four great classical novels of Chinese literature, is a mythological novel based on many centuries of popular tradition. It was probably put into its present form in the 1570s by Wu Cheng'en (1500—1582). It tells us thrilling stories about a Buddhist monk, the Monkey King and their trusted companions who go through many amazing adventures while travelling to the West to get some Buddhist scriptures.

The story of *Journey to the West* is divided into three parts: (1) an early history of the Monkey spirit; (2) a pseudo-historical account of Tripitaka's family and life before his trip to get the sutras; (3) the main story, consisting of 81 dangers and calamities encountered by Tripitaka and his three animal spirit disciples—Monkey, Pigsy, and Sandy (a fish spirit).

Not only is it a novel for entertainment, but it is a book full of philosophy and reflection about life

and values. In addition, it mirrors the Chinese spirit such as self-discipline and overcoming difficulties.

「学以致用」

假定你是李华,你的新西兰朋友 Terry 来信说对中国四大名著之一的《红楼梦》非常感兴趣,请你写信向她介绍一下这部小说。

注意:词数 150 左右。

参考词汇:《红楼梦》*Dream of the Red Chamber*

【参考范文】

Dear Terry,

I'm so glad to receive your email and learn that you have a strong interest in *Dream of the Red Chamber*, one of the four great classical novels of Chinese literature. So, I'm writing to introduce it to you.

Written by Cao Xueqin, a famous novelist of the Qing Dynasty, *Dream of the Red Chamber* is one of the four masterpieces of novels in China. With the thriving and declining of four noble families as the background, it tells the love story between Jia Baoyu and Lin Daiyu. Vividly depicting the life at that time, the novel reveals the darkness and corruption of the old society as well as the desire for freedom and is of high artistic value.

The novel is simple, meaningful in language and contains many graceful classical Chinese poems, which is beneficial in improving your Chinese. Besides, reading this novel will definitely help to deepen your understanding of Chinese culture.

As you read, you should pay attention to many characters and complex relationships in *Dream of the Red Chamber*. I sincerely hope that you enjoy reading this novel and can share your feelings and opinions with me.

Best wishes.

Yours,

Li Hua

课后素养评价(五)**I. 单句语法填空**

- I'd like to share three reading comprehension (comprehend) skills that I use to make my reading more productive.
- He is regarded as one of the most famous novelists (novel) in China.

- It is acknowledged that our monitor resembles (resemble) the famous host Henry so much in appearance.
- After hearing the news, he exclaimed (exclaim) that it was untrue.
- This music reminds me of the day years ago when we had first met.

6. All the competitors attempted to win (win) the gold medal in the competition.
7. The students were shown a series of facial expressions (expression) to describe using an English word.
8. The experienced hostess rose to her feet in one graceful (grace) movement, which earned herself applause from the audience.

II. 补全句子

1. 昨天晚上在电影院我看到的确实是你吗？(强调句型)
Was it you that/who I saw last night in the cinema?
2. 以前我们从来没有见过这样的情景。(never 位于句首引起的倒装)
Never before have we seen such a sight.
3. 凶手被带了进来，双手被绑在背后。(with 的复合结构)
The murderer was brought in, with his hands tied behind his back.
4. 如果你能来参加我的生日聚会我将很感激。(it 作形式宾语)
I would appreciate it if you could come to my birthday party.
5. 这个村子太小，以至于在这幅地图上无法展示。(so... that...)
The village is so small that it cannot be shown on the map.
6. 路边立着的一块标牌写着“此路不通”。(there 位于句首引起的倒装)
There stands a sign by the roadside which reads “blocked road”.

III. 语法填空

Achieng took up Chinese language studies during her undergraduate education, **1. hoping** (hope) to get a chance to travel in China. **2. However**, as her interest in the Chinese language grew, she took the studies of the Chinese language more seriously and today she **3. teaches** (teach) the language at the Confucius Institute at the University of Nairobi.

4. During Achieng's days as a student, the Chinese language had not been officially adopted into the Kenyan education curriculum and she was lucky **5. to learn** (learn) the language at the Confucius Institute. In 2019, the Kenyan government introduced the Chinese language as **6. an** optional

subject for young learners along with other foreign languages, **7. which** Achieng thinks highly of.

“This is better because young learners have more time and their brains can handle a new language better. It also gives them **8. exposure** (expose) to the culture early enough,” Achieng said.

As a Chinese language lecturer, Achieng sees numerous **9. benefits** (benefit) for Kenyan students who choose Chinese as a foreign language. Not only do they have more employment opportunities, but they also stand a chance to earn scholarship opportunities for **10. further** (far) studies in China and later land business opportunities in both Kenya and China.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华，你的美国朋友 Jack 写信告诉你他因不善交友，感觉在日常学习与生活中缺乏和同学之间的交流而苦恼。请你给他回信，提出建议，要点如下：

1. 写信目的；
2. 你的建议；
3. 你的理由。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 可以适当增加细节，使行文连贯；
3. 开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

【参考范文】

Dear Jack,

I'm sorry to hear that you're feeling worried for failing to make friends. Some tips below may be helpful to you.

First, be kind, friendly and polite to others and always ready to help others, through which you'll be rewarded. Second, try to communicate with others more, for it helps strengthen your ties with friends and lots of misunderstandings can be avoided. Third, take an active part in activities, such as sports, games, travels, parties, etc. In this way, you'll get more chances to communicate with others. Besides, it is also very important that friends should be faithful to each other.

Anyhow, there are many ways to develop a good friendship. Hope you'll get along well with your friends.

Best wishes.

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I always wondered how people would react if I tried to approach a total stranger for help in a busy place like a street corner or in a bustling mall. I personally have always hurried past a stranger who tried to catch my attention in a busy place or when I am rushing around.

Yesterday I had a taste of being stuck in such a desperate situation where my only hope of help would have to come from a total stranger.

I was in a busy shopping mall buying a large piece of luggage. After the purchase in one of the large, fancy, expensive shops, I picked up my phone from my pocket to call my driver waiting in the parking lot but my phone was dead.

I then requested the shop assistant who had just sold me the luggage, which was not cheap at all, if she could ring the number of my driver for me. She replied, still all smiles, "I'm sorry, sir, but it is the shop policy that we cannot use mobile phones while working in the shop."

As I was wondering what kind of policy that was, I saw a nice-looking teenage boy coming towards me. Remembering my wife's interesting theory that beautiful people are more likely to give you a hand when you're in trouble, I thought I might have a chance. But before I could say a word, he walked past me. It turned out he simply didn't see me.

I waited a bit longer in the mall but it seemed nobody bothered to look at me. Disappointed and

tired, I got out of the shop onto the busy street in front. I stood there with people rushing by, looking at their faces to see if there was a sign of kindness on their faces. I began wondering how many times I had reacted to strangers like the shopgirl and the teenager.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

At that point I saw a young mother with her two kids. I thought that a beautiful woman with charming blue eyes must be willing to help me. So, with great expectations, I walked briskly towards her with an appropriate smile on my face, and requested courteously if she could be kind enough to make a phone call for me. However, what I saw was a woman's face disfigured by frowns and what I heard was a sound of dismay and suspicion under her breath. Without a word, she pulled her kids to escape from me, as if scared by a murderer. I stood there, motionless, with a blank face and a sinking heart.

Finally a man wearing a cheap T-shirt and dirty jeans seemed to notice me. I squeezed a smile though it failed to mask my weariness, and requested the same thing from him. Unexpectedly, he took out his mobile phone for me without hesitation or any probing questions. Dancing in his eyes was the real kindness that I had been struggling to seek for so long. From that day on, I began helping other strangers in distress, just like the poor-looking but kind man, with the aim of passing kindness and melting the ice in many people's hearts.

读后续写技能养成

高级句式之无灵主语句

「技能概述」

1. 无灵主语句:指“无灵主语+有灵动词”构成的句式。“无灵主语”就是“没有生命力”的东西作主语,比如时间、地点、自然现象等。“有灵动词”就是把没有生命力的东西赋予有生命力的动作的动词,如 see, witness, come across, choke, seize, flood 等。
2. 续写技巧:养成客体思维,熟练使用如 see, find, tell, witness 等有灵动词来描述“什么事发生在什么人身上”这样的拟人化句子。

「范例体悟」

Jenny made her way to the platform with every confidence. Words began to flood out of her. "How could she make it? We've never seen Jenny give so terrific a speech." Whispers went around the classroom, and even Miss Walker nodded with approval. Immediately Jenny finished her speech, a storm of applause erupted from the class.

找出文中含“无灵主语句”的句子并写下来。

Words began to flood out of her; Whispers went around the classroom; a storm of applause erupted from the class

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. happiness/delight *n.* 开心, 快乐
2. sight *n.* 看见
3. thought *n.* 想法
4. glance *n.* 一瞥
5. feeling *n.* 感受
6. astonishment/surprise *n.* 惊讶
7. shame *n.* 羞耻
8. anger *n.* 愤怒
9. despair *n.* 绝望
10. regret *n.* & *v.* 后悔
11. sorrow *n.* 悲伤
12. horror *n.* 惊恐
13. gloom *n.* 愁容, 忧郁
14. disappointment *n.* 失望
15. puzzlement *n.* 困惑不解
16. seize *v.* 侵袭
17. choke *v.* 噎住
18. flood *v.* 充满
19. strike *v.* 侵袭
20. arouse *v.* 唤起
21. remind *v.* 使想起
22. flash *v.* 闪烁
23. linger *v.* 流连
24. light up/brighten 照亮
25. well up 涌出
26. give sb. the shivers 令人不寒而栗
27. give way to 让位于

II. 佳句背诵

1. Anger choked my words.
我气得说不出话。
2. The thick fog blanketed the field.
浓雾笼罩着整个大地。
3. A heavy rain visited the city.
这个城市刚下过一场大雨。
4. Night has fallen over the country.
夜幕已经笼罩着乡间。

5. A wave of nervousness washed over him.
一阵紧张的情绪涌上他的心头。
6. That chilly afternoon witnessed him trudging in the snow.
那个寒冷的下午见证了他在雪地里跋涉。
7. Her face brightened when I gave her the present.
我给她礼物时, 她的脸上焕发出了光彩。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. The thought of seeing her son very soon filled her heart with great happiness.
想到不久就要见到她的儿子, 她心中感到十分快乐。
2. Deep wrinkles gradually climbed on my partners' faces.
我搭档们的脸上逐渐出现深深的皱纹。
3. Like a ray of sunshine, the big smile on her face swept away my gloom.
她脸上的灿烂笑容像一缕阳光, 一扫我的愁容。
4. A few steps across the lawn brought me to a large, splendid hotel.
沿着草地走上几步, 我就来到一个豪华的大酒店前。

II. 用高级句式之“无灵主语句”完成语段

We had no idea where we were and it was getting dark. The moon 1. burst through the clouds and cast its silver light all over the wet land (破云而出, 把银光洒在潮湿的土地上). We wandered slowly on our horses, feeling at a loss what to do. Suddenly, 2. the sound of a flowing river caught my attention (河水流动的声音引起了我的注意). “Dad, maybe we can find the farm house down the river.” Dad nodded with approval. With great care, we rode our horses along the river. Shortly afterwards, 3. Uncle Paul's farm, sure enough, came into our sight (保罗叔叔的农场果然进入了我们的视线). Finally, we got to the farm, safe and sound. What a trip like never before!

Unit 2 A life’s work

主题语境

人与自我——工匠精神

| | |
|--------|---|
| 必背单词 | pose, grocery, fashion, uncomplicated, celebrity, trial, hydrogen, propulsion, precious, antique, restoration, maximum, workshop, polish, bark, preserve, essay, dominate, architecture, ambitious, associate, analysis, comprise |
| 重点表达 | by trial and error, back down, think outside the box, break new ground, put... into..., approach to..., day in, day out, bring... back to life, pass on... to..., nothing more than, devotion to, at one’s own pace, range from... to..., take up |
| 重点知识 | 1. nor 置于句首引起的部分倒装 2. “no matter+特殊疑问词”引导让步状语从句 3. if 引导的虚拟条件句 |
| 单元语法 | 表语从句 |
| 单元写作 | 介绍人物的说明文 |
| 主题美文赏读 | <p>Choosing a job is never easy. Whether it is for students or for those who have already worked in the workplace, this is a major decision. Standing in front of a main crossroads of life, we may panic and become confused. Maybe you should ask yourself this question first: Does this position meet my values? It is undeniable (不可否认的) that each of us has our own values. Some people like to judge the advantages and disadvantages of different values; but the fact is that most times there are only differences among various values, not superiority (优势) or inferiority (劣势). Different values should adopt different paths. Don’t forget. It is the adequate one which is the best. May you find the future that suits you best.</p> <p>选择一份工作从来都不容易。无论是对学生还是已经在职场工作的人来说,这都是一个重大的决定。站在人生的十字路口前,我们可能会惊慌失措,变得迷茫。也许你应该先问自己这个问题:这份工作符合我的价值观吗? 不可否认,我们每个人都有自己的价值观。有些人喜欢评判不同价值观的优劣;但事实是,大多数时候,不同的价值观之间只有差异,没有优劣之分。不同的价值观应该采用不同的路径。不要忘记。合适的才是最好的。愿你找到最适合自己的未来。</p> |

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. fashion *n.* 时尚
2. uncomplicated *adj.* 不复杂的,简单的;单纯的
3. regardless of 不管;不顾
4. as much as 和……一样多;差不多;多达
5. belong to 属于
6. focus on 专注于,集中精力于
7. devotion to 对……的奉献
8. put... into 把……投入
9. approach to 对待……的方式

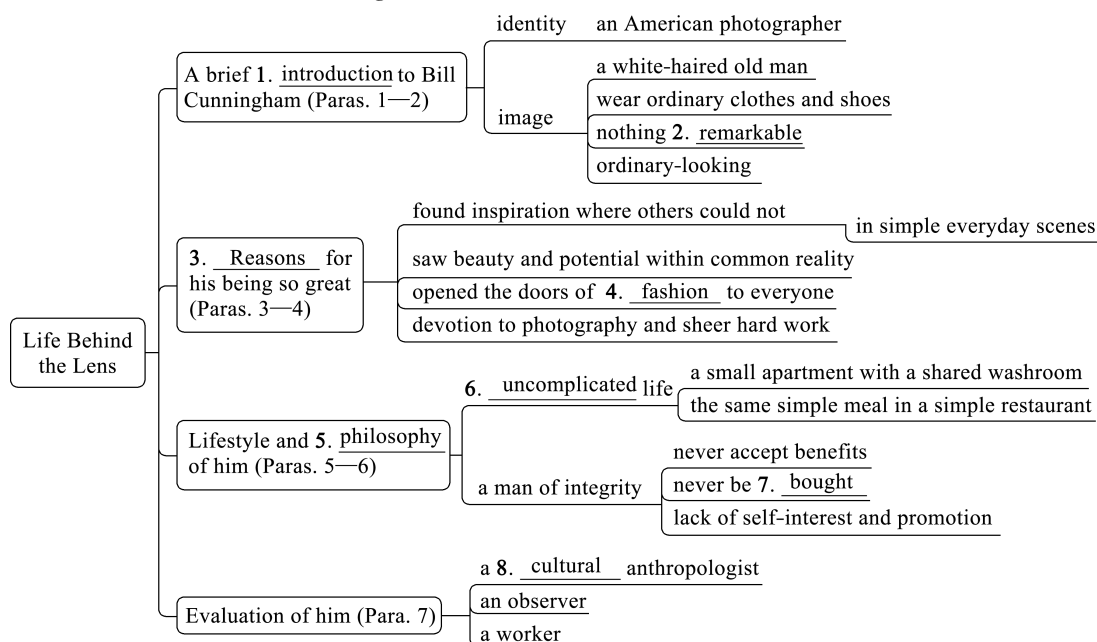
(二)阅读词汇

1. pose *v.* (使)摆好姿势
2. grocery *n.* 食品杂货店
3. fascination *n.* 着迷,迷恋
4. faraway *adj.* 遥远的
5. celebrity *n.* 名人,明星
6. craft *n.* (某一行业所需的)技能
7. anthropologist *n.* 人类学家
8. lens *n.* (照相机、摄像机的)镜头
9. nothing more than 仅仅;只是
10. pose for 为……摆好姿势
11. fascination with 对……的迷恋/着迷
12. pass away 去世

多维化析文

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Why do people always think Cunningham is unremarkable?

- A. Because he is too ordinary-looking.
- B. Because he likes riding an ordinary bicycle.
- C. Because he loves wearing ordinary clothes.
- D. Because he always poses for high society.

答案: A

2. What made Cunningham such a great photographer?

- A. Expensive technologically advanced equipment.
- B. A wide range of contacts and connections.
- C. Fashionable parties and events.
- D. The inspiration in simple, everyday scenes.

答案:D

3. What was his belief about fashion?

- A. Fashion belonged to all the people.
- B. Only celebrities could match with fashion.
- C. Fashion was something nobody could go for.
- D. High society and big brands should share it with ordinary people.

答案:A

4. Which of the following can best describe Cunningham?

- A. Smart and helpful.
- B. Caring and generous.
- C. Simple and considerate.
- D. Hard-working and noble-minded.

答案:D

▶ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

Cunningham was 1. a famous American photographer of the last 50 years. He took all his 2. pictures (picture) on the streets of New York and found 3. inspiration (inspire) in simple, everyday scenes because he thought only in real things could he see beauty and potential. In his opinion, fashion belonged 4. to all the people. His devotion and hard work 5. that/which can be reflected in his photos contributes to his success. Though he was famous, his approach to life was 6. uncomplicated (complicated). Cunningham never accepted the benefits 7. offered (offer) to him because he valued his integrity. He once said, "Money's the 8. cheapest (cheap) thing." All his attention 9. was focused (focus) on his craft.

He passed away at the age of 87 and was recognised as a "10. cultural (culture) anthropologist".

Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Through his fascination with what people were wearing, and not who they were, he opened the doors of fashion to everyone—fashion as he saw it belonged to the people, not just to high society and big brands.

[句子分析]句中 what people were wearing 和 who they were 为 and 连接的两个并列句,第一个并列句由 what 引导,第二个并列句由 who 引导,as he saw it 为 as 引导的方式状语从句。

[尝试翻译]他执着于人们的穿着,而不是他们的身份,通过这份执着,他为所有人打开了时尚的大门——在他看来,时尚属于民众,而不仅仅属于上流社会和大品牌。

2. Moreover, what made Cunningham great was his devotion to photography, and the hours and hours of sheer hard work he put into his work.

[句子分析]分句中 what made Cunningham great 为 what 引导的主语从句,he put into his work 为省略关系代词 that/which 的定语从句,修饰先行词 hard work。

[尝试翻译]此外,令坎宁安伟大的是他对摄影的热爱,以及他在工作中投入的长时间的十足的辛劳。

▶ 思维品质培养

Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. What can you learn from Bill Cunningham?

Only by living a simple life, indifferent to fame and wealth can we have more energy to pursue our dreams.

2. Why is Bill Cunningham called a "cultural anthropologist"?

Because his photography captured and created an everlasting record of the life of New York and its people over half a century.

课后素养评价(六)

I. 阅读理解

Workers, and possibly all people, can be divided into two groups. Those who like to be involved in everything and can be labelled “FOMOs” because they suffer from a “fear of missing out”. Then there are those who would simply want to be left to get on with their own particular work, without distraction—the “JOMOs” (joy of missing out).

If the boss announces a new project, do you immediately volunteer, thinking this will be a great chance to prove your skills? If so, you are a FOMO. Or do you foresee the trouble involved, the likely failure of the project, and the weekend emails from all the FOMOs wanting to spend less time with their families? Then you are a certified JOMO. Another test is technology. FOMOs are early users, picking up the latest devices and sending documents to colleagues through the latest file-sharing programme. JOMOs tend to believe that any technology upgrade will be troublesome in the beginning and wonder why on earth their colleagues can't send the document everyone has been familiar with.

Networking events are the kind of thing that gets FOMOs excited as a chance to exchange ideas and make contacts. When JOMOs hear the word “networking”, they reach for their noise-cancelling earphones. For them, being made to attend an industry cocktail party is rather like being forced to attend the wedding of someone they hardly know—a social suffering. Similarly, when it comes to business travel, FOMOs can't wait to experience the delight of overseas conferences and visiting new places. It will all look good on their CV. JOMOs know that such travel involves lots of discomforts like crowded airline seats. The final destination turns out to be nothing more than a common conference centre or hotel that they forget five minutes after they have left. While they recognise that they have to attend some meetings and go on

trips to get their work done, JOMOs regard such things as a self-punishment instead of a privilege. Something useful may come out of it, but best not to get their hopes up.

It might seem obvious that employers should look to hire FOMOs, not their opposites. After all, in a company full of JOMOs, sales might suffer and there would be little innovation. But while FOMOs are racing from meeting to networking events, employers need a few JOMOs to be doing actual work. The other reason why depending on FOMOs is dangerous is that they are naturally restless. JOMOs will be loyal, for fear of ending up with a worse employer. But FOMOs may think that working for one company means they are missing out on better conditions at another. That is the point of most networking, after all.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了职场中的两类人——FOMOs 和 JOMOs。

1. Which of the following best describes FOMOs?

- A. Excited about the networking events.
- B. Finding it annoyed to use latest devices.
- C. Hesitating to get involved in a new project.
- D. Showing no interest in building up the social relationship.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Workers, and possibly all people, can be divided into two groups. Those who like to be involved in everything and can be labelled ‘FOMOs’ because they suffer from a ‘fear of missing out’.”以及第三段中的“Networking events are the kind of thing that gets FOMOs excited as a chance to exchange ideas and make contacts.”可知,FOMOs 这类工作人员“害怕错过”,所以他们积极参与工作中的任何任务,即兴奋地对待社交活动。故选 A。

2. When it comes to business travel, what do FOMOs tend to do?

- A. Enjoy the conferences and the overseas trip.
- B. Believe it will enrich their working experience.

- C. Finish their work without too much expectations.
D. Complain about something uncomfortable during the trip.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Similarly, when it comes to business travel, FOMOs can't wait to experience the delight of overseas conferences and visiting new places.”可知,当谈到商务旅行时,FOMOs 则迫不及待地要享受会议和海外旅行。故选 A。

3. According to the author, why is it dangerous to depend on FOMOs?

- A. They don't do any actual work at all.
B. They usually end up with a worse employer.
C. They don't improve sales and have little innovation.
D. They may leave for better job chances in another company.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“The other reason why depending on FOMOs is dangerous is that they are naturally restless. JOMOs will be loyal, for fear of ending up with a worse employer. But FOMOs may think that working for one company means they are missing out on better conditions at another. That is the point of most networking, after all.”可知,一家公司过度依赖 FOMOs 是危险的,原因在于他们可能会为了其他公司更好的工作机会而离开。故选 D。

4. What is the author's attitude towards JOMOs?

- A. Indifferent. B. Positive.
C. Doubtful. D. Critical.

B 观点态度题。根据最后一段中的“The other reason why depending on FOMOs is dangerous is that they are naturally restless. JOMOs will be loyal, for fear of ending up with a worse employer.”可知,作者对 JOMOs 的态度是积极的。故选 B。

II. 七选五

For some people, it's easy to get stuck in the same thought patterns. 1 People who have creative thinking, however, can have many solutions to any problem, and they can recognise innovative solutions more quickly. So, creative thinking may feel like a superpower reserved only for a “creative person”. 2 Anyone can develop a creative mind with some practice.

3 One powerful one is to meet new people, especially if they're in the arts or in a different industry from you. Sharing your interests and listening to others can inspire you to view the world differently. Practising boredom can help you develop your creativity, too. Allowing yourself to become bored and seeing what pulls your interest can help you practise letting your curiosity lead the way.

4 When you're feeling uninspired, coaching can refocus your attention and help you get curious about your experience.

Thinking more creatively can take effort, but a little practice can make you a better employee; it can make you a better parent, student, and leader, too.

5

- A. They may hold back people's innovation.
B. Coaching can also help train your creative thinking.
C. There are many ways to encourage creative thinking.
D. Inspiration is a powerful tool to help foster your related skills.
E. Thankfully, creative masters aren't the only ones with innovative ideas.
F. Many creative thinking methods work best when they're done in a group.
G. The benefits of thinking creatively can show up throughout your daily life.

答案:1~5 AECEG

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The use of **celebrities** such as singers and movie stars is common in advertising. 名人, 明星
2. They have just returned from **faraway** places with wonderful stories to tell. 遥远的
3. Some adjustments of the **lens** may be necessary. 镜头
4. The traditional **craft** has been passed down from generation to generation. 技能
5. A painter friend I know expects me to **pose** for him by the hour. 摆好姿势

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---|--|
| <u>fascination</u> <i>n.</i> 着迷, 迷恋 | fascinate <i>v.</i> 使着迷, 强烈吸引 |
| | fascinated <i>adj.</i> 着迷的, 被强烈吸引的 |
| | fascinating <i>adj.</i> 吸引人的, 迷人的 |
| <u>fashion</u> <i>n.</i> 时尚 | fashionable <i>adj.</i> 时尚的, 流行的 |
| <u>uncomplicated</u> <i>adj.</i> 不复杂的, 简单的; 单纯的 | complicated <i>adj.</i> 复杂的, 难懂的 |
| | complicate <i>v.</i> 使复杂化 |
| | complication <i>n.</i> 使更复杂化(或更困难)的事物; (医学)并发症 |
| <u>grocery</u> <i>n.</i> 食品杂货店 | grocer <i>n.</i> 食品杂货店店主 |

III. 补全短语

1. regardless of 不管; 不顾
2. nothing more than 仅仅; 只是
3. pose for 为……摆好姿势
4. as much as 和……一样多; 多达
5. devotion to 对……的奉献
6. put... into 把……投入
7. approach to 对待……的方式
8. passion for 对……的热爱
9. not once 一次也不; 一次也没有
10. fascination with 对……的迷恋/着迷

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: what 引导表语从句
This devotion and hard work is what we see reflected within his photos.
我们所看到的奉献精神 and 辛勤工作反映在了他的照片中。
2. 句型公式: nor 置于句首引起的部分倒装
Nor was it a wide range of contacts and connections.
(坎宁安享有盛誉)也不在于他交友广泛、识人无数。
3. 句型公式: “no matter + 特殊疑问词”引导让步状语从句
He valued his integrity and would not be bought by anyone, no matter how many free clothes or flights to faraway destinations he was offered.
他珍视自己的正直, 不为任何人所收买, 无论给他多少免费的衣服或远程航班。

任务型课堂

1. fascination *n.* 着迷, 迷恋

[教材原文] Through his **fascination** with what people were wearing, and not who they were, he opened the doors of fashion to everyone...
他执着于人们的穿着, 而不是他们的身份, 通过这份执着, 他为每个人打开了时尚的大门……

[归纳拓展]

- (1) fascination with 对……的迷恋/着迷
in/with fascination 着迷地
- (2) fascinate *v.* 使着迷, 强烈吸引
be fascinated by 被……吸引, 对……着迷
- (3) fascinating *adj.* 迷人的, 吸引人的

(4) fascinated *adj.* 被迷住的, 被吸引住的; 极感兴趣的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Some people admired him for his lifelong fascination with the ancient Chinese buildings.

② The dad walked into the son's room and he found that the son was reading a book in/with fascination.

③ Gradually he became fascinated (fascinate) by dinosaurs.

(2) 语境语法填空

Yesterday I went to the circus. I ① was fascinated (fascinate) by all kinds of performances in the circus. But what ② fascinated (fascinate) me most was the high-wire circus act. The ③ fascinating (fascinate) performance was so wonderful and thrilling that I watched it ④ in/with fascination.

2. fashion *n.* 时尚

[教材原文] His hard work made him more than a **fashion** photographer...

他的辛勤工作使他不仅仅是一位时尚摄影师……

[归纳拓展]

(1) be/come back into/in fashion 再次流行起来
come into fashion 流行起来

go/be out of fashion 过时

(2) fashionable *adj.* 流行的, 时尚的

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① High heels are back in/into fashion.

② His ideas have gone right out of fashion.

③ Our clothes are lightweight, fashionable (fashion) and practical for holidays.

3. nor 置于句首引起的部分倒装

[教材原文] **Nor was** it a wide range of contacts and connections.

(坎宁安享有盛誉)也不在于他交友广泛、识人无数。

[句式分析] 本句中 Nor 置于句首, 句子用部分倒装, 即把系动词提到了主语之前。

[归纳拓展]

nor 置于句首时, 句子要用部分倒装, 即把助动词、

系动词或情态动词提到主语之前。

名师点拨 ■■■■

(1) 在上述结构中, nor 可以用 neither 替换。

(2) nor 与 neither 连用引导句子时, 若将两者置于句首, 则两句都用部分倒装, 表示“既不……也不……”。

(3) 若表示两者中“一个……另一个也……”, 要用“so + 助动词、系动词或情态动词 + 主语”结构。

Neither has he done it, and **nor will** he do it.

他没做过这事, 以后也不会做。

Daisy has been to China, and **so has** Sarah.

戴西去过中国, 萨拉也去过。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① My sister hasn't had breakfast, and nor have my parents.

② They didn't go to the park yesterday and neither/nor did we.

③ Li Lei can't dance. Neither/Nor can Tom.

④ Wang Fang performs well in the English class. So does Mary.

(2) 完成句子

Neither did Peter want to take on the responsibility, and nor was his wife willing to.

彼得不想承担责任, 他的妻子也不愿意。

4. “no matter + 特殊疑问词”引导让步状语从句

[教材原文] He valued his integrity and would not be bought by anyone, **no matter how** many free clothes or flights to faraway destinations he was offered.

他珍视自己的正直, 不为任何人所收买, 无论给他多少免费的衣服或远程航班。

[句式分析] 句中 no matter how 引导让步状语从句, 该从句中 he was offered 是定语从句, 修饰先行词 clothes or flights, 省略了关系代词 that 或 which。

[归纳拓展]

在引导让步状语从句时“no matter + when/who/where/how/whom 等”相当于“when/who/where/how/whom 等 + 后缀-ever”。

名师点拨

“when/who/where/how/whom 等 + 后缀-ever”既能引导让步状语从句,又能引导名词性从句;但“no matter + when/who/where/how/whom 等”只能引导让步状语从句。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① No matter what happened, he wouldn't say a word.
 ② No matter where he may go, I'll follow him.
 ③ He was always busy working no matter when I

visited him.

④ (2023 · 新课标 I 卷) Whatever it is, no matter how small it might seem, write it down.

(2) 句型转换

① No matter what happens, she still has faith in him.

→ Whatever happens, she still has faith in him.

② No matter which dictionary you take, you'll have to pay at least 20 dollars.

→ Whichever dictionary you take, you'll have to pay at least 20 dollars.

多义词汇专练

pose: A. v. (为画像、摄影)摆好姿势 B. v. 造成(威胁、问题等) C. v. 提问

① The researchers **pose** problems that require detailed technical help.

C

② This could **pose** a threat to jobs in the coal industry.

B

③ How did you get him to **pose** for this picture?

A

课后素养评价(七)

I. 单词拼写

1. We are becoming one of the market leaders in the fashion (时尚) industry.
 2. All the students began to pose (摆好姿势) for a group photograph.
 3. The old view of Galileo was delightfully uncomplicated (不复杂的).
 4. Grocery (食品杂货店) stores have to offer enough specials to bring people into the store.
 5. The programme hosted by him is so fantastic that it attracts many celebrities (名人).
 6. The girls listened in fascination (着迷) as the story unfolded.
 7. So loud was the noise that it could be heard by the faraway (遥远的) hills.

II. 短语填空

regardless of; not once; as much as; nothing more than; put... into...

1. There is solid evidence that they lived in these caves, regardless of the cold.
 2. After a few miles, Tom wanted nothing more than to lie down.
 3. Tom puts a lot of time and energy into improving his listening ability and he finally catches up with his classmates.

4. As far as I'm concerned, it matters as much as a formal talk.

5. I have not once asked for leave during the whole year.

III. 完成句子

1. It is his devotion to his job that makes him succeed in this field.

正是他对工作的奉献精神使他在这个领域取得了成功。

2. Whether an approach to solving the problem can be found is what worries the public.

能否找到解决这个问题的办法是公众所担心的。

3. His father's passion for nature influenced him greatly, making him want to be a botanist when he grew up.

父亲对大自然的热情对他影响很大,这使得他长大后想成为一名植物学家。

4. During the journey, my sister didn't miss every chance to practise speaking English, nor did I.

在旅行中,姐姐不放过每次练习说英语的机会,我也不放过。

5. You should persist in your dream no matter what difficulties you meet.

无论你遇到了什么困难,你都应该坚持自己的梦想。

IV. 完形填空

Last week we encountered a minor water crisis at our home. A water pipe (管子) had been leaking 1 within a bathroom wall, which my husband and I 2 for long. Consequently, we woke up one morning to a pool of water on the bedroom floor. We 3 the bedroom sofa that shares the same wall and located the 4: Water had spread from a break between the wall and the floor.

I got down to clearing up the 5. Initially, I used towels to absorb the water. When seeing the break was not huge, I tried 6 back the water with a mop (拖把). But the 7 quickly became bigger, making more water constantly well out. This was a sign that something deeper within the wall needed our 8.

We acted decisively, shutting 9 the main water line, opening up the wall and beginning the chaotic work of 10 the broken pipe. Despite quite a bit of wall repair and painting to do, we were 11 that it was no longer leaking and our water supply was back on track. Later, we were told by an architect friend that such a small leak can become a 12 break and eventually do serious structural damage to our home.

Big problems usually start small. I've been reflecting: How many times we don't bother to 13 small issues that demand our attention until they grow into big ones that almost 14 our life. With more care and earlier action, we can save ourselves much time and 15.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者家浴室墙上的水管有点漏水,作者及时进行了处理,避免了更大的问题;这也让作者意识到,面对小问题,我们要及时采取行动,避免更大的问题发生。

1. A. rapidly B. slightly
C. heavily D. widely

B 根据上文“Last week we encountered a minor water crisis at our home.”可知,作者家遇到的是一次小的漏水危机,由此可知,水管轻微漏水,并不严重。故选 B。

2. A. expected B. discussed
C. considered D. ignored

D 根据下文“Consequently, we woke up one morning to a pool of water on the bedroom floor.”可知,作者忽视了之前的漏水问题,结果遭遇了危机。故选 D。

3. A. occupied B. changed
C. abandoned D. removed

D 根据下文“Water had spread from a break between the wall and the floor.”可知,水是从墙和地板之间的缝隙中流出来的,由此可知,作者移开了卧室沙发,才发现了这个问题。故选 D。

4. A. fault B. resource
C. item D. approach

A 根据下文“Water had spread from a break between the wall and the floor.”可知,水是从墙和地板之间的缝隙中流出来的,由此可知,这是故障所在。故选 A。

5. A. objects B. doubt
C. mess D. memories

C 根据上文“Consequently, we woke up one morning to a pool of water on the bedroom floor.”可知,因为漏水,卧室地板上有一摊水,由此可知,作者要收拾混乱的场面。故选 C。

6. A. pushing B. drawing
C. shipping D. blowing

A 根据上文“When seeing the break was not huge”可知,裂缝不大,由此可知,作者想用拖把将水堵回去。故选 A。

7. A. floor B. leak
C. pipe D. wall

B 根据下文“making more water constantly well out”可知,更多的水不断流出,由此可知,裂缝变得更大了。故选 B。

8. A. mention B. service
C. attention D. sympathy

C 根据上文“making more water constantly well out”可知,更多的水不断流出,由此可知,墙内更深处有问题需要注意。故选 C。

9. A. through B. aside
C. apart D. down

D 根据下文“opening up the wall and beginning the chaotic work of 10 the broken pipe”可知,作者开始修理破裂的管道,由此可知,作者应该先关闭主水管,再进行修理。故选 D。

10. A. arranging B. preserving
C. fixing D. distinguishing

C 根据下文“broken pipe”可知,管道破裂了,因此,作者要进行修理工作。故选 C。

11. A. curious B. anxious
C. shocked D. relieved

D 根据下文“it was no longer leaking and our water supply was back on track”可知,管道不再

漏水,供水也回到了正轨,由此可知,作者放心了,松了口气。故选 D。

12. A. sharp B. major
C. mental D. temporary
- B 根据下文“eventually do serious structural damage to our home”可知,这个小缝隙如果不及
时修理,可能会变成大缝隙,造成严重的破坏。故
选 B。
13. A. address B. highlight
C. admit D. postpone
- A 根据下文“they grow into big ones”可知,小
问题会发展成几乎毁掉我们生活的大问题,因为

我们不去解决它。故选 A。

14. A. cure B. direct
C. ruin D. dominate
- C 根据上文“they grow into big ones”可知,小
问题会发展成几乎毁掉我们生活的大问题。故
选 C。
15. A. space B. trouble
C. argument D. water
- B 根据上文“With more care and earlier action”
可知,更早采取行动,小问题就不会发展成大问
题,会给我们节省很多时间和避免麻烦。故选 B。

Section III Using language

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The company has been targeted by animal rights
groups for its use of dogs in drugs **trials**. 试验
2. **Hydrogen** and oxygen combine to form water. 氢
3. The nineteenth century witnessed (见证) a
revolution in ship design and **propulsion**. 推进力
4. The other day, the **acclaim** coming from my head
teacher at the class meeting made me excited. 表扬
5. Someone chooses to **shun** the focus of the public,
while someone chooses to grab and make good
use of it. 避开,躲开
6. It was hard to imagine much life in this **harsh**
environment of rock, wind and fires. 恶劣的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---|--|
| <u>atomic</u> <i>adj.</i> 原子能的;核 能的 | <u>atom</u> <i>n.</i> 原子,原子核 |
| <u>prosperous</u> <i>adj.</i> 富裕的,繁 荣的,兴旺的,发达的 | <u>prosperity</u> <i>n.</i> 繁荣,富庶, 昌盛 |
| <u>craftsmanship</u> <i>n.</i> 手艺;工 艺;技艺 | <u>craftsman</u> <i>n.</i> 匠人;能工 巧匠 |
| | <u>craft</u> <i>n.</i> 手艺;工艺 |

III. 补全短语

1. allow for 考虑到,顾及
2. back down 退让;认输

3. think outside the box 不拘一格地思考,跳出框框
思考
4. break new ground 开辟新的领域;有新发现
5. on a daily basis 每天
6. keep on 反复地做;继续进行

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:时间状语从句的省略
After coming back from the US, Deng devoted
himself whole-heartedly to the development of the
“two bombs”.
从美国回国后,邓稼先就全身心投入到“两弹”的
研制工作中。
2. 句型公式:make+宾语+宾语补足语
This lifelong devotion has made him one of the
most celebrated Peking Opera artists of all time.
这种终生的奉献使他成为有史以来最著名的京剧
艺术家之一。
3. 句型公式:现在分词短语作结果状语
In October 1964, China exploded its first atomic
bomb, marking a successful start of the “two
bombs, one satellite” project, in which more
than 17,000 scientists and researchers
participated.
1964年10月,中国引爆了第一颗原子弹,标志着
“两弹一星”计划的成功开启,这个计划有17 000多
名科学家和研究人员参加。

任务型课堂

1. trial n. 试验;试用;审判;审理;令人伤脑筋的人(事)

[教材原文] Although Walnut Creek was not where they grew naturally, Ruth managed to grow them by much **trial** and error.

虽然核桃溪市并不是它们的原产地,鲁丝通过反复试验得以成功地种植。

[归纳拓展]

(1) by trial and error 反复试验(以得出最佳结果)

(2) be on trial for sth. 为某项罪名受审判

(3) bring sb. to trial = put sb. on trial 使某人受审,审问某人

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① By trial and error, these scientists finally found out what caused the problem.

② She was on trial for cheating in the College Entrance Examination.

③ Those who refused to pay fines were put on trial.

2. 现在分词短语作结果状语

[教材原文] In October 1964, China exploded its first atomic bomb, **marking a successful start of the “two bombs, one satellite” project**, in which more than 17,000 scientists and researchers participated.

1964年10月,中国引爆了第一颗原子弹,标志着“两弹一星”计划的成功开启,这个计划有17 000多名科学家和研究人员参加。

[归纳拓展]

(1) 作状语的现在分词的逻辑主语是句子的主语,表示时间、原因、结果、条件、方式或伴随等。现在分词的一般式表示的动作与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生。现在分词的完成式表示的动作在谓语动词表示的动作之前发生。

(2) 不定式和现在分词都可作结果状语,不定式用于表示意想不到的结果,现在分词则表示自然而然的结果。

名师点拨

(1) 现在分词置于逗号之后除了作结果状语外,还常作伴随状语,这时现在分词相当于由 and 连接的并列谓语。

The boy dropped the bowl on the floor, **breaking** (= and broke) it into pieces.

那个男孩把碗掉在地上,摔成了碎片。(结果状语)

He lay on the grass, **staring** (= and stared) at the stars in the sky.

他躺在草地上,凝望着天上的星星。(伴随状语)

(2) 现在分词作结果状语表示一种合乎情理的、自然而然的结果;而不定式作结果状语通常表示未曾预料到的情况或结果,有时不定式前加 only 或 never,以加强“意想不到”的语气。

I rushed to the station in a hurry, **only to find** the train had already gone.

我匆忙赶到火车站,不料火车已经开走了。

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① Like ancient sailors, birds can find their way using (use) the sun and the stars.

② A cold wind swept across the street, making (make) the man shudder (颤抖) heavily.

③ Carrying (carry) many different viruses, wild animals can potentially infect human beings and should be banned for trade.

④ Having finished (finish) his homework, he went to bed.

⑤ Once losing (lose) this chance, you can't easily find one.

⑥ I arrived at the shop only to find (find) I'd left all my money at home.

语法探究

表语从句

「语法感知」

① The fact is **that** they never told me about it.

② The question is **whether** we should help him.

③ This is **what** makes them so special.

④ The problem is **who** we can send to look after him.

⑤ What I want to know is **when** we'll start the project.

⑥ A simple restaurant was **where** he usually had the same meal of sausages, eggs and coffee.

⑦ This is **how** they get the exact address of the lost man.

⑧ She looks **as if** she were ten years younger.

1. 以上句子中句①②为从属连词引导的表语从句;句③④为连接代词引导的表语从句;句⑤⑥⑦为连接副词引导的表语从句;句⑧为 **as if** 引导的表语从句。(填序号)

2. 句①中 **that** 不作句子成分,没有任何意义,只起连接作用。

3. 句②中 **whether** 不作句子成分, **whether** 意为“是否”。

4. 句③④的连接代词在从句中作主语和宾语。

5. 句⑤⑥⑦中的连接副词在从句中作状语。

「语法精讲」

一、概述

在复合句中充当表语的从句叫表语从句。表语从句一般用在“主语+系动词+表语”的结构里,它最明显的特征是跟在连系动词 **be** 之后。

二、引导词

表语从句的常用引导词:

1. 从属连词 **that, whether**;
2. 连接代词 **what, who, which, whom, whose, whatever, whoever, whomever, whichever** 等;
3. 连接副词 **when, where, how, why, whenever, wherever** 等;
4. **as if/as though** 和 **because**。

三、that 引导的表语从句

that 引导表语从句时只起连接作用,在句子中不作任何成分,也无任何意义,通常不能省略。

The fact is **that** he is old enough to go to school.

事实是他已经到了上学的年龄。

The trouble was **that** they couldn't agree among themselves.

问题是他们内部意见不统一。

His **requirement** was **that** the floor (should) be kept clean.

他的要求是要保持地板干净。

My **advice** is **that** your homework (should) be **finished** in time every day.

我的建议是每天要及时完成你的家庭作业。

名师点拨

当主句的主语为 **advice, suggestion, proposal, recommendation, order, command, request, requirement** 等表示建议、命令、要求的名词时,表语从句用虚拟语气,即从句的谓语动词形式要用“**should+动词原形**”结构,其中 **should** 可以省略。

四、whether 引导的表语从句

whether 意为“是否”,引导表语从句时只起连接作用,在从句中不作任何成分。

His first question was **whether** Mr Smith had arrived yet.

他的第一个问题是史密斯先生是否已经到达。

The question is **whether** he has passed the test.

问题是他是否通过了测试。

名师点拨

whether 引导表语从句时一般不能用 **if** 替代。

五、连接代词引导的表语从句

连接代词包括 **what, who, which, whom, whose, whatever, whoever, whomever, whichever** 等,在句中作主语、宾语、表语或定语。

The question is **what** caused the accident.

问题是什么造成了这次事故。

My trouble is **who** (**whom**) I can turn to.

我的麻烦是我能向谁求助。

My question is **whose** turn it is to be on duty today.

我的问题是今天轮到谁值日了。

What he told you was **what** (= **the thing that**) had been discussed at the meeting.

他告诉你的就是在会上讨论的内容。

The mountain is no longer **what** it used to be.

这座山已经不是过去的样子了。

This is **what** (= **the place that**) was once called the paradise.

这就是曾经被叫作乐园的地方。

名师点拨

what 引导表语从句时在从句中作主语、宾语、表语或定语,相当于定语从句中的“先行词+关系代词”的形式,表示“……的事情(内容、地点、样子等)”。

六、连接副词引导的表语从句

连接副词包括 **when, where, how, why, whenever, wherever** 等,在表语从句中作状语。

This is **where** he was born.

这就是他出生的地方。

That is **why** you see this old woman before you, Jeanne.

珍妮,这就是(现在)这位老妇人出现在你面前的原因。

七、as if/as though 引导的表语从句

as if/as though 引导的表语从句常置于系动词 look, seem, sound, appear 等后面。

It **looks as if/as though** it is going to rain.

天看起来要下雨了。

It **sounds as if/as though** someone is knocking on the door.

听起来好像有人在敲门。

They talk very loudly **as if** nobody **were** around.

他们说话声音很大,好像周围没人似的。

They talked **as if** they **had met** before.

他们交谈着,好像以前见过面似的。

名师点拨

对于 as if/as though 引导的表语从句,如果描述的是事实,从句用陈述语气;如果与事实不符,从句用虚拟语气[表示与现在事实相反时,从句的谓语动词形式用动词过去式(be 动词用 were);表示与过去事实相反时,从句的谓语动词形式用“had+过去分词”;表示与将来事实相反时,从句的谓语动词形式用“should/would/could/might+动词原形”]。

八、because 引导的表语从句

because 引导的表语从句通常只用于“This/That/It is because...”结构中。

My anger is **because** you haven't called me for a long time.

我生气是因为你好长时间没给我打电话了。

名师点拨

(1) This/That/It is because... 强调原因; This/That/It is why... 强调结果。

He was sent to the hospital. **That's because** he was ill.

他被送往医院。那是因为他生病了。

He was ill. **That's why** he was sent to the hospital. 他生病了。所以他被送往医院。

(2) reason 作主语时,表语从句只能用 that 引导,而不能用 because。

The reason why he was late was **that** he missed the early bus.

他迟到的原因是他没赶上早班公共汽车。

「语法冲关」

I. 用适当的连接词填空

- China is no longer what she used to be.
- What I want to say is that I'm exhausted.
- The question is whether it is worth doing.
- That's where/why I can't agree with you.
- The scissors are not what I need.
- The reason why I was sad was that he didn't understand me at all.
- Why were you absent from the meeting? Was it because you were ill?

II. 完成句子

- Hearing the news, it seemed as if/as though he were mad.
听到这个消息,他好像疯了似的。
- My suggestion is that we (should) set up a working group.
我的建议是我们应该设立一个工作小组。
- The reason why we don't trust him is that he often lies.
我们不信任他的原因是他经常撒谎。
- That is what she is worried about.
那就是她担心的。

课后素养评价(八)

I. 选词填空

keep on; as well as; by trial and error; in addition to; rather than; back down; die out; contribute to; think outside the box; replace... with...

- The scientist found a new drug to cure the disease by trial and error.
- Arts contribute to cultural development when people gather together to share their experience and

renew their energy.

- In order to think outside the box, we need to consider every possible explanation.
- We are taught that a business letter should be written in a formal style rather than in a personal style.
- In addition to basic salary, there's a list of extra benefits.
- When they argued, she refused to back down.

7. Encouraged by his friends, Jack didn't lose heart and kept on trying.
8. It is not a good idea to miss meals and replace them with snacks.
9. Coursework (课程作业) is taken into account as well as exam results.
10. This species has nearly died out because its habitat is being destroyed.

II. 单句语法填空

1. The trouble is that I can't find my way.
2. Without his support, we wouldn't be where we are now.
3. This is what my father has taught me—to always face difficulties and hope for the best.
4. Taking a boat is the only way to get here, which is how we arrived.
5. He got caught in the heavy traffic. That was why he was late.
6. Not only did he listen to the teacher carefully, but also he took notes in class.
7. The problem is what contributed to the boy's obesity.
8. The original *Cinderella* varies very much from the Disney version we know today.

III. 阅读理解

Last year Justin met a great difficulty in his life: Where should he work after graduation? He had two great offers. The first was a government job in his hometown, a 10-minute bike ride from his apartment. It wouldn't pay much, but he'd have time to spend with his wife, nephew, and aging parents. The second was a job in the biggest neighbouring city. It would pay a lot more, but he'd have to travel four hours a day.

We know surprisingly little about how people do when they make more money at the expense of having less time or have more time at the expense of earning less money. My colleagues—PhD student Lucia Macchia, Professor Elizabeth Dunn and I set out to do a study. We asked more than 1,000 college students. What we found was that students who prioritised time were happier than those who prioritised money. Those who valued time were happier and more satisfied with their lives and careers one to two years after graduation.

People who live in more unequal areas feel less

financially secure and are more likely to value money. People who grew up in families fighting about money also are more likely to focus on money instead of time as adults, even if they now have a lot of money. Of course, debt also plays a role.

Sometimes we cannot choose our priorities; we might need to choose the better-paying job and sacrifice (牺牲) having more time to socialise with our friends and family. Society needs to work harder to make us all feel like we have the choice to prioritise time over money. However, when we do have the ability to choose which resource to prioritise, the data is clear: Valuing time is likely to bring us greater joy both in the moment and in the long term.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。研究显示毕业后在选择职业时更看重拥有较多闲暇时间的大学生会更快乐。

1. What can we know about Justin from Paragraph 1?

- A. He tried hard to find a well-paid job.
- B. He had to make a great decision in life.
- C. He was unwilling to leave his family.
- D. He had trouble in graduating from college.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Last year Justin met a great difficulty in his life: Where should he work after graduation? He had two great offers.”可推知,Justin 面对两份很好的工作,他必须作出决定。故选 B。

2. Which of the following can explain the underlined word “prioritised” in Paragraph 2?

- A. Took... further.
- B. Spent... wisely.
- C. Put... first.
- D. Saved... gradually.

C 词义猜测题。根据第二段中的“What we found was that students who prioritised time were happier than those who prioritised money. Those who valued time were happier and more satisfied with their lives and careers one to two years after graduation.”可知,画线词所在句中的“who prioritised time were happier”与下文中的“who valued time were happier”相照应,由此可推知画线词与 valued 意思相近,C 选项“Put... first”表示“认为……最重要”。故选 C。

3. What plays a role in people's valuing money over time?

- A. Their educational experiences.
- B. Their family backgrounds.
- C. Their parents' attitude towards them.
- D. Their relationship with people in their area.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“People who grew up in families fighting about money also are more likely to focus on money instead of time as adults, even if they now have a lot of money.”可知,人们的家庭背景会影响他们对金钱的态度。故选 B。

4. What is the author's purpose in writing the last

paragraph?

- A. To draw a conclusion.
- B. To conduct a survey.
- C. To make a prediction.
- D. To offer a choice.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段的关键词“However”可知,重点在最后一句“However, when we do have the ability to choose which resource to prioritise, the data is clear: Valuing time is likely to bring us greater joy both in the moment and in the long term.”,此处是得出结论,即珍惜时间可能会给我们当下和长远带来更大的快乐。故选 A。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. precious *adj.* 珍稀的;贵重的
2. comprise *v.* 包括,由……构成
3. associate *v.* 与……有关
4. analysis *n.* 分析
5. preserve *v.* 维护,保护;保存
6. architecture *n.* 建筑风格,建筑设计
7. ambitious *adj.* 宏大的,艰巨的
8. restoration *n.* (旧建筑或旧家具等的)修复,整修
9. dominate *v.* 支配,控制,主宰
10. take up 开始从事;占据(空间或时间);拿起;继续
11. originate from 源于;起源于
12. range from... to 从……到……不等
13. bring... back to life 使……恢复生机/有活力
14. pass on... to 把……传递给……
15. take on 承担;呈现;接受;从事;开始雇用
16. in detail 详尽地
17. leave behind 留下,遗留
18. follow in the footsteps of 仿效……,继承……

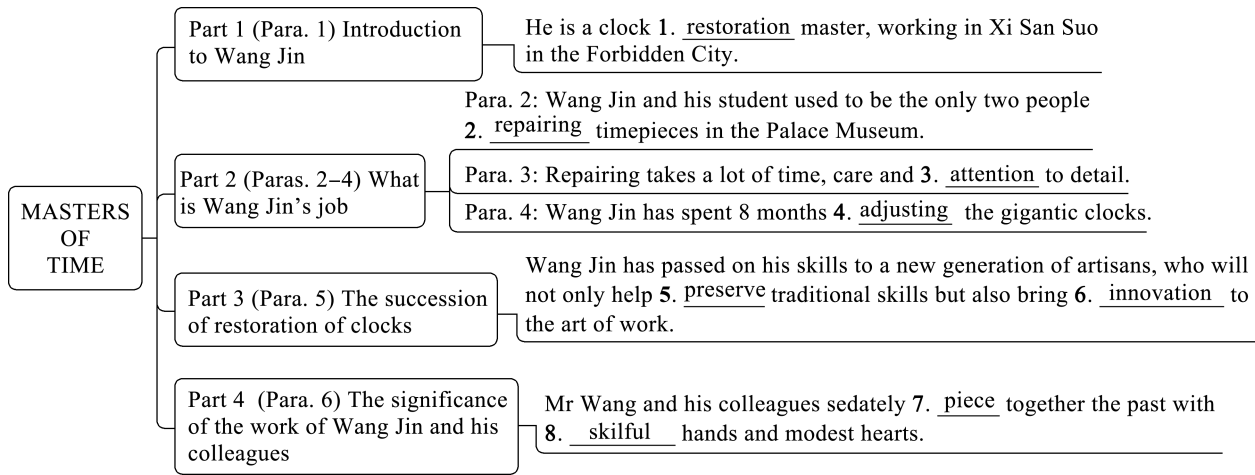
(二)阅读词汇

1. antique *n.* 古董,古玩,古物
2. maximum *n.* 最大量,最大值
3. bark *v.* (狗)吠叫
4. essay *n.* 短文,论说文
5. courtyard *n.* 庭院,院子
6. workplace *n.* 工作场所
7. painstaking *adj.* 小心的;费尽心思的;精心的
8. workshop *n.* 车间,工场
9. polish *v.* 擦亮,擦光
10. exaggeration *n.* 夸大,夸张
11. modest *adj.* 谦虚的,谦逊的
12. metaphor *n.* 隐喻,暗喻
13. nonetheless *adv.* 然而,但是;尽管如此,虽然如此
14. intricate *adj.* 错综复杂的
15. date back to 追溯到
16. come back to life 复活;苏醒过来
17. be associated with 与……相联系
18. at one's own pace 按照自己的节奏
19. day in, day out 日复一日

多维化析文

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Why do many people want to take a photo with Wang Jin?
- A. Because his restoration work has a long history.
B. Because people admire him for his work.
C. Because he is the director of the Palace Museum.
D. Because he is one of the only two people working there.

答案: B

2. Where do the timepieces in the Palace Museum mostly come from?
- A. North America and Asia.
B. Asia and Africa.
C. Europe and China.
D. Africa and Australia.

答案: C

3. What is Wang Jin's attitude towards the future of the timepieces?
- A. Negative. B. Optimistic.
C. Worried. D. Indifferent.

答案: B

4. Which of the following can best describe Wang Jin?
- A. Devoted and modest.
B. Hard-working and caring.

- C. Smart and skilled.
D. Patient and selfless.

答案: A

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

Despite the combined work of several generations of masters, 1. it seems unlikely that the restoration of the clocks will ever be complete. Even if every clock in the Palace Museum were restored, there would still be work to do, because restoration would 2. probably (probable) need to begin again on the clocks that 3. were repaired (repair) long ago. This is a race against time that can never be won! Nonetheless, Mr Wang remains optimistic 4. about the future of these timepieces. 5. Following (follow) in the footsteps of his own teacher, Mr Wang has now passed on his skills to the new members, who will take on many of the future repairs. What's more, 6. inspired (inspire) to follow in his father's footsteps, Mr Wang's son now has also taken up repairing antique 7. clocks (clock). This new generation of artisans will not only help preserve traditional skills, but also bring innovation to the craft, so it 8. is ensured (ensure) that the art of clock repairing will stand the test of time. In today's fast-paced world, the saying that "time waits for no man" has never seemed more apt. Yet inside the hidden courtyards of Xi San Suo, there is something 9. timeless (time) about the way Mr Wang and his colleagues sedately

piece together the past with skilful hands and modest hearts, 10. which has become one part of the history.

Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. If it hadn't been for a three-episode documentary, outsiders would never have known that the plainly-dressed people working here are masters of their craft, who have spent their lives restoring precious antiques.

[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。If 引导的虚拟条件句,表示与过去事实相反的假设;主句中 that 引导宾语从句,在这个从句中 people 后的现在分词短语 working here 作其后置定语;who 引导的非限制性定语从句对 masters 进行补充说明。

[尝试翻译]如果不是因为一部三集的纪录片,外人永远不知道,在这里工作的穿着朴素的人竟然都是精于各门技艺的大师,他们花了一生的时间来修复珍贵的古董。

2. Even if every clock in the Palace Museum were restored, there would still be work to do, because restoration would probably need to begin

again on the clocks that were repaired long ago.

[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。Even if 引导让步状语从句,且使用了虚拟语气;because 引导原因状语从句,在这个从句中 that 引导定语从句,修饰先行词 the clocks。

[尝试翻译]即使故宫博物院的每一件钟表都被修复了,仍然有工作要做,因为可能需要重新开始对很久以前修复过的钟表进行修复。

思维品质培养

Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. What can you do to help pass on traditional skills and the spirit of craftsmanship?

I will focus on one thing for decades, no matter how boring it is. I will really love what I am doing with higher standards and higher demand.

2. What do Bill Cunningham and Wang Jin in the two reading passages of this unit have in common?

They are both devoted, motivated, passionate and skilled masters in their fields of work.

课后素养评价(九)

I. 单词拼写

1. The committee is comprised (由……组成) of representatives from both the public and private sectors.
2. They work as a group—nobody is allowed to dominate (控制).
3. With their excellent architecture (建筑风格) and structure, they fascinate visitors from around the world.
4. A new study shows that the earth becomes greener as a result of ambitious (宏大的) tree-planting programmes in China.
5. These essays (短文) represent a considerable improvement on your recent work.
6. Some analyses (分析) suggest that physical activity in a natural environment can help reduce stress.

7. What is the absolute maximum (最大值) you can afford to pay?

II. 短语填空

date back to; be fond of; range from... to...; pass on... to; take up; (be) associated with; bring... back to life; work on

1. Kate is fond of reading novels in bed, which is a bad habit.
2. He has come back and taken up the post of the company's manager.
3. friend tells me that she is working on a new novel.
4. The stone steps, dating back to 1855, are beginning to wear.
5. Stay at home, or you will pass on the disease to other people.

6. I think that it's up to us to bring this fantasy land back to life.
7. At the meeting, the young doctor asked some problems associated with cancer treatment.
8. According to the weather report, the temperature ranges from 15 to 35 degrees.

III. 完成句子

1. They might have been lost in the forest without the compass.
要是没有指南针,他们可能在森林里迷路了。
2. I can neither confirm nor deny details of any operation without the Secretary's approval.
我既不能确认也不能否定任何行动的细节,除非获得部长批准。
3. He never apologises, even though he knows that he is wrong.
他从不道歉,即使他知道自己错了。
4. It is clear that the old man is experienced in paper cutting.
很明显,这位老人对剪纸很有经验。
5. So dark was it that he couldn't see the faces of his companions.
天这么黑,他看不见自己同伴的脸。

IV. 七选五

Some people think working overtime means you're a hard worker. You have to sacrifice your personal time to stay at work, produce something, help the company, and be a more devoted employee. But is that right? 1 This means it takes you longer to produce something than someone else.

A good manager knows how to encourage his employees to work to their full potential instead of expecting them to work late even if they don't have something to do. People who stay in their office until late hate their jobs. 2

Overworking may negatively influence the level of productivity and efficiency (效率). Any company that makes their employees work those hours is not being managed well. The fault lies in management, who should take a good look at themselves. 3 And the boss would prefer you to work efficiently 7 hours and then go back home than 8 hours with poor efficiency.

4 The fact is that the competition is so fierce that if you don't work hard someone will easily and willingly replace you, especially in the IT industry. Employees are told they need to work longer hours or they don't belong or are denied promotions. It is time to abandon the culture of overworking, to work smarter, more efficiently and have a balance with personal life.

Nowadays, it's hard for a young person to build a good future, for pressures are on his (or her) shoulders: housing, children, parents, themselves, etc. But everyone must keep working hard to have ourselves on the way to the good future, which is not certain. 5

- A. No one wants to work overtime.
- B. The boss thinks highly of overworking.
- C. Working too many hours only means you are inefficient.
- D. And it affects their performance, as well as other aspects of their life.
- E. What's sure is that if you're lazy and don't work hard, no good future will come.
- F. Managers believe that overworking is an evidence of devotion from their employees' side.
- G. In many countries, overworking would be criticised because it reflects poor work efficiency.

答案:1~5 CDGAE

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. You should make good use of every **precious** minute to study. 宝贵的
2. Priceless **antiques** were destroyed in the fire. 古董
3. Temperatures usually reach their **maximum** after noon. 最大值
4. He played a delightful **melody** on his flute (笛子). 曲调
5. The dog **barked** madly at her after she got off the bus. (狗)吠叫
6. This is truly a **timeless** piece of music. 永恒的
7. The group is **comprised** of two guitarists, a drummer, and a singer. 由……组成
8. This collection is made up of three parts: poems, **essays** and short stories. 短文, 议论文

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--|--|
| <u>restoration</u> <i>n.</i> (旧建筑或旧家具等的)修复, 整修 | <u>restore</u> <i>v.</i> 恢复, 整修, 使复原 |
| <u>polish</u> <i>v.</i> 擦亮, 擦光 | <u>polished</u> <i>adj.</i> 擦亮的; 精炼的; 优美的 |
| <u>exaggeration</u> <i>n.</i> 夸大, 夸张 | <u>exaggerate</u> <i>v.</i> 夸大, 夸张 |
| <u>preserve</u> <i>v.</i> 维护, 保护; 保存 | <u>preservation</u> <i>n.</i> 维护; 保存 |
| <u>modest</u> <i>adj.</i> 谦虚的, 谦逊的 | <u>modestly</u> <i>adv.</i> 谦虚地, 谦逊地 |
| | <u>modesty</u> <i>n.</i> 谦虚, 谦逊 |
| <u>dominate</u> <i>v.</i> 支配, 控制, 主宰 | <u>domination</u> <i>n.</i> 支配, 控制, 主宰 |
| | <u>dominant</u> <i>adj.</i> 有优势的, 占统治地位的 |
| <u>architecture</u> <i>n.</i> 建筑风格, 建筑设计 | <u>architect</u> <i>n.</i> 建筑师 |
| | <u>architectural</u> <i>adj.</i> 建筑的; 建筑学的 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---|--|
| <u>associate</u> <i>v.</i> 与……有关 | <u>association</u> <i>n.</i> 协会, 社团; 联系 |
| <u>analysis</u> <i>n.</i> 分析 | <u>analyse</u> <i>v.</i> 分析 |
| <u>ambitious</u> <i>adj.</i> 宏大的, 艰巨的; 有抱负的, 有雄心的 | <u>ambition</u> <i>n.</i> 抱负, 雄心, 野心; 追求; 理想 |

III. 补全短语

1. take up 开始从事; 占据(空间或时间); 拿起; 继续
2. at one's own pace 按照自己的节奏
3. originate from 源于; 起源于
4. pass on... to 把……传递给……
5. take on 承担; 呈现; 接受; 从事; 开始雇用
6. range from... to ... 从……到……不等; 在……范围内变化
7. bring back to life 使……恢复生机/有活力
8. day in, day out 日复一日

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: neither... nor...
It is suddenly clear that when the clock masters say that “these antiques have lives”, it is neither an exaggeration nor a metaphor.
人们突然明白, 当钟表大师们说“这些古董有生命”时, 这既不是夸大其词, 也不是比喻。
2. 句型公式: even if/even though 引导让步状语从句
Even if every clock in the Palace Museum were restored, there would still be work to do, because restoration would probably need to begin again on the clocks that were repaired long ago.
即使故宫博物院的每一件钟表都被修复了, 仍然有工作要做, 因为可能需要重新开始对很久以前修复过的钟表进行修复。
3. 句型公式: not only... (but) also...
This new generation of artisans will not only help preserve traditional skills; the innovation they bring to the craft will also ensure that the art of clock repairing stands the test of time.

新一代的工匠们不仅将帮助保留传统技艺,他们对工艺的创新也将确保钟表修复艺术能经受住时间的考验。

4. 句型公式:if 引导的虚拟条件句

If it hadn't been for a three-episode documentary, outsiders would never have known that the plainly-dressed people working here are masters

of their craft, who have spent their lives restoring precious antiques.

如果不是因为一部三集的纪录片,外人永远不会知道,在这里工作的穿着朴素的人竟然都是精于各门技艺的大师,他们花了一生的时间来修复珍贵的古董。

任务型课堂

1. preserve v. 维护,保护;保存

[教材原文] This new generation of artisans will not only help **preserve** traditional skills; the innovation they bring to the craft will also ensure that the art of clock repairing stands the test of time.

新一代的工匠们不仅将帮助保留传统技艺,他们对工艺的创新也将确保钟表修复艺术能经受住时间的考验。

[归纳拓展]

- (1)preserve... from... 保护……免受……
- (2)preservation n. 维护;保存

【易混辨析】preserve, protect

| 易混词 | 区别 |
|----------|-----------------------------------|
| preserve | 意为“维护,保护;保存”,着重表示保持原有的状态或保持完好的状态。 |
| protect | 意为“保护,保卫”,着重表示保护或保卫不受外界的伤害或侵害。 |

[即学即练]

- (1)单句语法填空
 - ① The institute was set up to preserve the endangered species from extinction.
 - ② More money is needed for the preservation (preserve) of historic buildings and monuments.
- (2)选词填空(preserve, protect)
 - ① The union was formed to protect the rights and interests of miners.
 - ② Fish are preserved in ice and salt until they are sold.

2. ambitious adj. 宏大的,艰巨的;有抱负的,有雄心的

[教材原文] Each generation conscientiously learnt their craft and undertook **ambitious** projects, many of which took years to complete.
每一代人都认真地学习他们的手艺,并从事宏大的项目,其中许多项目需要数年才能完成。

[归纳拓展]

- (1)be ambitious for... 对……有强烈的期望;渴望得到……
- (2)ambition n. 理想,抱负;野心
 - achieve/realise one's ambition of doing sth. 实现某人做某事的理想/抱负
 - an ambition to do sth. 做某事的愿望
 - have no ambition to do sth. 完全不想做某事

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

- ① It's clear that the man is ambitious for success in politics.
- ② The young man's ambition (ambitious) is to sail round the world.
- ③ They had the ambition to dominate (dominate) this small country.
- ④ She attained her ambition of becoming (become) a pilot.

3. associate v. 与……有关

[教材原文] Yet they did not seek fame, and even today, their great works are **associated** more with the imperial court than with them.

然而,他们并不追求名声,即使在今天,他们的伟大作品也更多地与朝廷有关,而不是他们自己。

[归纳拓展]

- (1)be associated with 与……有关
- (2)associate... with... 把……和……联系起来
- (3)association n. 社团,协会;联系
 - in association with 与……联合;与……有联系

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

- ① Teaching of Chinese should be associated with the students' life and focus on their emotion.
- ② Many doctors have pointed out that cigarette smoking and lung cancer are closely associated (associate).

③ Research associations (associate) are often linked to a particular industry.

④ We work in association with a number of local companies to raise money for the homeless.

(2) 完成句子

Do you want to be associated with someone who is morally unjust?

你想和一个思想上不公正的人有所联系吗?

4. if 引导的虚拟条件句

[教材原文] If it hadn't been for a three-episode documentary, outsiders would never have known that the plainly-dressed people working here are masters of their craft, who have spent their lives restoring precious antiques.

如果不是因为一部三集的纪录片,外人永远不会知道,在这里工作的穿着朴素的人竟然都是精于各门技艺的大师,他们花了一生的时间来修复珍贵的古董。

[句式分析] 本句为 if 引导的虚拟条件句,表示与过去事实相反的假设,所以从句的谓语动词形式用“had+过去分词”,主句的谓语动词形式用“would have+过去分词”。

[归纳拓展]

在 if 引导的虚拟条件句中,若陈述的情况与过去事实相反,则虚拟条件句的谓语动词形式用“had+过去分词”,主句的谓语动词形式用“would/should/

could/might have+过去分词”;若陈述的情况与现在事实相反,则虚拟条件句的谓语动词形式用“过去式”,主句的谓语动词形式用“would/should/could/might+动词原形”;若陈述的情况与将来事实相反,则虚拟条件句的谓语动词形式用“过去式/were to do/should do”,主句的谓语动词形式用“would/should/could/might+动词原形”。

名师点拨

(1) “If it be not for...” 句型相当于 “Without...” 或 “But for...”。

(2) 该句型还可以用倒装形式,即把 if 省略,然后把 had 或 were 提到 it 的前面,转换成 “Had it not been for...” 和 “Were it not for...” 的句型。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① If it hadn't been (not be) for your suggestion, I wouldn't have completed the project.

② If it were (be) not for the atmosphere, the earth would be either very hot or very cold.

(2) 句型转换

If it hadn't been for his ankle injury, he wouldn't have dropped out of the race.

→ Had it not been for his ankle injury, he wouldn't have dropped out of the race.

多义词汇专练

- Just last year, I was conducting a **workshop** when someone knocked at the classroom door. B
A. *n.* 车间 B. *n.* 研讨会
- It should be at 45°C angle to the boat. It needs to be out far enough to catch the wind, but it shouldn't flap. B
A. *v.* 振(翅) B. *v.* 摆动 C. *v.* 忧虑
- I bought the house at a **modest** price. B
A. *adj.* 谦虚的 B. *adj.* 不太昂贵的 C. *adj.* 朴素的
- It's one of the biggest buildings in this area, and it really **dominates** this whole place. C
A. *v.* 支配, 控制 B. *v.* 在……中具有最重要的特色 C. *v.* 俯视, 高耸于

写作探究

介绍人物的说明文

「写作指导」

此类说明文通过描写的手法来刻画人物形象,并通过事例加以说明。想写好此类文章,要掌握以下

技巧:

- 写作步骤:首先引出需要说明的人物;然后说明人物所具有的内在品质,并通过事例加以印证;最后结合前面的描述作简要评价。

2. 常用人称:此类文章是站在第三者的角度对某个人物进行记叙、描写、评判,所以人称以第三人称为主。
3. 常用时态:在介绍人物内在品质及评价时用一般现在时,在描述事例时用一般现在时或一般过去时。

「典题示例」

根据下面的提示,用英语写一篇介绍袁隆平院士的短文,内容包括:

- 1. 人物简介:著名的杂交水稻专家,工程院院士;
- 2. 主要品质:淡泊名利,乐于奉献,坚持不懈等;
- 3. 简要评价。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

- 2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:院士 academician; 杂交水稻 hybrid rice

Step 1: 审题谋篇

| | |
|----|-------------------------------------|
| 文体 | 说明文 |
| 时态 | 一般现在时和一般过去时 |
| 人称 | 第三人称 |
| 要点 | 1. 引入人物 2. 介绍人物的品质和事例 3. 简要评价 |

Step 2: 要点补全

- ①People can't help thinking of (禁不住想起) Yuan Longping.
- ②He was the father of hybrid rice, who was also an (他也是一位) academician of Chinese Academy of Engineering.
- ③Although he had failed many times (虽然他失败了很多次), he never lost heart and he developed a kind of saltwater-tolerant rice.
- ④The rice can grow (可以生长) in desert areas.
- ⑤Famous and rich as he was (尽管他知名又富有), he cared little about money and reputation (不在乎金钱和名望).

Step 3: 句式升级

- ①用同位语连接 Step 2 中的①②两句。
People can't help thinking of Yuan Longping, the father of hybrid rice, who was also an academician

- of Chinese Academy of Engineering.
- ②用定语从句连接 Step 2 中的③④两句。
Although he had failed many times, he never lost heart and he developed a kind of saltwater-tolerant rice that/which can grow in desert areas.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Looking at the growing rice in the field, people can't help thinking of Yuan Longping, the father of hybrid rice, who was also an academician of Chinese Academy of Engineering.

Although he had failed many times, he never lost heart and he developed a kind of saltwater-tolerant rice which can grow in desert areas. He was engaged in developing hybrid rice with the purpose of increasing food production and helping combat starvation.

Famous and rich as he was, he cared little about money and reputation. Such is Yuan Longping, a simple, diligent and devoted man of great achievement.

「学以致用」

“深入实施人才强国战略”是党的二十大报告中的重要内容,卓有成就的科技创新人才应是我们学习的榜样。请根据下面的提示,用英语写一篇介绍药学家屠呦呦的短文,内容包括:

- 1. 人物简介:著名的药学家,诺贝尔生理学或医学奖获得者,发现了青蒿素;
- 2. 主要品质:坚持不懈,乐于奉献,造福人类等;
- 3. 简要评价。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

- 2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:青蒿素 artemisinin; 疟疾 malaria; 药学家 pharmacologist; 诺贝尔生理学或医学奖 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine

【参考范文】

Talking about pharmacologists, especially women pharmacologists in China, no one can equal Tu Youyou.

Owing to her many years' perseverance, Tu Youyou has made great achievements in medicine. Since graduation, she has been devoted herself whole-heartedly to studying traditional Chinese medicine and modern Western medicine.

Before she won the Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine, she was not famous at all. But she sought

no fame and persisted in her research with the purpose of curing the malaria patients. After she

succeeded in discovering and developing artemisinin, millions of lives have been saved all over the world.

课后素养评价(十)

I. 单句语法填空

- I'm sure that you will achieve your ambition (ambitious) if you work hard.
- I was surprised to learn that he was chosen to take on this difficult task.
- The local government has taken effective measures to preserve (preserve) their natural resources.
- Nothing is more precious (precious) than a mother's love in the world.
- His father specialises in the cleaning and restoration (restore) of antique paintings.
- Her desire for domination (dominate) over the others caused trouble in the family.
- While I know little about architecture (architect), I find that building very impressive.
- The problem is how we can raise people's awareness of protecting the rare animals.

II. 补全句子

- 在毕业典礼上学生送给老师们一些花。(present)
The students presented the teachers with some flowers/some flowers to the teachers on the graduation ceremony.
- 有很多环境问题与污染有关。(be associated with)
There're many environmental problems (which/that are) associated with pollution.
- 他说话的声音太大了,隔壁屋里的人都能听见。(so 位于句首引起的倒装)
So loudly did he speak that even people in the next room could hear him.
- 他不仅给了我两本小说,还给了我很多CD,它们的价格从50元到100元不等。(not only... but also; range from... to...)
Not only did he give me two novels, but also he gave me a lot of CDs the prices of which ranged from 50 yuan to 100 yuan.
- 如果他在那里,他可以分析数据并找出机器故障的原因。(虚拟语气)
If he were there, he could analyse the data and find out the cause of the failure of the machine.

III. 语法填空

Up until the 1980s, people in many countries

1. regularly (regular) followed in their parents' footsteps when choosing jobs. How times have changed! Most people now have no 2. intention (intend) of staying at one job for very long. In fact, 3. planning (plan) to work in the same field or industry for your entire working life just isn't practical anymore. The skills you have now are 4. unlikely (likely) to remain relevant and be enough to help you through your entire career. 5. To build (build) a career, you'd better keep looking for 6. smarter (smart) ways to do your work. You'll need to be a risk taker, an innovator, a problem-solver, and a hard worker. Keep doing this, 7. and you can become an expert or a specialist in something one day. Jobs and occupations come and go at 8. an amazing pace these days. You may have to go back to the classroom and be retrained in order to qualify to work in another field. The truth is 9. that you are the boss of your career, and it is up to you 10. to decide (decide) what you can do and how well you can do it.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你校英文网站正在为“中学生职业规划”栏目公开征集稿件。请以“Career Planning”为题,写一篇短文投稿。内容包括:

- 职业规划的意义;
- 中学生职业规划现状;
- 给中学生的建议。

注意:词数80左右。

【参考范文】

Career Planning

Career planning is an essential exercise for senior students, because the career is a crucial part of who we are, thus defining our future life to some extent.

Unfortunately, many students struggle with career planning with just a few ideas bouncing around in their heads, leading to stress or lack of motivation. To overcome these challenges, we students can complete a “career aptitude test” to get some insight on a possible career. If still in a

dilemma, we can turn to parents or teachers for advice.

By prioritising career planning, we are bound to excel in our academic and personal lives.

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I was a 20-year-old nursing student in 1968, assigned as Chris's post-operative nurse.

Chris was an eight-year-old boy filled with energy, who excelled in every sport he played. Disobeying his parents' words, he explored a neighbour's construction site, climbed a ladder, and fell, which got him a broken arm that later had to be cut off.

The first few days passed quickly. I provided Chris's physical care with forced cheerfulness. As his need for medication decreased, his level of awareness increased, as did his moodiness. When I offered him the towel for a sponge bath and suggested he take over, he washed his face and neck with great difficulty, then quit. And I finished.

The next day, I insisted on his doing whole bath by himself. He was more than halfway through when he sat down and said, "I can't make it!"

"You won't be in the hospital much longer," I said gently. "You need to learn to take care of yourself."

"Well, I can't," he frowned. "How can I do anything with just one hand?"

Putting on my brightest face, I searched for a silver lining in my mind. Finally I said, "Sure you can do it, Chris. At least you have your right hand."

He turned his face away and muttered, "I'm

left-handed. At least I used to be." Suddenly, I felt ashamed. How could I have taken right-handedness for granted? It seemed he and I both had a lot to learn.

The next morning, I greeted Chris with a big smile and a rubber band. He looked at me suspiciously. I put my right hand behind my back and kept it there by winding the rubber band around my uniform buttons. "You're left-handed and I'm right-handed," I said. "Every time I ask you to do something with your right hand, I will do it first, with my left hand. And I promise not to practise before I see you."

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

I started from brushing teeth. However, the once simple routine action proved to be a disaster. With my teeth clenching the toothbrush tightly, I made great efforts to squeeze toothpaste onto it with my clumsy left hand, but I missed the target at the first attempt. I stole a glance at Chris and spotted a flicker of disappointment in his eyes. Taking a deep breath, I kept concentrating on the action in front of the mirror and did better.

Ten minutes later, I ultimately succeeded. "This is incredible!" Chris grinned. "I can do it faster!" he declared and sprang from the bed. After several attempts, he made it! Over the next two weeks, we competed with each other to practise these seemingly easy tasks single-handed, from buttoning up the coats to taking notes. Chris soon learned to do almost everything neatly with one hand. The day he left hospital, he hugged me, with tears of gratitude, saying, "You are a truly good nurse. Thank you."

阶段综合提升(一)

Unit 1—Unit 2

I. 阅读理解

A

Community colleges offer low tuition, job-specific training and other benefits. Whether you're a high school student unsure of which colleges to apply to or someone considering going back to school, there are plenty of reasons to put

community colleges on your list.

Lower Costs

The most frequently cited benefit of community colleges is the relatively low cost of attendance. According to data from the College Board, community colleges cost, on average, about one-third of in-state tuition at four-year public universities.

A Path to a Four-year College

Many four-year universities have transfer agreements with local community colleges. These agreements allow students who complete specific requirements to easily transfer into a four-year programme at a nearby university. Transfer students can then earn a bachelor's degree while only having to pay two years of higher tuition.

Flexibility

Community colleges allow for flexible scheduling, making them a particularly good option for older students who are working professionals or parents. Many community colleges also allow high school students to take college-level courses during evenings or weekends.

Workforce Training

Community colleges tend to offer a wide range of career and technical education programmes in fields like nursing or firefighting. The highly applied nature of these programmes prepares students for entering the workforce. From culinary (烹饪) arts to automobile mechanics, community colleges offer a broad selection of professionalised coursework that four-year universities often do not.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要讲的是社区大学的几个优势。

- Who are most likely to attend community colleges?
 - High school students facing college choices.
 - Adults planning to work at high schools.
 - College students anxious to improve themselves.
 - Professionals eager for college-level courses.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Whether you're a high school student unsure of which colleges to apply to or someone considering going back to school, there are plenty of reasons to put community colleges on your list.”可知,最有可能上社区大学的是面临大学选择的高中生。故选 A。
- Which is thought to be the biggest advantage of community colleges?
 - Lower Costs.
 - A Path to a Four-year College.
 - Flexibility.
 - Workforce Training.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Lower Costs** 部分中的“The most frequently cited benefit of community

colleges is the relatively low cost of attendance.”可知,社区大学最大的优势是更低的成本。故选 A。

- Which of the following can best describe the workforce training programmes?
 - Interesting.
 - Time-consuming.
 - Practical.
 - Demanding.

C 推理判断题。根据 **Workforce Training** 部分中的“Community colleges tend to offer a wide range of career and technical education programmes in fields like nursing or firefighting. The highly applied nature of these programmes prepares students for entering the workforce.”可知,劳动力培训计划是实用的。故选 C。

B

An artificial intelligence can decode (解码) words and sentences from brain activity with surprising—though still limited—accuracy. Using only a few seconds of brain activity data, the AI guesses what a person has heard. It lists the correct answer in its top 10 possibilities up to 73 percent of the time, researchers found in a study.

Developed at a large company, the AI could eventually be used to help thousands of people around the world unable to communicate through speech, typing or gestures, researchers reported on August 25.

Most existing technologies to help such patients communicate require risky brain surgeries to implant electrodes. “This new approach could provide a practical path to help patients without the use of invasive methods,” says neuroscience Jean-Rémi King, an AI researcher in Paris.

King and his colleagues trained a computational tool to detect words and sentences on 56,000 hours of speech recordings from 53 languages. The tool, also known as a language model, learned how to recognise specific features of language. With the help of a computational method, the team tried to decode what participants had heard using just three seconds of brain activity data from each person. The team instructed the AI to match the speech sounds from the story recordings to patterns of brain activity that the AI computed as corresponding to what people

were hearing. It then made predictions about what the person might have been hearing during that short time, given more than 1,000 possibilities. The correct answer was in the AI's top 10 guesses up to 73 percent of the time, the researchers found.

“The new study is decoding of speech perception, not production,” King notes. “Though speech production is the ultimate goal, for now, we're quite a long way away.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了人工智能的新用途——从大脑活动中解码单词和句子，这可以用于帮助全世界数以千计无法通过语音、打字或手势进行交流的人。

4. What is the main idea of Paragraph 1?

- A. The principle of human brain activity.
- B. The limitation of human brain activity.
- C. The definition of the artificial intelligence.
- D. The new function of the artificial intelligence.

D 段落大意题。第一段主要介绍了人工智能可以从大脑活动中解码单词和句子，这是人工智能的一项新功能。故选 D。

5. Whom might the AI be beneficial to?

- A. People unable to hear.
- B. People who can't move around.
- C. People who are unconscious.
- D. People unable to communicate normally.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“the AI could eventually be used to help thousands of people around the world unable to communicate through speech, typing or gestures”可知，人工智能或许对无法通过语音、打字或手势进行正常交流的人有益。故选 D。

6. What is the purpose of Paragraph 4?

- A. To analyse the features of the study.
- B. To state the significance of the study.
- C. To introduce the process of the study.
- D. To present the achievement of the study.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可推知，第四段的目的是介绍该研究的过程。故选 C。

7. What can we infer about the AI from the passage?

- A. It performs well in the speech production.
- B. Its accuracy is far from the researcher's satisfaction.
- C. It will help patients avoid dangerous brain surgeries.
- D. Its language learning ability is beyond expectations.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“Most existing technologies to help such patients communicate require risky brain surgeries to implant electrodes. ‘This new approach could provide a practical path to help patients without the use of invasive methods’”可推知，人工智能技术不需要给病人脑部做手术植入电极，所以说它能帮助病人避免危险的脑部手术。故选 C。

C

Distance runners often worry about “hitting the wall” during training or races—that terrible moment when negative thoughts become so overpowering that they make it difficult to continue.

Hitting the wall typically happens around 20 miles in a marathon, when the body's supplies become exhausted. At this point, many runners feel exhausted and discouraged, slow their pace, have trouble focusing and want to quit or walk.

“Generalised tiredness, unintentionally slowing their pace, the desire to walk, and shifting focus to just surviving the marathon appear to be particularly common characteristics of it,” said Dr Alistair McCormick, an exercise psychologist in England who co-authored a new study. “A marathon becomes a real mental battle when runners ‘hit the wall’.”

Psychological blocks are an extremely common experience for recreational endurance (耐力) athletes, according to the study. To learn how they affect people, sports psychologists asked 30 recreational runners and cyclists about the psychological demands of training, preparing for and participating in competitions.

“Recreational runners and cyclists found it stressful trying to find the time to train,” McCormick said. “What was also interesting was the number of potential banana skins they met with before and during competition—disasters that could cause the athletes to lose their focus and their motivation to keep persevering.”

These roadblocks included difficult environmental conditions and equipment failure, problems with nutrition or making a mistake, the study reported. The athletes in the study said they felt these obstacles (障碍) affected their motivation and concentration, negatively affecting their overall performances.

According to the study, 43 percent of marathoners are likely to hit the wall during a race. Finding ways to move past those kinds of experiences, then, could have major benefits for an athlete's performance and well-being.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了运动员在比赛或训练时可能会进入“撞墙期”,即在比赛或训练时他们会感到身体透支,甚至失去信心。

8. What will probably happen to athletes when “hitting the wall” occurs?

- A. Their heads will hurt badly.
- B. They will fail to concentrate.
- C. They will slow down on purpose.
- D. They will have difficulty breathing.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段第二句“At this point, many runners feel exhausted and discouraged, slow their pace, have trouble focusing and want to quit or walk.”可知,当“撞墙期”发生时,运动员不能集中精力。故选 B。

9. What does the underlined phrase “banana skins” refer to in Paragraph 5?

- A. Troubles. B. Rubbish.
- C. Competitors. D. Pressure.

A 词义猜测题。根据画线短语后的“could cause the athletes to lose their focus”及下一段中的“These roadblocks”及“these obstacles (障碍)”可知,“banana skins”指的是他们遇到的潜在困难。故选 A。

10. How did sports psychologists learn about psychological blocks?

- A. By carrying out many experiments.
- B. By experiencing “hitting the wall” in person.
- C. By observing the performance of the athletes.
- D. By listening to athletes' experiences and ideas.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段第二句“To learn how they affect people, sports psychologists asked 30 recreational runners and cyclers about the psychological demands of training, preparing for and participating in competitions.”可知,运动心理学家通过倾听运动员的体验和想法,对心理障碍进行研究。故选 D。

11. What will probably be talked about in the following paragraph?

- A. Ways to move past other players in the running.
- B. Major benefits of athletes' good performance.
- C. The bad effects of psychological blocks on

athletes.

D. Techniques to get over mental psychological blocks.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段最后一句“Finding ways to move past those kinds of experiences, then, could have major benefits for an athlete's performance and well-being.”可知,接下来可能会谈到克服心理障碍的一些技术。故选 D。

D

Imagine a new smartphone product. It works the same as any other smartphone, but when dropped, those cracks that appear after an annoying fall slowly begin to fade away, and the phone magically repairs itself. A team of researchers led by chemistry professor Takuzo Aida have found a way to create self-repairing plastics that can be used in smartphones, cars and other products. But their new plastics won't only be used to create unbreakable products, but also help the fight against growing wastes harming the planet.

91% of plastic is non-recyclable and filling Earth with waste. The increasing plastic in landfills is a growing concern due to its negative environmental impact. In 2019 about only 9% of plastics were recycled globally, leading Japanese scientists to seek to find plastic that can start its own formation or self-repair.

The self-repairing plastics are made by adding a tiny amount of a specialised substance into ordinary plastic to hold the monomers (单体) together by hydrogen bonds (氢键). When the new plastic is broken down by heat, instead of burning to waste, the hydrogen bonds mix and allow for the formation of special shaped monomers to create a foundation for more monomers to layer on and rebuild itself. The team found that their self-healing plastic was able to automatically repair at room temperature over an hour to regain its durability.

The team's work suggests great prospects for the future of plastic. “The technique could lead to the development of a made-to-last plastic that does not need to be recycled,” lead professor Aida said at the conference, “and can one day be in products from smartphones to cars and even buildings.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要讲述了一种

可以自我修复的新型塑料,包括其工作原理及应用前景。

12. What is the special feature of the new plastics?

- A. Hard to break.
- B. Cheap to produce.
- C. Good to health.
- D. Easy to recycle.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“A team of researchers led by chemistry professor Takuzo Aida have found a way to create self-repairing plastics that can be used in smartphones, cars and other products. But their new plastics won't only be used to create unbreakable products, but also help the fight against growing wastes harming the planet.”可知,新型塑料的特性是可以自我修复、牢不可破。故选 A。

13. What drove scientists to search for the new plastics?

- A. Global warming.
- B. Industrial needs.
- C. Economic crisis.
- D. Green awareness.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“The increasing plastic in landfills is a growing concern due to its negative environmental impact. In 2019 about only 9% of plastics were recycled globally, leading Japanese scientists to seek to find plastic that can start its own formation or self-repair.”可知,塑料垃圾对环境的影响使科学家研究新型塑料。故选 D。

14. What does Paragraph 3 mainly tell us about the new plastic?

- A. Its social effect.
- B. Its main function.
- C. Its working principle.
- D. Its economic value.

C 段落大意题。根据第三段的内容可知,第三段主要讲述了新型塑料的工作原理。故选 C。

15. What is Aida's attitude towards the new plastic?

- A. Doubtful.
- B. Favourable.
- C. Disapproving.
- D. Unconcerned.

B 观点态度题。根据最后一段中的“‘The technique could lead to the development of a made-to-last plastic that does not need to be recycled,’ lead professor Aida said at the conference, ‘and can one day be in products from smartphones to cars and even buildings.’”

可知,Aida 对新型塑料是赞许的。故选 B。

II. 七选五

Many years ago, my dad was diagnosed (诊断) with a terminal heart condition. He was put on permanent disability and was unable to work at a steady job.

He wanted to do something to keep himself busy, so he decided to volunteer at the local children hospital. 16 He ended up working with the terminally and critically ill children. One of his kids was a girl who had been admitted with a rare disease that paralysed (使瘫痪) her from the neck down. She couldn't do anything, and she felt hopeless.

17 He started visiting her, bringing paints, brushes and paper. He stood the paper up against a backing, put the paintbrush in his mouth and began to paint. He didn't use his hands at all. Only his head would move. He would visit her whenever he could and paint for her. All the while he would tell her, “See, you can do anything you set your mind to.”

18 Soon after, the little girl was discharged because the doctors felt there was nothing else they could do for her. My dad also left the children hospital for a little while because he became ill. Sometime later my dad recovered and returned to work at the volunteer counter in the lobby of the hospital. 19 In came the little girl who had been paralysed, but this time she was walking. She ran straight over to my dad and hugged him really tight. She gave my dad a picture she had done using her hands. 20

Sometimes love is more powerful than doctors, and my dad—who died just a few months after the little girl gave him the picture—loved every single child in that hospital.

- A. She cried often.
- B. My dad loved kids.
- C. My dad decided to try to help her.
- D. He hoped that the little girl would recover soon.
- E. One morning he noticed the front doors open.
- F. At the bottom it read, “Thank you for helping me walk.”
- G. Eventually, she began to paint using her mouth, and she and my dad became friends.

答案:16~20 BCGEF

III. 完形填空

I had my first job at the age of thirteen, when a friend of my mother who owned a bookshop hired me for six hours a week to help her in the shop. I was very 21 to earn my own pocket money and my parents never interfered with (干涉) 22 I spent it, even when I was spending it foolishly. They 23 that by earning money, spending it, and learning from my mistakes, I would become more mature (成熟的) and responsible about how to 24 work, relationships with others, and money.

Like many American parents, my parents also let my brother and me do things over which they 25 a great deal. When I was sixteen, 26, after I finished high school and before I entered 27, I wanted to spend the summer months travelling around Europe. My mother was against the idea of my travelling 28 at such a young age, but my father felt that it would be a great 29 for me. In the end, my father won the argument on the condition that I limited my travelling to France, my mother's home, 30 I had many relatives who could 31 shelter and help if I needed it.

Three years later, when my brother was eighteen, he decided to 32 a year off after his first year in university and 33 through the States and the Caribbean. Again my mother was worried to see my brother leave school, but my father 34 him and my brother had a fantastic year 35 his way on trains and ships to earn passage (旅费) to different ports and cities, and discovering many fascinating places and people.

Such experiences are probably rare for children in many countries, but in the US they are fairly common.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。作者通过自己家庭所发生的事件来说明兼职工作的重要性。

21. A. anxious B. successful
C. disappointed D. proud
D 句意:我为挣自己的零花钱感到很骄傲……

故选 D。

22. A. how B. whether
C. when D. where

A 句意:……我的父母从不干涉我怎样花钱……根据语境可知,作者的父母不干涉作者花零花钱的“方式”。故选 A。

23. A. believed B. explained
C. suggested D. mentioned

A 句意:他们认为,通过挣钱、花钱和从错误中吸取教训,我会变得更加成熟……故选 A。

24. A. handle B. deal
C. make D. take

A 句意:……对如何处理工作、与他人的关系和金钱。工作是用来“处理”的,只有选项 A 符合文义。故选 A。

25. A. panicked B. suffered
C. worried D. struggled

C 句意:和许多美国父母一样,我的父母也让我我和我的弟弟做一些他们非常担心的事情。根据下文作者的母亲反对作者去欧洲环游以及弟弟休学一年去旅行可知,作者的母亲对此事应该非常担心。故选 C。

26. A. as a result B. in reality
C. on the whole D. for example

D 句意:例如,在我 16 岁高中毕业之后,进入大学之前,我想在暑假里环游欧洲。下文举了一个日常生活中的一个例子。故选 D。

27. A. politics B. business
C. university D. market

C 句意:例如,在我 16 岁高中毕业之后,进入大学之前,我想在暑假里环游欧洲。作者高中毕业后当然是要进入大学。故选 C。

28. A. alone B. apart
C. along D. aboard

A 句意:我的母亲反对我这么小就独自旅行的想法,但我的父亲认为这对我来说是一次很好的经历。travel alone 意为“独自旅行”。故选 A。

29. A. practice B. schedule
C. performance D. experience

D 句意:我的母亲反对我这么小就独自旅行的想法,但我的父亲认为这对我来说是一次很好的经历。故选 D。

30. A. which B. what
C. where D. that

C 句意:……我母亲的老家,在那里我有很多亲戚……前面的先行词为地点,且后面的从句缺少地点状语,故填 where 作从句的状语。故选 C。

31. A. support B. equip
C. provide D. take

C 根据下文“shelter and help if I needed it”可知,如果作者需要住宿,作者的亲戚可以提供帮助。故选 C。

32. A. send B. take
C. pick D. give

B 句意:三年后,当我的弟弟十八岁时,他决定在大学一年级后休一年假……take (time) off 为固定搭配,意为“休假”。故选 B。

33. A. travel B. march
C. explore D. push

A 句意:……周游美国和加勒比海地区。下文提到弟弟乘火车和轮船去不同的港口和城市,由此可以推断出,他是去旅行。故选 A。

34. A. encouraged B. agreed
C. prevented D. blamed

A 句意:我的母亲又一次担心我弟弟要离开学校,但我的父亲鼓励他……由上文内容可知,作者的母亲担心,即不支持,只有得到父亲的支持,作者的弟弟才有可能去。故选 A。

35. A. finding B. working
C. making D. forcing

B 此处表示“我”的弟弟在通过工作赚旅费旅游中度过了美妙的一年。根据下文“earn passage (旅费)”可知,“我”的弟弟需要工作。故选 B。

IV. 语法填空

Mountain gorillas, which are found in the forests of the Democratic Republic of Congo, Uganda and Rwanda, **36.** have faced/have been facing (face) multiple threats to their survival over the last 120 years. Due to poaching (盗猎), habitat **37.** loss/losses (lose) and human-caused illnesses, there were only around 600 **38.** left (leave) by 1989.

Today, that number has increased to more than 1,000—thanks in part to the work of Gladys Kalema-Zikusoka. **39.** When/As Kalema-Zikusoka

began her career with the Uganda Wildlife Authority in 1996, she treated mountain gorillas **40.** suffering (suffer) from a deadly illness which they had picked up from humans living in unsanitary (不卫生的) conditions near the forests. “I realised that you cannot protect the gorillas **41.** without improving the health of their human neighbours,” she says.

In 2003, she founded Conservation Through Public Health (CTPH), **42.** which addresses (处理) the physical and economic well-being of the local Batwa people who lived in the forest. The organisation teaches hygiene, conservation awareness and **43.** provides (provide) economic opportunities for families that would otherwise poach.

Kalema-Zikusoka, who last year received **44.** a United Nations Champion of the Earth Award, said, “We’re showing people that we don’t care only about wild animals and the forest. We also care about **45.** them.”

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是校英语报记者李华,你校外教 Frank 荣获“最美外教(The Best Foreign Teachers)”称号,你想预约采访他。请给他写一封电子邮件,内容包括:

1. 表示祝贺;
2. 告知采访内容;
3. 商定采访时间与地点。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

【参考范文】

Dear Frank,

I am Li Hua, a journalist of our school English Newspaper. Congratulations to you on receiving the award of “The Best Foreign Teachers”. I’m writing to ask whether I may have the honour to arrange a face-to-face interview with you.

During the interview, I’ll ask about your impressions of our country and your personal experiences in China. Besides, I would appreciate it if you could share with us some suggestions for English study. If it is convenient, may I pay you a visit at your office next Friday afternoon? If not,

please tell me the specific time that suits you best.

Looking forward to your reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Life had seemed perfect for my mother between working in her small garden and writing children's stories for a website, to which she had been a regular contributor until the birth of my little baby Elon. Her stories had always been well-received winning her hundreds of thousands of fans. Updates of her special column had been their weekly anticipation (期盼) during the years.

My husband, Mathew, and I ran a trade business with 46 countries. We were struggling for a balance between family and work when Mum offered to help out. She decided to retire from writing to take care of Elon. I supposed it must have been a hard decision for her to give up her long-loved career and say goodbye to her devoted fans. The sacrifice would be a huge one though it was the best for Elon.

I owe too much to Mum, a single mother who not only brought me up and provided me with the best education but also accompanied me through thick and thin, enlightening (启发) me about life and bringing me up as a happy and responsible person. So I told Mum to think twice and we could discuss other alternatives.

On one of her visits to us, Mum brought with her an old photo album, which was filled with old pictures of Mum and me in my childhood. Looking at the pictures one by one, I was flooded by blurry (模糊的) but sweet memories. In the pictures,

Mum, looked young, beautiful and content. Mum told me how much happiness I had brought to her and how much inspiration she had got from me for writing children's stories.

I came to truly understand what it was that made Mum a popular writer and why she was referred to as "having the best skills to express what love really means" by critics. Having the belief that Mum would surely be happy with Elon. I finally accepted Mum's offer, though still feeling sorry for her readers and the website she wrote for.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

One day, Mum told me she got an email from the website owner, Mr Smith, saying he would come to visit us as a friend. I guessed he would try to persuade Mum to go on writing for him, but the fact was that she wouldn't have the time. Anyway, we couldn't refuse a friend's visit. Mr Smith arrived at a weekend, and we prepared a dinner party for him, at which he expressed his understanding about Mum's choice and we talked about the stories Mum had written, her enthusiastic fans and, of course, Mum's life with our baby, Elon.

At the end of the dinner, Mr Smith told us the real purpose of his visit. He took the advice of the readers and came to discuss about a new column on his website, which he named Elon and Grandma. In the new weekly column, he would like us to share photos and videos of Mum's life with the baby as well as Mum's feelings about them. Thinking that it won't be too much trouble, we happily accepted the idea. We knew the column would be successful, but what we didn't expect was Elon became an Internet celebrity overnight.

读后续写技能养成

如何接续段首句

「技能概述」

1. 接续段首句:指在续写给文已给出的两段段首句后面写一句话,使该句在意义和情节发展上与所给的

段首句衔接吻合。

2. 续写技巧:意义上,要与续写给文融洽一致;形式上,可采用段首句的主语或宾语充当接续句的主语或宾语,还可以用副词、形容词或非谓语动词等

状语,或人物对话接续。

「范例体悟」

(2021·新高考 I 卷续写)

(第一段) *As the twins looked around them in disappointment, their father appeared. "Dad, sorry, it was such a mess," Jeff murmured, lowered his head in shame...*

(第二段) *The twins carried the breakfast upstairs and woke their mother up. "Surprise! Happy Mother's Day, Mummy!" They said, throwing their arms into the air...*

写出文中两段首句接续句的特点:

形式上,都使用了人物对话;主语上,与首句的主体一致。

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

常用副词: apparently, really, actually, then, immediately, finally, hardly 等。

常用非谓语动词: growing, hearing, sensing, ignoring, determined, depressed, delighted, excited 等。

常用形容词(短语): desperate and hopeless, weak, afraid, hungry 等。

常用介词短语: "with + 名词" "on + 名词或动名词" "after + 名词" 等。

常用从句连词: but, when, before, after, since, as, so, though/although 等。

II. 佳句背诵

1. (2022·新高考 I 卷续写)

(第一段) *We sat down next to each other, but David wouldn't look at me. Depressed and low-spirited, David sat silently with his head dropping.*

大卫垂头丧气,静静地坐着。

(第二段) *I watched as David moved up to the starting line with the other runners. With a whistle, everyone rushed up.*

随着一声哨声,每个人都向前冲去。

2. (2022·浙江 1 月卷续写)

(第一段) *We started to meet regularly to draw*

up our plans. The more we met, the more I knew his ability.

我们见面越多,我越了解他的能力。

(第二段) *One day I got word that he was admitted to hospital for a serious disease. Apparently, the stress of getting the best grade had taken its toll on him.*

显然,取得最好成绩的压力对他造成了伤害。

3. (第一段) *On her mother's birthday, Josie put the cake before her mum secretly. When Josie's mum opened her eyes, she couldn't believe what she saw.*

当乔西的妈妈睁开眼睛时,她不敢相信自己所看到的。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. (第一段) *Frustrated, Mum made a call to Grandma. Sensing Mum's sorrow, Grandma comforted her and advised, "Why not just prepare a simple yet special get-together?"*

奶奶感觉到妈妈的悲伤,安慰她,并建议说:“为什么不准备一个简单而特别的聚会呢?”

2. (第一段) *Luckily, he had a first-aid kit in the car. Immediately, he took out a bandage from the kit, and lied it lightly around the wound.*

他立刻从包里拿出一块绷带,轻轻地贴在伤口上。

II. 用段首句接续技巧结合汉语提示完成语段

(第一段) *When I arrived at the station, I went direct into the audition and began my short performance. 1. With boldness, I finished my performance relatively smoothly though palms were sweating* (我大胆地,但相对顺利地完成了我的表演,虽然手掌出汗)。

(第二段) *Finally came the day of my first public appearance on live TV with my parents at home watching. 2. Wearing fancy dress and delicate make-up, I was so proud but nervous that my show would be watched by a wide audience* (穿着化装舞会服装,化着精致的妆,我既骄傲又紧张,因为我的表演会有这么多观众观看)。

Unit 3 War and peace

主题语境

人与社会——战争与和平

| | |
|--------|---|
| 必背单词 | violent, objective, violence, tank, recall, barely, liberate, memorial, outstanding, uniform, bomb, friction, weapon, stability, academic, emerge, representative, sum, grain, relevant |
| 重点表达 | be made up of, free... from, have confidence in, nothing less than, prepare for, make it, meet up with |
| 重点知识 | 1. 独立主格结构 2. 过去分词短语作状语 |
| 单元语法 | 主谓一致(1) |
| 单元写作 | 战争英雄人物简介 |
| 主题美文赏读 | <p>In 2015, our country celebrated the 70th anniversary of the victory of both the World Anti-Fascist War and the Chinese People's War of Resistance Against Japanese Aggression. As we all know, peace has become an important problem.</p> <p>As is known to all, there are still various wars around the world, which cause death and ruins. It seems that wars can't be avoided. But peace is the ultimate goal of all of our undertaking in this world.</p> <p>We must remember the history and make the world a more peaceful, more harmonious, more beautiful place to live in.</p> <p>2015 年,我国举行了纪念中国人民抗日战争暨世界反法西斯战争胜利 70 周年活动。我们都知道,和平已经成为一个重要的问题。</p> <p>众所周知,当今世界仍然有各种各样造成死亡和毁灭的战争。看起来战争是无法避免的。但和平是我们在这个世界上一切事业的最终目标。</p> <p>我们必须牢记历史,使世界成为一个更和平、更和谐、更美丽的居住地。</p> |

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. violent *adj.* 狂暴的,凶暴的
2. objective *n.* 目的,目标
3. violence *n.* 暴力
4. recall *v.* 回想,回忆起
5. memorial *adj.* 纪念的,追悼的
6. outstanding *adj.* 杰出的,优秀的
7. weary *v.* (使)非常疲倦
8. barely *adv.* 勉强才能
9. liberate *v.* 解放(城市、国家等)
10. commander *n.* 指挥官,长官
11. amongst *prep.* 在……当中
12. drown *v.* (使)淹死
13. horror *n.* 惊恐
14. be made up of 由……组成;由……构成
15. free... from 使……不受……控制;使……摆脱……
16. have(...) confidence in 对……有(……)信心

17. prepare for 为……做准备
18. make it 及时到达;成功;约定时间
19. meet up with 遇见
20. at the same time 与此同时

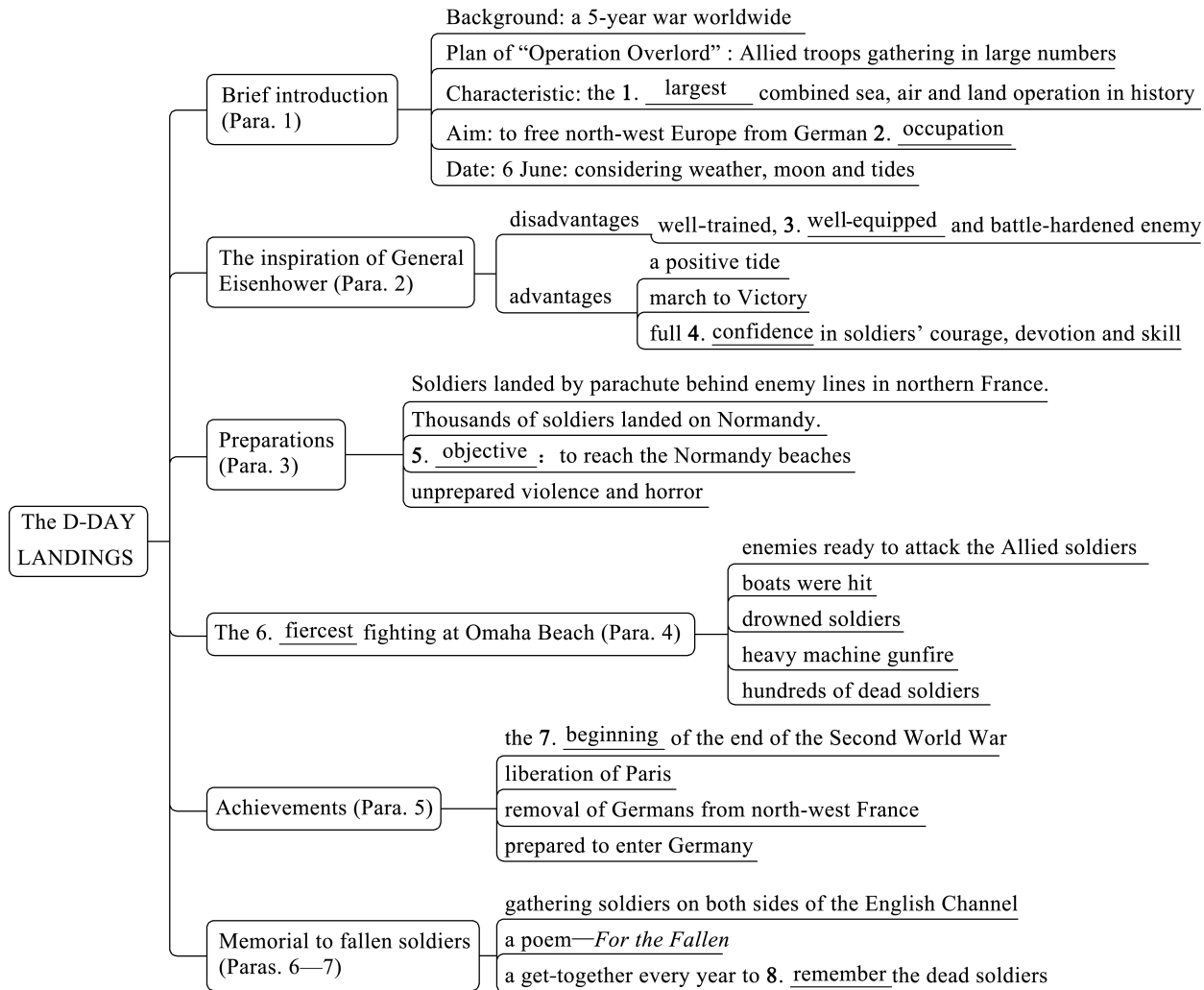
(二)阅读词汇

1. supreme *adj.* 最高的
2. allied *adj.* (第二次世界大战)同盟国的
3. landing *n.* (军队的)登陆
4. troop *n.* 部队;军队
5. tank *n.* 坦克
6. code-name *v.* 起代号为
7. tide *n.* 潮水
8. parachute *n.* 降落伞
9. coastline *n.* 海岸线
10. gunfire *n.* 炮火
11. solemn *adj.* 严肃的,庄重的
12. condemn *v.* 迫使(某人)处于不幸的境地
13. nothing less than 简直;完全

多维化析文

► 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



► 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What can we infer from Paragraph 1?

- A. The war had swept across the world since the spring of 1944.
- B. The top-secret operation would end before long.
- C. The Allied troops aimed to free Europe from Germany after the operation.
- D. The weather, moon, tides made Operation Overlord run totally successfully.

答案: B

2. What is the meaning of the lines from the poem *For the Fallen* in the text?

- A. The men who had fought on D-Day should gather together to mourn for the dead.
- B. All the people will get old except the ones who had fought on D-Day.
- C. The ones who died on D-Day should be remembered though the time passes by.
- D. Survivors of the D-Day landings should continue to meet each year on the beach.

答案: C

3. Where can we find this text?

- A. A travel guidebook.
- B. A museum brochure.
- C. An interview report.
- D. A news column.

答案: B

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

In spring 1944, the Second World War was in the process. Allied troops **1. made** (make) up mainly of British, Canadian and American soldiers were gathering in large **2. numbers** (number) to carry out a top-secret operation, **3. which** was the largest combined sea, air and land operation in history. Its aim was **4. to free** (free) north-west Europe from Germany. **5. At** dawn on 6 June, the attack began. The fighting was very fierce. The enemy were hiding, ready to attack the Allied soldiers before they reached land. Hundreds lay **6. dead** (die) in the water and amongst the tanks on the beach. It was so **7. lucky** (luck) to be able to survive it. Despite the high cost in human life, the D-Day landings were **8. a** success. Seventy years **9. later** (late), men who had fought on D-Day **10. gathered** (gather) for memorial ceremonies and the survivors would continue to meet to remember the fellow soldiers and friends they lost that day.

Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. With these words ringing in their ears, Allied soldiers prepared for what would become known as D-Day.

[句子分析] 句中 With these words ringing in their ears 为介词 with 的复合结构, 其结构为

“with + n. + doing...”, 作伴随状语, what would become known as D-Day 为 what 引导的宾语从句。

[尝试翻译] 这些话在他们的耳畔回响, 盟军士兵为后来著名的诺曼底登陆日做好了准备。

2. Although each year they are fewer in number, their outstanding acts of courage mean that we will always remember them—as well as those who lost their lives on the beaches of northern France.

[句子分析] 句中 Although each year they are fewer in number 为 Although 引导的让步状语从句, that we will always remember them 为 that 引导的宾语从句, who lost their lives on the beaches of northern France 为 who 引导的定语从句, 修饰先行词 those。

[尝试翻译] 尽管他们的人数每年都在减少, 但他们杰出的勇敢行为意味着我们将永远记住他们——以及那些在法国北部海滩上牺牲的人。

思维品质培养

Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. What is your understanding of the poem *For the Fallen*?

略

2. What's your opinion about the historical significance of the D-Day landings?

略

课后素养评价(十一)

I. 阅读理解

Zachariah Fike has an unusual hobby. He finds old military (军队的) medals for sale in antique stores and on the Internet. But unlike most collectors, Zac tracks down the medals' rightful owners, and returns them.

His effort to reunite families with lost medals began with a gift from his mother, a Purple Heart with the name Corrado A.G. Piccoli, found in an antique shop. Zac knows the meaning of a Purple Heart—he earned one himself in a war as a soldier. So when his mother gave him the medal, he knew right away what he had to do.

Through the Internet, Zac tracked down Corrado's sister Adeline Rockko. But when he finally reached her, the woman flooded him with questions: “Who are you? What antique shop?” However, when she hung up, she regretted the way she had handled the call. So she called Zac back and apologised. Soon she drove to meet Zac in Watertown, N.Y. “At that point, I knew she meant business,” Zac says. “To drive eight hours to come to see me.”

The Piccolis grew up the children of Italian immigrants in Watertown. Corrado, a translator for the Army during WWII, was killed in action in Europe.

Before hearing from Zac, Adeline hadn't realised the medal was missing. Like many military medals, the one Zac's mother had found was a family treasure. "This medal was very precious to my parents. Only on special occasions (场合) would they take it out and let us hold it in our hands," Adeline says.

As a child, Adeline couldn't understand why the medal was so significant. "But as I grew older," Adeline says, "and missed my brother more and more, I realised that was the only thing we had left." Corrado Piccoli's Purple Heart medal now hangs at the Italian American Civic Association in Watertown.

Zac recently returned another lost medal to a family in Alabama. Since he first reunited Corrado's medal, Zac says his record is now 5 for 5.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了扎克赖亚·菲克的特殊爱好。他在古董店或网上收集军功勋章,并将其归还原主。

1. Where did Zac get a Purple Heart medal for himself?

- A. In the army.
- B. In an antique shop.
- C. From his mother.
- D. From Adeline Rockko.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的 "Zac knows the meaning of a Purple Heart—he earned one himself in a war as a soldier." 可知,扎克当兵时在一场战争中获得过一枚紫心勋章,因此,他是在军队中获得了自己的紫心勋章。故选 A。

2. What did Zac realise when Adeline drove to meet him?

- A. She was very impolite.
- B. She was serious about the medal.
- C. She suspected his honesty.
- D. She came from a wealthy family.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的 "Soon she drove to meet Zac in Watertown, N.Y. 'At that point, I knew she meant business,' Zac says. 'To drive eight hours to come to see me.'" 可知,扎克在得知阿德琳开车 8 小时来见他的时候,他意识到阿德琳对于勋章的态度是认真的。故选 B。

3. What made Adeline treasure the Purple Heart?

- A. Her parents' advice.
- B. Her knowledge of antiques.

C. Her childhood dream.

D. Her memory of her brother.

D 细节理解题。根据第六段中的 " 'But as I grew older,' Adeline says, 'and missed my brother more and more, I realised that was the only thing we had left.'" 可知,随着阿德琳年龄的增长,她越来越思念她的哥哥,她意识到紫心勋章是她哥哥留下的唯一的東西,由此可推知,阿德琳珍视这枚紫心勋章是由于她对哥哥的回忆。故选 D。

II. 七选五

Do you know some surprising innovations (创新) came from World War I? Here are some introductions to you.

Daylight Saving Time

The idea of fiddling with (拨弄) the clock has been around since ancient times, but it was not until World War I that governments around the globe officially adopted daylight saving time. Why? To save resources such as fuel and extend the workday for the war effort. 1, and the Allies followed shortly after. To clear up confusion about the concept, *The Washington Times* used a comic strip to explain the first "spring forward" in the United States in 1918.

Blood Banks

2, but doctors rarely performed them before World War I, when they were accomplished by transfusing blood directly from one person to another. Captain Oswald Robertson, a US Army Reserve doctor consulting with the British army, recognised the need to stock blood before casualties (伤亡) occurred.

Hollywood

With so much of Europe in the line of fire, the European film industry had to scale back (相应缩减) dramatically. 3. Hollywood was still in its early stage, but its studios soon made fortunes producing wartime movies. The war itself provided material for countless movies in the 1920s and 1930s, including *Wings*, the winner of the first Academy Award for Best Picture.

Plastic Surgery

4. British army surgeon Harold Gillies and his colleagues performed more than 11,000 operations, mostly on soldiers suffering from facial wounds from gunshots. 5.

- There were other innovations made during World War I, such as wristwatches, modern passports, zippers, drones, etc.
- A. The Germans did it first in 1916
 - B. That opened the door for the Americans
 - C. Blood transfusions (输血) date back to the 1600s
 - D. Gillies' operation became successful immediately

- E. World War I left thousands of men scared and maimed (伤残的)
 - F. Gillies became known as the father of modern plastic surgery
 - G. After World War I the blood banks appeared in the United States
- 答案: 1~5 ACBEF

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. The survivors **recalled** the harsh battle on the beach. 回忆起
- 2. Derartu is an **outstanding** athlete and deserves to win. 杰出的
- 3. My first **parachute** jump from a helicopter was a thrilling experience. 降落伞
- 4. The **tanks** were mainly constructed of steel plates. 坦克

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <u>commander</u> <i>n.</i> 指挥官, 长官 | command <i>v.</i> 指挥; 博得 <i>n.</i> 命令; 指挥 |
| | commanding <i>adj.</i> 指挥的 |
| <u>horror</u> <i>n.</i> 惊恐 | horrible <i>adj.</i> 可怕的 |
| | horrify <i>v.</i> 使毛骨悚然; 使震惊 |
| | horrifying <i>adj.</i> 令人震惊的; 使人毛骨悚然的 |
| <u>liberate</u> <i>v.</i> 解放 (城市、国家等) | liberation <i>n.</i> 解放 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. make it 及时到达; 成功; 约定时间
- 2. be made up of 由……组成; 由……构成
- 3. free... from 使……不受……控制; 使……摆脱……

- 4. nothing less than 简直; 完全
- 5. meet up with 遇见
- 6. prepare for 为……做准备

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 独立主格结构

Code-named “Operation Overlord”, it was the largest combined sea, air and land operation in history, the aim being to free north-west Europe from German occupation.

这次作战行动的代号为“霸王行动”, 它是历史上规模最大的海、空、陆联合行动, 目的是解放德国占领的欧洲西北部地区。

2. 句型公式: 省略 that 的定语从句

But even in the depths of war, few could have been prepared for the violence and horror they would experience there.

但即使深陷战争, 也很少有人能够做好准备, 面临即将发生的残暴和恐怖。

3. 句型公式: 关系副词 where 引导的定语从句

The Allied forces then prepared to enter Germany, where they would meet up with the Soviet military moving in from the east.

盟军随后准备进攻德国, 在那里他们将与从东部攻入的苏联军队会合。

任务型课堂

1. commander n. 指挥官, 长官

[教材原文] An order issued by Supreme Allied **Commander** General Eisenhower to the troops read...

盟军最高指挥官艾森豪威尔将军在鼓舞军队士气时说道……

[归纳拓展]

(1) command v. 命令; 指挥, 统率; 掌管
command sb. to do sth. 命令某人做某事
command that... 命令……(从句用虚拟语气, 即从句的谓语要用“should + 动词原形”, should 可省略)

(2) command n. 命令; 指挥, 控制; 掌握, 运用能力
at sb.'s command 听从某人的吩咐; 运用自如
under sb.'s command/under the command of sb. 由某人指挥
take/be in command (of sth.) 指挥; 控制(某事); 负责(某事)

have a good command of 精通(尤指语言)

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

- ① She commanded him to shut (shut) the gate.
- ② The general commanded that we (should) attack (attack) at once.
- ③ Who is the officer in command here?
- ④ He has an impressive command of the details.
- ⑤ Those men had to work strictly under the command of their leader.

2. horror n. 惊恐

[教材原文] But even in the depths of war, few could have been prepared for the violence and **horror** they would experience there.

但即使深陷战争, 也很少有人能够做好准备, 面临即将发生的残暴和恐怖。

[归纳拓展]

- (1) to one's horror 让某人恐惧的是
in horror 惊恐地
horror film 恐怖片
- (2) horrible adj. 可怕的, 吓人的
- (3) horribly adv. 可怕地; 恐怖地; 极其
- (4) horrify v. 使害怕, 使恐惧
- (5) horrifying adj. 令人震惊的; 使人毛骨悚然的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① It's horrifying (horrify) to see so many species are disappearing at such a rate.
- ② I have never seen such a horrible (horror) car accident.
- ③ It seemed like a good idea at the time, and then it all went horribly (horrible) wrong.
- ④ You can realise the horrified (horrify) look on her face when she saw the bear moving towards herself.

(2) 完成句子

- ① He was filled with horror at the bad news just now.
刚才听到这个坏消息, 他心里充满了恐惧。
- ② He stared at me in horror, his face muscles working.
他惊恐地盯着我, 脸上的肌肉抽动着。
- ③ To my horror, I discovered that my passport was missing.
使我惊恐的是, 我发现我的护照不见了。

3. get (sth.) across (to sb.) 横过, 渡过; 使(某事)被(某人)理解; (向某人)把(某事)讲清楚

[教材原文] The seventh man was the next one to **get across** the beach without being hit.

第七个冲出来的士兵是第二个穿过海滩没有被击中的。

[归纳拓展]

get rid of 摆脱, 除去
get along/on with 与……相处
get down to (doing) sth. 开始认真地做某事
get over 解决, 克服; 从……中恢复

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

- ① Did you get across the message to the students?
- ② School uniforms are traditional in Britain, but some schools are starting to get rid of them.
- ③ That stubborn girl is difficult to get along with, so you must be patient with her.
- ④ I'm going to get down to studying (study) English this term.

4. 独立主格结构

[教材原文] Code-named “Operation Overlord”, it

was the largest combined sea, air and land operation in history, **the aim being to free north-west Europe from German occupation.**

这次作战行动的代号为“霸王行动”，它是历史上规模最大的海、空、陆联合行动，目的是解放德国占领的欧洲西北部地区。

[句式分析] the aim being to...是独立主格结构，the aim 是逻辑主语，being to...是逻辑谓语。

[归纳拓展]

独立主格结构由“逻辑主语＋逻辑谓语”构成，逻辑主语可由名词或主格代词充当，逻辑谓语可由名词、形容词、副词、介词短语、不定式、分词等充当。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① The party will be held in the garden, weather permitting (permit).
- ② All things considered (consider), the planned trip will have to be called off.

③ They decided to buy a car, Mike to pay (pay) half the money.

(2) 一句多译

① 他有两个儿子，都是医生。

- a. He has two sons, both of them doctors. (独立主格结构)
- b. He has two sons, both of whom are doctors. (定语从句)
- c. He has two sons and both of them are doctors. (并列句)
- ② 由于没有公共汽车，所以他们步行回家。
- a. There being no buses, they walked home. (独立主格结构)
- b. Because there were no buses, they walked home. (原因状语从句)
- c. There were no buses, so they walked home. (并列句)

多义词汇专练

- 1. It takes courage to speak out against the **tide** of opinion. A
A. n. 趋势;潮流 B. n. 潮水 C. n. 怒潮
- 2. It would provide true and **objective** information. B
A. n. 目标,目的 B. adj. 客观的 C. adj. 宾格的
- 3. **memorial**: A. adj. 纪念的,追悼的 B. n. 纪念碑 C. 纪念物
- ① The statue is a lasting **memorial** to those who died in the war. C
- ② The nation built a grand **memorial** to those who fell in the Napoleonic wars. B
- ③ This is a **memorial** service in the dead man's honour. A

课后素养评价(十二)

I. 单词拼写

- 1. The crowds became violent (狂暴的) and threw petrol bombs at the police.
- 2. His objective (目的) was to stop the space station project altogether.
- 3. Her teacher recalled (回忆), “She was always on about modelling.”
- 4. He was barely (勉强) able to drag his poisoned leg behind him.
- 5. At the sight of the snake, he drew back in horror (惊恐).
- 6. The boy who won the scholarship was a quite outstanding (优秀的) student.
- 7. Dear Madam, thank you for your interest in our memorial (纪念的) scheme.
- 8. The book offers tips for how to liberate (解放) ourselves from fear and anxiety in high-pressure situations.
- 9. He would relay the information to his commander (指挥官).

II. 短语填空

by the end of; be made up of; be known as; meet
up with; have confidence in; make it; prepare for;
come up with

1. The medical team is made up of five specialists, ten doctors and fifteen nurses.
2. Only when you have confidence in yourself can you succeed in your work.
3. We shall have finished the project by the end of this year.
4. We met up with our favourite basketball player as we left the stadium.
5. Dr John is known as an experienced specialist nationwide.
6. David always prepares for each exam intently.
7. The expert came up with some precious suggestions just now.
8. Those soldiers who shunned heavy machine gunfire made it to the beach.

III. 完成句子

1. This is not an occasion for laughter, where you must take everything seriously.
这不是一个笑的场合,你必须认真对待每一件事情。
2. The secretary as well as three employees was removed from their posts.
秘书和三个员工被撤职了。
3. People injured in the accident were sent to the nearby hospital.
此次事故中受伤的人被送进了附近的医院。
4. More time given, we should have done it much better.
如果给更多的时间,我们会把它做得更好。
5. He spent seven days in the wind and snow, cold and hungry.

他在风雪中度过了七天,又冷又饿。

IV. 完形填空

Before retiring, my father was a successful corporate executive. Growing up, I got used to learning that he had received 1, from vice president to executive vice president to senior executive vice president, and so on. I was always impressed by my father's 2 and viewed him as a wonderful role model.

Therefore, I couldn't have been more 3 when my father got annoyed with me after I showed him one of my new business cards, 4 "Tina L. Seelig, President". I had started my own business and 5 my own business cards. My father looked at the cards and said, "You can't just call yourself president." In his experience, I had to wait for someone else to promote me to a leadership role and the thought of my 6 myself with that title 7 him.

I have 8 his mentality (心态) time and time again. Twenty years ago when I told a friend I was going to write a book, she asked, "What makes you think you can write a book?" She couldn't 9 taking on such a project without the 10 of someone in a position of greater authority. I, on the other hand, felt confident I could do it. The task was certainly 11, but why not try? I put together a detailed proposal, wrote some sample chapters, shopped it around, and 12 a contract.

Over time, I've become increasingly 13 that people are divided into two categories. Some look inside themselves for 14 and others wait to be pushed forward by outside forces. From my experience, there's a lot to be said for 15 opportunities instead of waiting for someone to hand them to you.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者和父亲、和朋友的事情,以此告诉我们,与等着别人给你机会相比,抓住机会更有优势。

1. A. increases B. promotions
C. changes D. shifts

B 根据下文“from vice president to executive vice president to senior executive vice president, and so on”可知,这是工作职位的晋升。故选 B。

2. A. strengths B. accomplishments
C. perseverance D. patience

B 根据下文“viewed him as a wonderful role model”可知,爸爸在工作上取得了成就,是作者的榜样。故选 B。

3. A. amused B. ashamed
C. surprised D. concerned

C 根据下文“when my father got annoyed with me”可知,爸爸生作者的气,这让作者很惊讶。故选 C。

4. A. reading B. writing
C. indicating D. illustrating

A 根据下文“Tina L. Seelig, President”可知,卡片上写着“Tina L. Seelig 总裁”。故选 A。

5. A. sold B. delivered
C. printed D. spread

C 根据上文“after I showed him one of my new business cards”可知,作者打印了自己的名片。故选 C。

6. A. appointing B. assigning
C. polishing D. shaping

A 根据上文“Tina L. Seelig, President”可知,这是作者对自己职位的任命。故选 A。

7. A. puzzled B. amazed
C. relieved D. upset

D 根据上文“when my father got annoyed with me”可知,一直被提拔的爸爸对孩子自己任命自己职位的想法感到不高兴。故选 D。

8. A. weighed up B. backed down
C. banked on D. come across

D 根据下文“his mentality (心态) time and time again”可知,作者经常遇到爸爸的这种心态。故选 D。

9. A. tolerate B. acknowledge
C. imagine D. confirm

C 根据上文“What makes you think you can write a book?”可知,这个朋友不能想象作者在没有权威人士赞同的情况下做这件事。故选 C。

10. A. vision B. reputation
C. approval D. passion

C 根据下文“I, on the other hand, felt confident I could do it.”可知,作者在没有权威人士赞同的情况下做这件事,这是朋友不能想象的。故选 C。

11. A. ambitious B. meaningful
C. valuable D. absurd

A 根据上文“What makes you think you can write a book?”可知,写一本书不容易。故选 A。

12. A. refused B. appreciated
C. took D. landed

D 根据上文“I put together a detailed proposal, wrote some sample chapters, shopped it around, and”可知,经过一系列准备,最后签下了合同。故选 D。

13. A. aware B. afraid
C. grateful D. accustomed

A 根据上文“Over time”可知,随着时间的推移,作者越来越意识到人可以分为两类。故选 A。

14. A. stability B. motivation
C. satisfaction D. growth

B 根据下文“and others wait to be pushed forward by outside forces”可知,此处是指一些人从自己的内部寻找动力。故选 B。

15. A. missing B. witnessing
C. pursuing D. seizing

D 根据下文“instead of waiting for someone to hand them to you”可知,与等着别人给你机会相比,抓住机会更有优势。故选 D。

Section III Using language

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- The **uniform** makes the guard look handsome. 制服
- A group of UN **peacekeepers** were sent to help with the **peacekeeping**. 维和人员 维持和平(的行动)
- The two sides will agree on **disarming** troops and leaving their weapons at military positions. 解除武装
- I have never suggested that UN forces could physically separate the **combatants** in the region. 战斗人员
- She looked desperately around for a **weapon**. 武器
- We only have three rounds of **ammunition** left. 弹药

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---|--|
| <u>stability</u> <i>n.</i> 稳固, 稳定 | <u>stable</u> <i>adj.</i> 稳定的; 沉稳的 |
| <u>professionalism</u> <i>n.</i> 专业水准; 专业素质; 职业精神 | <u>profession</u> <i>n.</i> 职业; 专业 |
| | <u>professional</u> <i>adj.</i> 职业的; 专业的 |
| | <u>professor</u> <i>n.</i> 教授 |
| <u>friction</u> <i>n.</i> 冲突, 摩擦 | <u>frictional</u> <i>adj.</i> 摩擦(力)的; 由摩擦产生的 |

III. 补全短语

- put down 镇压; 记下
- at the beginning of 在……开头
- on standby 待命
- carry out 进行; 实行
- make sure 确保

IV. 重点句式补全

- 句型公式: way 作先行词的定语从句
Politics is the study of the ways in which countries are governed.
政治学是对国家治理方式的研究。
- 句型公式: 全部倒装
Among the many horrors inflicted on humanity by the Second World War was the massive bombing of civilians, often referred to as “terror bombing”.
对平民的大规模轰炸是第二次世界大战给人类带来的众多恐怖事件之一, 通常被称为“恐怖轰炸”。
- 句型公式: to be done 作后置定语
James Ryan is the fourth son in his family to be sent to fight in the Second World War.
詹姆斯·瑞恩是他家中第四个被送去参加第二次世界大战的儿子。

任务型课堂

1. uniform *n.* 制服 *adj.* 全部相同的, 一致的

[教材原文] The soldiers' **uniforms** look very smart.

士兵们的制服看起来很整洁。

[归纳拓展]

(1) in uniform 穿着制服; 服兵役

out of uniform 穿便服

(2) be uniform in 在……方面整齐/一致

名师点拨

uniform 作“制服”讲时, 既可用作可数名词也可用作不可数名词。在 in uniform 和 out of uniform 中, uniform 前不带冠词。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The rows of houses were uniform in appearance.

② The students are in school uniforms.

(2) 完成句子

She will probably take great pride in wearing a school uniform.

她大概会为穿上校服而感到非常得意。

2. sacrifice *n.* 牺牲; 祭品 *v.* 牺牲, 献出; 献祭

[教材原文] *Saving Private Ryan* is an unforgettable war film and, also, a story of courage and **sacrifice**.

《拯救大兵瑞恩》是一部令人难忘的战争电影,也是一个关于勇气和牺牲的故事。

「归纳拓展」

(1) make sacrifices (for...) (为……)做出牺牲

(2) sacrifice A for B 为了B而牺牲A

sacrifice... to do sth. 牺牲……去做某事

「即学即练」

单句语法填空

① She made many sacrifices (sacrifice) to get her son a good education.

② The designers have sacrificed speed for fuel economy.

语法探究

主谓一致(1)

「语法感知」

① Your enemy **is** well trained, well equipped and battle-hardened...

② The enemy **were** hiding, ready to attack the Allied soldiers...

③ The cattle **are** grazing in the field.

④ The species of fish **are** numerous.

⑤ This species of rose **is** very curious.

⑥ The goods **are** to be exported to Canada.

⑦ Fifty years **is** not a long time.

⑧ The old **are** well looked after by the government.

⑨ Listening to loud music at rock concerts **has** caused hearing loss in some teenagers.

⑩ To be strict with oneself **is** a good quality of a person.

1. 由句①②可知,当集体名词作主语时,如果指整体概念,谓语动词用单数形式;如果指具体成员,谓语动词用复数形式。

2. 由句③可知,当cattle等有生命的集体名词作主语时,谓语动词只用复数形式。

3. 由句④⑤可知,当单复数同形的名词作主语时,谓语形式要根据句意来确定。

4. 由句⑥可知,有些只有复数形式的名词作主语时,谓语动词用复数形式。

5. 由句⑦可知,表示时间的复数名词作主语时,谓语动词常用单数形式。

6. 由句⑧可知,“the+形容词”表示一类人时,谓语动词常用复数形式。

7. 由句⑨⑩可知,动词-ing形式或不定式作主语时,谓语动词一般用单数形式。

「语法精讲」

1. 集体名词作主语,如果指整体概念,谓语动词用单数形式;如果指具体成员,谓语动词用复数形式。

{ The company was set up last year.

{ 这家公司是去年成立的。

{ The company are mostly young men.

{ 这家公司的成员大都是年轻人。

{ The team is well organised.

{ 这个队组织得很好。

{ The team are all good players.

{ 这个队的队员都是好样的。

{ This hotel is at the foot of a hill.

{ 这家旅馆在一座小山脚下。

{ All the hotel are gathered in the hall.

{ 全旅馆的人都集中在大厅里。

2. 有些集体名词作主语,谓语动词用单数或复数形式都可以。

The local council **is/are** to look into the matter.

地方议会将会调查此事。

The data we have collected **is/are** not enough to be convincing.

我们收集到的数据还不足以令人信服。

The school's teaching staff **is/are** excellent.

这个学校的教学人员很优秀。

名师点拨

(1) 可以用“every one of+集体名词”表示单数。

Every one of the committee **is** for the plan.

委员会的每个人都赞成这个计划。

(2) “the whole+集体名词”作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式;“all the+集体名词”作主语时,谓语动词用单复数形式均可。

The whole staff **has signed** the petition.

= All the staff **have/has signed** the petition.

全体工作人员都在请愿书上签了字。

3. 有些有生命的集体名词作主语时,谓语动词只用复数形式。常见的这类名词有cattle, people, police, mankind等。

The police **have not made** any arrests.

警方没有进行任何抓捕。

The mankind **long** for peace.

人类渴望和平。

4. 无生命的集体名词作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。

如 clothing, jewellery, machinery, scenery, stationery 等。

Much of the jewellery **was** missing.

许多珠宝丢了。

5. 单复数同形的名词作主语,谓语动词形式要根据意义来确定。常见的这类名词有 fish, species, deer, means, sheep, works, headquarters, crossroads 等。

Every means **has been tried**.

每种方法都试过了。

The means of communication between here and outside **are interrupted**.

这里同外界的通讯方式都中断了。

6. 用作书名、剧名、报纸名、国名、组织机构名等的复数名词作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式;但如果是山脉、群岛、瀑布等的名称作主语,谓语动词用复数形式。

The Arabian Nights **is** a very interesting storybook.

《天方夜谭》是一本非常有趣的故事书。

The United Nations **is** an international organisation.

联合国是一个国际性的组织。

The Niagara Falls **are** the falls on the Niagara River.

尼亚加拉瀑布位于尼亚加拉河上。

7. 表示时间、距离、价格、度量衡等的复数名词或短语作为一个整体看待时,谓语动词一般用单数形式。

Four thousand dollars **is** more than she can afford.

她付不起 4 000 美元。

名师点拨 ■■■■

若强调时间、距离、价格、度量衡等这类词组的复数意义时,谓语动词也可用复数形式。

Two hundred tons of water **were** used last month.

上个月用了 200 吨水。

「语法冲关」

I. 用括号内所给动词的适当形式填空

1. We all remember the days which are (be) filled with hard work and cooperation.
2. The equipment in our lab is (be) perfect.
3. All the machinery in the factory is made (make) in China.
4. Eighty dollars is (be) what she needs.
5. The Great Lakes lie (lie) between the US and Canada.
6. A series of robberies has shaken (shake) up residents of the neighbourhood recently.
7. War and peace is (be) a constant theme in history.
8. This class are (be) all boys.

II. 完成句子

1. The team are driving to the game in their own cars.
队员们正开着自己的车去参加比赛。
2. The committee consists of seven members.
该委员会由七名成员组成。
3. Twenty years is only a very short span in human history.
在人类历史上,20 年只不过是弹指一瞬间。
4. Most of their equipment has been shipped ahead of schedule.
他们的大部分设备已被提前运走了。
5. The audience were all deeply impressed by the plot.
这一剧情给所有观众留下了极为深刻的印象。

课后素养评价(十三)

I. 选词填空

weapon; uniform; stability; make sure; play a role in; sacrifice; refer to; friction

1. Students are required to make sure that their uniforms are clean when they are at school.

2. The Nobel Peace Prize is given to such people who have made great contributions to maintaining global peace and stability.
3. If you want to know his telephone number, you may refer to the telephone directory.
4. Experts say the way you design your home could

play a role in whether you pack on the pounds or keep them off.

5. In old times, a sword was one of the most important weapons.
6. In designing a machine it is necessary to reduce friction as much as possible.
7. You shouldn't have to sacrifice one aspect of your life for another.

II. 单句语法填空

1. The audience was (be) so large that every seat was taken in the great hall.
2. Our family has been (be) in this city for about sixteen years.
3. A number of celebrities were invited (invite) to attend the party, but the number of the celebrities present was less than ten.
4. So far more than one film has been directed (direct) by my father, making us proud.
5. The enemy trapped in the forest were caught (catch) by our troop.
6. The strike has been put down by the government troop.
7. Extensive (全面的) tests have been carried out on the patient.
8. Buses were placed on standby for the journey to London.

III. 阅读理解

If you're not at least a bit terrified by the climate and ecological breakdown unfolding before our eyes, you haven't grasped the scale of the crisis. Eco-anxiety, defined as "a chronic (长期的) fear of environmental doom", is on the rise. But redirecting this anxiety into anger and collective action might just pull humanity back from the brink.

We don't yet know how deeply eco-anxiety affects people, but we can learn not to repeat the mistakes of long-gone societies lost to environmental collapse. Jared Diamond's *Collapse: How Societies Choose to Fail or Succeed* uncovers the common driver that led to the fall of ancient civilisations such as the Central American Mayan, the remote Pacific Easter Island, and the Mycenae: People accidentally destroyed the environmental resources on which

their societies depended.

Today, we are living in a new climate and ecological age. The new normal is one that humans have never before experienced on earth, and that has occurred within a single generation. We can't claim ignorance. Numerous scientific reports show: unprecedented (空前的) wildfires in the Arctic, heatwaves annually breaking records, the Amazon shrinking and drying, and species extinction rates accelerating. Nature's dangerous decline is unprecedented.

So, it's not surprising that eco-anxiety is on the rise. Anxiety is often a private emotional state: We feel alone, stuck inside our own heads, and our emotions stop us from doing the things we want. But anger, directed appropriately, can fuel powerful collective action for change.

We are on a pathway to destroying the global conditions for human survival. Unlike previous civilisations, we have the science and technology to understand our danger and chart a new pathway. This is a moment for all of us to channel our eco-anxiety, fear and anger into energy for change.

【语篇解读】文章主要讲述了生态焦虑——对环境毁灭的长期恐惧。

1. Which of the following best describes "eco-anxiety"?

- A. Uncertainty about the future.
- B. Anxiety about modern civilisation.
- C. Fear of changes in the living standards.
- D. Worries about the destruction of nature.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段中的"Eco-anxiety, defined as 'a chronic (长期的) fear of environmental doom', is on the rise."可知,生态焦虑是指对自然破坏的担忧。故选D。

2. Why are some ancient civilisations mentioned in Paragraph 2?

- A. To warn people to learn a lesson from the past.
- B. To prove the importance of ancient civilisations.
- C. To present the collapse of ancient civilisations.
- D. To add some background information on eco-anxiety.

A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的"We don't yet

know how deeply eco-anxiety affects people, but we can learn not to repeat the mistakes of long-gone societies lost to environmental collapse.”可知,古文明的衰败警示人们从过去吸取教训。故选 A。

3. Why is eco-anxiety on the rise?

- A. People lack the knowledge about nature.
- B. Nature is in its most dangerous state ever.
- C. Climate issues can't be solved effectively.
- D. People have limited access to natural resources.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“Numerous scientific reports show: unprecedented (空前的) wildfires in the Arctic, heatwaves annually breaking records, the Amazon shrinking and drying, and species extinction rates accelerating. Nature's dangerous decline is unprecedented.”和

第四段中的“‘So, it's not surprising that eco-anxiety is on the rise.’”可知,生态焦虑的加重,是因为自然界正处于有史以来最危险的状态。故选 B。

4. How does the author feel about the global conditions for humans in the future?

- A. Frustrated.
- B. Doubtful.
- C. Hopeful.
- D. Concerned.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Unlike previous civilisations, we have the science and technology to understand our danger and chart a new pathway. This is a moment for all of us to channel our eco-anxiety, fear and anger into energy for change.”可知,作者对人类未来的全球状况充满希望。故选 C。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. academic *adj.* 学术的
2. relevant *adj.* 有关的,切题的
3. intellectual *adj.* 智力的,脑力的
4. associated *adj.* 联合的
5. emerge *v.* 出现
6. representative *n.* 代表
7. disrupt *v.* 扰乱
8. light up 照亮;点燃
9. lay the foundation for 为……打基础
10. track down 跟踪追捕
11. cut open 切开
12. refer to... as... 把……称作……
13. in fact 事实上;实际上
14. due to 由于

15. more than 超过;多于;不仅仅;非常

16. because of 由于;因为

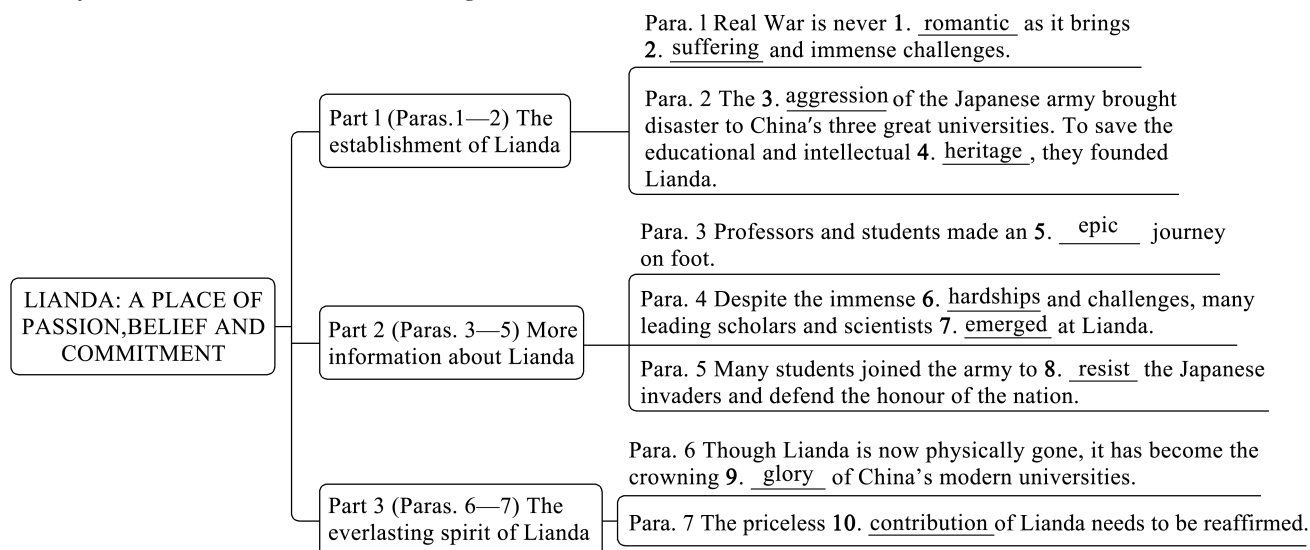
(二)阅读词汇

1. invader *n.* 侵略者,侵略军
2. misty *adj.* 多雾的
3. glory *n.* 辉煌的成就;荣耀的事
4. dedication *n.* 奉献
5. rough *adj.* 简单的;粗糙的
6. anniversary *n.* 周年纪念日
7. sum *n.* 金额,款项
8. grain *n.* 谷物,粮食
9. breeze *n.* 微风
10. hold down 压住
11. blow away 刮走,吹跑
12. break through 突围
13. be betrayed to 被出卖给

多维化析文

▶ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



▶ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Lianda was made up of Peking University, Tsinghua University and _____.
 A. Yunnan Normal University
 B. Nankai University
 C. Renmin University
 D. Nanjing University

答案: B

2. From the third paragraph, we can conclude that _____.
 A. at that time, the conditions of Lianda were very difficult
 B. classes were frequently disrupted because the students needed to work in the field
 C. only the students went to Lianda on foot, while the professors by bus
 D. with the help of the national government, their diet was guaranteed

答案: A

3. Lianda has become the crowning glory of China's modern universities because of _____.
 A. its prominent professors
 B. its talented students
 C. the school's strong spirit of perseverance and dedication

D. all of the above

答案: D

▶ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

In 1937, the 1. aggression (aggress) of the Japanese army brought disaster to China's three great universities: Peking University and Tsinghua University 2. were occupied (occupy) by Japanese troops, 3. while Nankai University was completely destroyed by bombing. 4. To save (save) their educational and intellectual heritage, the three universities joined together in Kunming as National Southwest Associated University, otherwise 5. known (know) as Lianda.

In the new combined school, professors and students faced dire shortages of food, books and equipment. Furthermore, classes were 6. frequently (frequent) disrupted due to fierce air attacks. It was right in this place 7. that the nation's intellectual heritage was guarded and fortified. It also educated many of China's leading 8. scholars (scholar) and scientists. 9. Driven (drive) by a sense of commitment, a great many students joined the army to resist the Japanese invaders. Because of the school's strong spirit of perseverance and 10. dedication (dedicate), it has become part of the collective memory of the Chinese nation.

Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. However, despite the immense hardships and the daunting challenges, it was right in this place, over a period of eight long years, that the nation's intellectual heritage was not only guarded but fortified by the passion and belief of the worthy academics of Lianda.

[句子分析] despite 构成的介词短语作让步状语, “it was... that...” 是强调句型, 强调了地点状语和时间状语, “not only... but (also)...” 连接了 guarded 和 fortified.

[尝试翻译] 然而, 尽管面临着巨大的困难和艰巨的挑战, 正是在这个地方, 经过八年漫长的岁月, 国家的知识遗产不仅得到了保护, 还得到了强化, 这些都归功于联大杰出学者们的热情和信念。

2. But it has become the crowning glory of China's modern universities, not only because of its prominent professors and talented students, but also because of the school's strong spirit of perseverance and dedication.

[句子分析] 句中 not only... but also... “不仅……而且……” 用作并列连词, 相当于 “not just... but also...”, 连接了两个原因状语。

[尝试翻译] 但它已经成为中国现代大学的最高荣耀, 不仅因为它那杰出的教授和有才华的学生, 还因为学校具有坚定的毅力和奉献精神。

思维品质培养**Activity 5: Think and answer the following question**

What is your understanding of the poem written by Zha Liangzheng?
略

课后素养评价(十四)**I. 单词拼写**

- He's been informed that he doesn't qualify for the scholarship because of his academic (学术的) background.
- It was reported that no new evidence emerged (出现) during the investigation.
- I felt lucky to be chosen as a representative (代表) of our school and join in the cultural tour to Pompeii and Loulan.
- Ten years later, a paper relevant (有关的) to this research was published.
- The new technology, if applied to farming, will help increase the grain (谷物) output.
- It's said that the sum (金额) amounted to a little over twelve million dollars.
- This associated (联合的) company selling furniture is now in the charge of Mr White.
- There is no doubt that high levels of lead could damage the intellectual (智力的) development of children.

9. We celebrated our 25th wedding anniversary (周年纪念日) in Florence.

II. 短语填空

more than; a large number of; serve as; for example; due to; because of; blow away; lay the foundation for

- The girl did cherish the educational opportunity and she always adopted the motto to serve as a reminder.
- You had better switch on the fan to blow away the smoke.
- Due to the fact that they did not read English, the visitors were unaware of what they were signing.
- Forming the good habit of reading will lay the foundation for your success in study and career.
- According to the traffic rule, you can't drive more than 30 kilometres per hour in this area.
- There are a large number of attractions and you may not have time to see them all.

7. The police are advising motorists to reduce the speed because of the fog.
8. Many countries, for example Mexico and Japan, have a lot of earthquakes.

III. 补全句子

1. 他投身于自己的研究,因此难怪他成功地研制出了疫苗。(no wonder)
He devoted himself to his research, so it was no wonder that he succeeded in the development of the vaccine.
2. 被准许参军后,他感到自豪。(过去分词作状语)
Allowed to join the army, he felt proud.
3. 有些人浪费食物,然而另一些人却吃不饱。(while 表示对比)
Some people waste food while others don't have enough to eat.
4. 天气允许的话,筹划很久的舞会将在花园中举行。(独立主格结构)
The party which has been planned for a long time will be held in the garden, weather permitting.
5. 只有通过采取有效措施,我们才能保护好濒危动物。(部分倒装)
Only by taking effective measures can we preserve the endangered animals well.

IV. 七选五

The workplace can be a perfect breeding-ground for “Misergonia”, also called desk rage (愤怒). It's a condition in which a series of noises and disorders cause people distress.

Sounds are often the trigger for Misergonia. The routine fire-alarm test is a case in point. “Attention please, attention please” shouts a voice that is impossible to ignore. 1 For example, every office has its share of keyboard thumpers—people whose goal seems to be not producing a document but destroying the equipment.

2 “This is a point that has already been

made” is how weirdly large numbers of people start to make a point. Why not just say “I don't value your time”?

Small IT failures are a fact of office life, but they can still be soul-destroying. The printer just doesn't work. 3 Your cursor (光标) is just there, but when you move your mouse towards it, nothing happens. “Either your cursor is in a coma or the battery has run out,” offers up a colleague helpfully. Someone else fills the gap. “This is a point that has already been made,” they begin.

4 It starts innocently enough, with someone asking for help with a problem. In come one or two replies, and then suddenly, a shower, as if nothing else mattered other than answering this one question. There are replies to replies, and replies to replies to replies. Everyone seems to be enjoying themselves hugely, but there is always a silent, suffering group.

Individual workers have their own triggers. There is no cure for Misergonia. The workplace is a collection of people keeping in touch in different ways. Their habits and noises turn into something familiar for some colleagues but annoying for others.

- 5
- A. You'd better ask them for help.
- B. And then there is the reply-all email.
- C. Other noises are not so loud but just as annoying.
- D. Or the mouse gives up at just the wrong moment.
- E. Nowadays, the computer has become an essential tool.
- F. The only release is to try to be understanding and get used to it.
- G. Pet phrases (口头禅) are another headache for Misergonia sufferers.

答案: 1~5 CGDBF

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. A large **sum** has been allocated (分配) for buying new books for the library. 金额, 款项
- 2. The bench had a **rough** wooden table in front of it. 粗糙的
- 3. The president will offer delegates his **blueprint** for the country's future. 蓝图
- 4. There was about 300 million tons of **grain** in the fields at the start of the harvest. 谷物
- 5. The flowers were gently swaying (摇摆) in the **breeze**. 微风
- 6. To achieve his own goal, he placed **collective** interests in the back of his mind. 集体的; 共同的
- 7. The swimmer **emerged** from the lake, took a deep breath and then made another dive into the water. 出现

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--|--|
| <u>emerge</u> v. 出现 | emergence n. 出现; 浮现 |
| <u>academic</u> adj. 学术的 | academy n. 研究院; 学会 |
| <u>aggression</u> n. 侵略 | aggressive adj. 侵略的 |
| <u>invader</u> n. 侵略者, 侵略军 | invade v. 侵略, 侵入 |
| | invasion n. 侵犯; 入侵; 侵略 |
| <u>glory</u> n. 辉煌的成就; 荣耀的事 | glorious adj. 辉煌的; 荣耀的 |
| <u>dedication</u> n. 奉献 | dedicate v. 奉献 |
| <u>representative</u> n. 代表 adj. 典型的; 有代表性的 | represent v. 代表; 描绘 |
| | representation n. 代理; 代表; 描绘; 表现 |
| <u>intellectual</u> adj. 智力的, 脑力的 | intellect n. 智力; 领悟力; 理解力; 思维能力; 智力出众者 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. due to 由于
- 2. serve as 用作; 充当
- 3. be occupied by 被……占据
- 4. a sum of 一笔
- 5. for example 例如
- 6. light up 照亮; 点燃

IV. 重点句式补全

- 1. 句型公式: as 引导原因状语从句
Real war is never romantic as it brings suffering and immense challenges.
真正的战争从来不是浪漫的, 因为它会带来痛苦和巨大的挑战。
- 2. 句型公式: It is no wonder that...
It is no wonder that many, if not most, of China's leading scholars and scientists emerged at Lianda...
难怪即使不是大多数, 但也有许多中国顶尖的学者和科学家都是联大出身……
- 3. 句型公式: 非限制性定语从句
On windy days, we had to hold down the paper on the desk, which would otherwise be blown away.
在刮风的日子, 我们必须把纸按在桌子上, 否则纸就会被风吹走。
- 4. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作状语
Driven by a sense of commitment, a great many joined the army to resist the Japanese invaders and defend the honour of the nation.
在责任感的驱使下, 许多人参军抵抗日本侵略者, 保卫国家的荣誉。

任务型课堂

- 1. **representative** n. 代表 **adj.** 典型的; 有代表性的
[教材原文] In 2017, **representatives** from Peking

University, Tsinghua University, Nankai University and Yunnan Normal University

gathered to commemorate the 80th anniversary of its founding.

2017年,北京大学、清华大学、南开大学及云南师范大学的代表们齐聚一堂,共同纪念联大建校80周年。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be representative of 代表……的

(2) represent *v.* 代表,表示;象征,体现;描述,描绘

represent... as/to be 把……说成……

represent sth. to sb. 向某人陈述某事

(3) representation *n.* 代理,代表;描绘,表现

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① They were represented (represent) as true patriots in the film.

② He represented himself as an expert.

③ Beijing Opera is the most representative (represent) of all traditional Chinese dramatic art forms and the largest Chinese opera form.

④ He seemed to take it for granted that he should speak as a representative (represent).

⑤ (2023·新课标Ⅱ卷) In artists' representations (represent) of books and reading, we see moments of shared humanity that go beyond culture and time.

2. sum *n.* 金额,款项

[教材原文] In 1938, the Japanese army offered a large **sum** of money for Yang's head and a large number of troops surrounded his men.

1938年,日军悬赏一大笔钱要杨靖宇的人头,大批军队包围了他的部下。

[归纳拓展]

(1) a large sum of money 一大笔钱

(2) sum *v.* 合计,总计

sum to 共计

sum up 总结,概括

to sum up 总之

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① These instances sum to several dozen.

② To sum up, for a healthy heart you must take regular exercise and stop smoking.

(2) 完成句子

① The young lady spent a large sum of money on her clothes last year.

去年这位年轻的女士在买衣服上花了一大笔钱。

② They sum up their experience at the end of every year as a rule.

他们通常在每年年终总结他们的经验。

3. relevant *adj.* 有关的,切题的

[教材原文] ... think of another **relevant** topic.

……考虑另外一个相关的话题。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be relevant to 与……有关的

(2) relevance/relevancy *n.* 关联,相关性

(3) relevantly *adv.* 有关联地;有关系地

[即学即练]

完成句子

① What experience do you have that is relevant to this position?

你有哪些和这个职位相关的经验?

② These comments are not directly relevant to this enquiry. He has missed the point.

这些意见与这项调查没有直接联系。他跑题了。

4. emerge *v.* 出现

[教材原文] It is no wonder that many, if not most, of China's leading scholars and scientists **emerged** at Lianda, including the two Nobel Prize-winning physicists, Yang Zhenning and Li Zhengdao.

难怪即使不是大多数,也有许多中国顶尖的学者和科学家都是联大出身,包括两位诺贝尔物理学奖得主——杨振宁和李政道。

[归纳拓展]

emerge from 从……中出现或显露

emerge out of 从……出现,显露

emerge as 作为……出现

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① Several facts started to emerge from my investigation.

② The musical forms emerged out of the American black experience.

③ The Pacific region has rapidly emerged as a leading force on the world stage.

5. 过去分词短语作状语

[教材原文] **Driven by a sense of commitment**, a great many joined the army to resist the Japanese invaders and defend the honour of the nation.

在责任感的驱使下,许多人参军抵抗日本侵略者,保卫国家的荣誉。

[归纳拓展]

过去分词(短语)作状语,可以表示时间、方式、让步、条件、原因、目的等,过去分词往往表示一个被动完成了的动作,和句子主语之间存在着被动关系。现在分词(短语)作状语,往往表示一个正在进行着的或和谓语动词同时发生的动作,和句子主语之间是主动关系。有时为了使分词表示的意义更明确,可在分词前加上一定的连词,如 when, while, if, unless 等。

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

- ① Seen (see) from the pagoda, the south foot of the Purple Mountain is a sea of trees.
② He hurried to the hall, followed (follow) by two guards.
③ Dressed (dress) in white, she suddenly appeared.
④ He walked down the hill, singing (sing) softly to himself.
⑤ Having been trained (train) for three months, now she can handle many problems by herself.

多义词汇专练

1. rough: A. *adj.* 艰难的 B. *adj.* 高低不平的 C. *adj.* 粗鲁的 D. *adj.* 做工粗糙的

E. *adj.* 汹涌的

① He said I was like a **rough** diamond and I needed polishing.

② They journeyed for several weeks over **rough** roads.

③ His **rough** manners annoyed everybody.

④ The sea was **rough** and dangerous, and the ship went up and down.

⑤ Friends are the best to turn to when you're having a **rough** day.

2. ... if they went for the circle, they would be rewarded with the **sum** of the numbers—17 in this example.

A. *n.* 金额,款项

B. *n.* 总数

C. *n.* 算术

D
B
C
E
A
B

写作探究

战争英雄人物简介

「写作指导」

(一)文体指导

战争英雄人物简介属于记叙文的范畴,它以写人、记事为主,以叙述和描写为主要表达方式。一篇好的人物简介一般可分为三大部分,即生平介绍、事迹叙述和简短的评论。时态的选择要视情况而定,若写人物的过去就用过去时态,若写人物的现在就用现在时态。

(二)基本框架

1. 首段:生平介绍

人物的出生时间和地点是必不可少的信息;介绍生平时要尊重客观事实,材料要真实。

2. 中段:事迹叙述

选材要着眼于人物的生活背景及其成就事迹,以形成对比,起到突出人物的特点和树立榜样的作用。选材要有重点,不必面面俱到。

3. 尾段:简短的评论

对所描述的人物的评论要客观公正。

「典题示例」

假设你是李华,你的好友约翰来信说被董存瑞的英雄事迹深深感动,请根据下面表格提供的信息用英语给他写封回信,详细介绍一下董存瑞。

| 英雄人物 | 董存瑞 |
|------|---|
| 人物简介 | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 1929 年生于河北省张家口市怀来县;• 1945 年参加八路军;• 1947 年加入中国共产党;• 1948 年 5 月 25 日,在解放隆化县的战斗中英勇牺牲,当时未满 19 岁。 |
| 主要荣誉 | 被授予“战斗英雄”和“模范共产党员”称号。 |

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

Step 1: 审题谋篇

| | |
|----|--|
| 文体 | 记叙文 |
| 时态 | 以一般过去时为主 |
| 人称 | 以第三人称为主 |
| 要点 | 1. 说明写信原因 2. 人物生平简介、主要事迹及所获得的主要荣誉 3. 祝福语 |

Step 2: 要点补全

- ①Dong Cunrui was born (出生) in Huailai County, Hebei Province, in 1929.
- ②He joined the Eighth Route Army (加入八路军) in 1945.
- ③Because of his mastery of (由于他精通) military skills, intelligence and bravery in the battlefield, he won “Combat Hero” and “Model Communist”.
- ④Dong Cunrui sacrificed his life (牺牲了他的生命).
- ⑤He opened a way for (为……打开通路) the troops.

Step 3: 句式升级

- ①用分词作状语连接 Step 2 中的①②两句。
Born in Huailai County, Hebei Province, in 1929,
Dong Cunrui joined the Eighth Route Army in 1945.
- ②用分词作状语连接 Step 2 中的④⑤两句。
Sacrificing his life, Dong Cunrui opened a way for
the troops.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Dear John,

I'm glad to receive your letter! I'm writing this letter to introduce something about Dong Cunrui to you.

Born in Huailai County, Hebei Province, in 1929,
Dong Cunrui joined the Eighth Route Army in 1945.
Dong joined the Communist Party of China in 1947.
Because of his mastery of military skills, intelligence and bravery in the battlefield, he won “Combat Hero” and “Model Communist”.

On May 25, 1948, he died in the battle of assaulting Longhua County. Sacrificing his life,
Dong Cunrui opened a way for the troops. As a result, Dong Cunrui is regarded as the national

combat hero.

Best regards!

Yours,
Li Hua

「学以致用」

邱少云为了整个战斗的胜利,严格遵守纪律,在烈火中壮烈牺牲。假设你是李华,你的好友 Kate 来信说想进一步了解这位战斗英雄。请用英语写一封回信,向她详细介绍一下邱少云。

- 注意:1. 词数 80 左右;
2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Kate,

In your last letter, you said you wanted to know more about Qiu Shaoyun. I hope this letter can help you. _____

Looking forward to receiving your letter!

Yours,
Li Hua

【参考范文】

Dear Kate,

In your last letter, you said you wanted to know more about Qiu Shaoyun. I hope this letter can help you.

Qiu Shaoyun was born in 1926 in a rural village in Tongliang District, Chongqing City. He joined the People's Liberation Army in 1949.

In early 1951, Qiu joined the Chinese People's Volunteer Army, taking part in the Korean War. In October 1952, Qiu died a martyr's death. In the struggle for Hill 391, Qiu and his unit crawled closer to the enemy position, using hay and twigs as natural camouflage. The enemy used incendiary bombs dropped by airplanes to try to smoke out the Chinese units. Trapped in the ensuing brush fire and in order not to expose the other Chinese soldiers taking part in the assault, he did not move and was burned to death.

Looking forward to receiving your letter!

Yours,
Li Hua

课后素养评价(十五)

I. 单句语法填空

1. It has been found that breakfast is generally associated with better behaviour and better academic (academy) performance.
2. Dodgeball (躲避球) has emerged (emerge) as a popular middle school, high school and college sport as well.
3. The death of the doctor is relevant to the terrible accident happening last night.
4. We have spent large sums (sum) of money on treating the disease.
5. The whole village was bombed (bomb) during the conflict, resulting in many deaths.
6. The troop led by the commander broke through the enemy's lines and bombed their castle.
7. Each class should elect ten representatives (represent) to take part in the voluntary activity.
8. To be good at the game, you need a reasonable level of intelligence (intellectual).
9. The participants are asked to write down all the ideas associated (associate) with candles.
10. Organised (organise) well, the social activity turned out to be very successful.

II. 完成句子

1. As it was getting late, I turned around to start for home.
天色渐晚,于是我掉头回家。
2. It was a pity that you couldn't come.
你不能来,真是遗憾。
3. I'd like to get it settled today while he prefers to put it off.
我想今天把它解决掉,但他更愿意推迟。
4. Afraid of being caught, the thief hid himself under a bed.
小偷害怕被抓住,躲在了床下。
5. On no condition can you leave the baby alone in the room.
在任何情况下你都不能把婴儿单独留在房间里。

III. 语法填空

You may have heard of the Red Cross. It is an 1. organisation (organise) that helps people who are in need no matter 2. how bad the situation is! But if

not for the passion of a young woman named Clara Barton, the American Red Cross may have never been formed!

One day when she was 11 years old, her elder brother was 3. terribly (terrible) injured. He was ill for two years. Clara cared for him 4. the whole time. Through this experience she found out that she came alive when she cared for others.

Soon, Clara began taking care of injured animals. Neighbours began bringing their pets to her. And, almost always, she made them better.

When she was older, she became a nurse in the American Civil War and she helped save hundreds of 5. soldiers (soldier).

After the Civil War, Clara travelled to Europe to rest. 6. But that did not last long. Soon she was caring for 7. wounded (wound) people in battle once again! But this time, she learned about the Red Cross who worked alongside her on the battlefield. Their mission was to help those who needed it most.

She decided that the Red Cross 8. was needed (need) in America. Over several years, she asked 4 different presidents 9. to bring (bring) the Red Cross to America. They all said no. But then, thanks 10. to her persistence (坚持), one of the presidents changed his mind! And the American Red Cross was born.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

你校英语节组织了“你最喜爱的卡通电影人物”英语征文评选。假定你最喜欢的人物是花木兰,请你根据以下提示写一篇英语短文参加评选:

1. 简述木兰代父从军的故事;
2. 你喜欢这一人物的理由。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

I choose Mulan as my favourite cartoon movie character.

Living in ancient times, Mulan was a young girl who decided to join the army as a way to help her family. Because her brother was too young to enlist,

she made sacrifices in order to stop the forced recruitment of her father.

I really love this character because she is both brave and caring. She fights with courage and determination and she makes a great contribution to the country. She is also a wonderful role model, showing that women need not feel limited when it comes to what they can achieve.

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

The Real Champion

I like running and for me, success was winning every race I participated in. My classmates called me Incredible Dash. One day, there was a sporting event planned in my school. Well-prepared for the running competition, I took part in almost every race there was. A large number of people gathered to watch. Crowds were eager to see the running race because it was the most exciting event. When the race for 400m started, all the boys ran fast. Unsurprisingly, I finished first in the race and received a big round of applause. While it was tiring, I felt proud and was on top of my world.

In the race for 200m, I ran full speed and finished the race first once again. The crowd gave thundering claps to me. I jumped all over the ground and was not bothered to give handshakes to my fellow racers.

Then came the race for 100m. Discouraged by the previous races, most boys quit the race except one, a boy named Matt who was invited as an honorary runner. Matt was born with low vision but he was a determined participant of many sports. The

judge came to Matt and explained the situation, asking whether he would like to quit too. I, wild with joy, thought I would win the champion without effort. However, to everyone's surprise, Matt decided to complete the event. I sniffed (不以为然地说), "It is a waste of time. I bet he even doesn't figure out where the finish line is."

The race of two started. On hearing the starting gun, both Matt and I ran to the finish line. Soon I sped up and left Matt behind. Just 30 metres before arriving at the finish line, I was expecting to receive the applause for the third time when I suffered a leg spasm (痉挛).

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

I fell hard to the ground. At this moment I felt sad and ashamed that I couldn't finish the race. I lay on the ground, unwilling to face the fact and the crowds. I imagined the sneering faces and didn't know how to react. Suddenly a hand reached out to me. I raised my head and found it was Matt. "Let's run together," he said. There was just sincerity on his face, no mock. I believed I should trust him, and gave him my hand.

Arm by arm, we walked towards the finish line. The crowds fell into silence, and then broke into loud applause. What did they applaud for? I think I know. Bowing to Matt, I thanked Matt for his help and admitted he was the champion. "No, I participate in the race not for the champion, just for the participation. You are very excellent," he said. I was surprised at first, and then realised that the one who showed full engagement and good faith deserved the real champion.

读后续写技能养成

如何写好衔接句

「技能概述」

1. 写好衔接句:指把续写给文已给出的第一段的尾句写好,使该句在意义和情节发展上与所给的第二段首句衔接吻合。
2. 续写技巧:一是要与续写给文第二段首句融洽一致;二是要在人物的情感和事件的时空上与第二段首句衔接吻合。

「范例体悟」

(2022·新高考I卷续写)

(第一段) We sat down next to each other, but David wouldn't look at me. ... Without hesitation, he wiped away the tears and **struggled to his feet to embrace the challenge.** (尾句)

(第二段)(首句) *I watched as David moved up to the starting line with the other runners.*

写出文中两段是如何衔接过渡的:

第二段首句的大意是“大卫走到起跑线上”,第一段开头提到大卫和作者坐在一起。可知这两段在时空上不同。故第一段尾句一定是由“坐在一起”向“走到起跑线”过渡。

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. ashamed *adj.* 惭愧的
2. cooperate *v.* 合作
3. whisper *v.* 小声说
4. support *v.* 支持
5. admit *v.* 承认, 接纳
6. keep calm 保持镇静
7. think of 想到
8. put... into... 把……放进……
9. pour... into... 把……倒进……
10. pull out 拉出来
11. gather oneself 让自己振作起来
12. struggle to one's feet 挣扎着站起来

II. 佳句背诵

1. (2021·新高考I卷续写)

(第一段) *As the twins looked around them in disappointment, their father appeared. ... “Now, you may carry the breakfast upstairs,” said the father.*

“现在,你们可以把早餐端上楼了,”父亲说。

(第二段)(首句) *The twins carried the breakfast upstairs and woke their mother up.*

2. (2022·浙江1月卷续写)

(第一段) *We started to meet regularly to draw up our plans. ... It seemed that we had gone from strangers to comrades in arms.*

我们似乎从陌生人变成了同胞。

(第二段)(首句) *One day I got word that he was*

admitted to hospital for a serious disease.

3. (2021·浙江6月卷续写)

(第一段) *The pay arrived at last. ... I saw my father's hard-working figure and thought of his words “A job's a big step to growing up”.*

我看到父亲勤劳的身影,想起了他的话“有工作是成长的一大步”。

(第二段)(首句) *I understood immediately what my parents were worried about.*

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. (第一段) *Then I noticed Jack signalled to the referee for a pause. ... So ashamed was Bryce that he promised to keep calm and cooperate.*

布莱斯感到非常羞愧,他答应保持冷静并合作。

(第二段)(首句) *Whistle blew again and we came back to the court.*

2. (第一段) *We sat with Leourn at the freshmen girls' table. ... In the end, she looked up at me with beautiful eyes and in a low whisper said, “Thank you.”.*

最后,她抬起头,用一双美丽的眼睛看着我,低声说:“谢谢你。”

(第二段)(首句) *From then on, Leourn began to change.*

II. 用段落衔接技巧写出两段之间的衔接句

(第一段) *Needless to say that on my way home that day I was very sad and upset. Still processing what had happened, I didn't even remember to look for my spare change and keep it ready like I usually did. ... I'd hoped to catch the green light, but I missed it.*

(第二段)(首句) *While I was waiting for the red light to turn, he strolled over to my car. With a big smile, he looked me straight in the eyes and said, “Today I'll give you a dollar.”*

Unit 4 A glimpse of the future

| | |
|--------|---|
| 必背单词 | artificial, assistant, victim, potentially, capacity, analyse, illegal, immoral, client, cite, assess, cell, bound, cycle, demand, mechanical, tightly, desperate, clue, faulty, consistent |
| 重点表达 | hang out, happen to, so far, in contrast, wipe out, lie in, agree on, go through, difference between... and..., be susceptible to, change one's mind |
| 重点知识 | 1. while 引导让步状语从句 2. 条件状语从句的省略 3. though 引导让步状语从句时的倒装 |
| 单元语法 | 主谓一致(2) |
| 单元写作 | 续写故事 |
| 主题美文赏读 | <p>In the future, man's life will be very different from that of today. First, with the development of medicine, on the average, a person will live to the age of about 120. Second, because of the discovery of new energy, the environmental pollution will be under control. Third, people's daily life will change greatly, too. For example, robots will do all your housework for you; your chair will change its colour to match what you're wearing; you can also put your mobile phone around your wrist and can see the caller while speaking; you even can take a new elevator into space for your holidays.</p> <p>在未来,人类的生活将与今天大不相同。第一,随着医学的发展,平均而言,一个人将活到120岁左右。第二,由于新能源的发现,环境污染将得到控制。第三,人们的日常生活也会发生很大的变化。例如,机器人会为你做所有的家务;你的椅子会根据你的穿着改变颜色;你还可以把手机戴在手腕上,在通话时看到打电话的人;你甚至可以乘坐新电梯去太空度假。</p> |

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

- 1. humanity *n.* 人类
- 2. assistant *n.* 助手,助理
- 3. potentially *adv.* 潜在地
- 4. analyse *v.* 分析
- 5. illegal *adj.* 非法的,违法的
- 6. immoral *adj.* 不道德的,道德败坏的
- 7. artificial *adj.* 人造的,人工的
- 8. victim *n.* 受害者
- 9. capacity *n.* 能力,才能
- 10. happen to 发生在……身上
- 11. so far 迄今为止
- 12. in contrast 与此相反;相比之下
- 13. speaking of 说到;谈到;至于……
- 14. on the whole 总体而言
- 15. lie in 在于
- 16. be concerned about 担心

- 17. be capable of 能够
- 18. after all 毕竟;到底;终究
- 19. in the same way 以同样的方式
- 20. in the way of 妨碍;阻碍
- 21. agree on 同意
- 22. go wrong 出错;发生故障
- 23. at risk 处于危险中

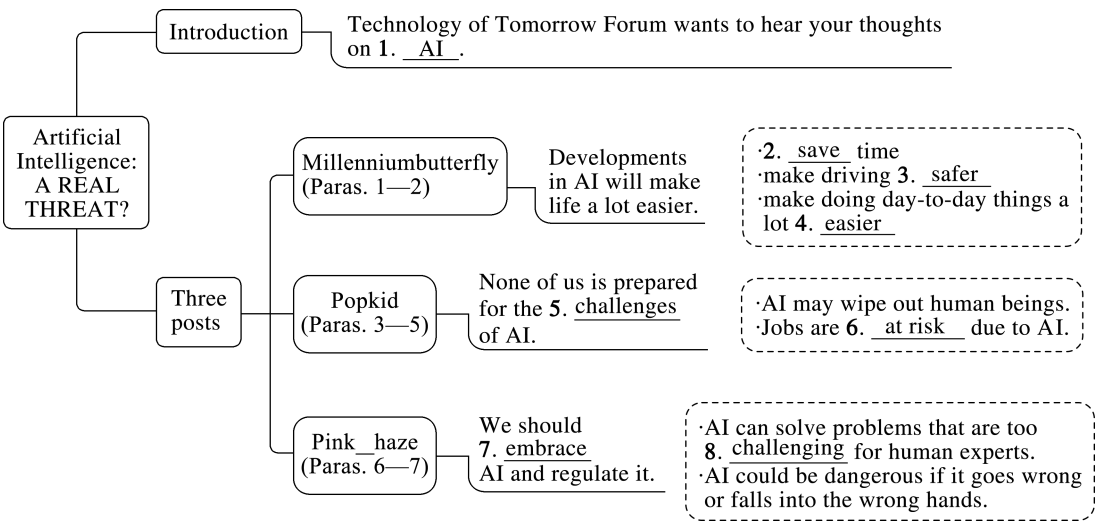
(二)阅读词汇

- 1. automation *n.* 自动化
- 2. regulate *v.* 控制,管理
- 3. susceptible *adj.* 易受影响的
- 4. leap *n.* 剧变
- 5. hang out 闲逛
- 6. in the long run 从长远来看
- 7. wipe out 扫清;消灭;彻底摧毁
- 8. artificial intelligence 人工智能
- 9. be susceptible to 易受……影响

多维化析文

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



▶ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What can we conclude from the first two paragraphs?
A. Millenniumbutterfly is a boss or a manager.
B. Millenniumbutterfly cannot drive cars now.
C. Millenniumbutterfly is skeptical of AI.
D. Millenniumbutterfly isn't waiting for the appearance of self-driving cars.

答案:B

- Which of the following is RIGHT according to Popkid?
A. AI cannot think independently without programming.
B. AI can help us solve all the problems.
C. Humans can't be regarded as enemies by AI.
D. AI will bring about more jobs to people.

答案:A

- What does "it" refer to in the sentence "If not, it might wipe us all out!" in Paragraph 3?
A. A less advanced form of AI.
B. Humans' thoughts.
C. AI.
D. The use of AI.

答案:C

- What can we conclude according to Paragraph 4?
A. AI can't bring threat to us in the short run.
B. Journalists can't be replaced by AI.
C. The other parts of the world can't be influenced by AI except the US.
D. AI will cause people to be out of work.

答案:D

▶ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

Thanks to AI, I've got my own super-smart personal assistant **1. built** (build) into my phone so that I can get the answers **2. to** the questions I put to her. Moreover she can give **3. recommendations** (recommend) to me. Since I haven't got my driving licence, self-driving cars can help me, **4. which**

drive in the same way that we do and make judgements based **5. on** information, making it a lot safer. To Popkid, although a more advanced form of AI could help us solve many of the world's problems, it can cause risks, **6. including** (include) losing jobs for many people. As it is, almost 50 per cent of US jobs are at risk from **7. automation** (automatic) in the next 20 years. Pink_haze thinks most of the value of AI lies in its capacity to analyse and interpret vast amounts of data, but **8. if** it goes wrong or falls into the wrong hands, it could be the most **9. dangerous** (danger). So we have no choice but **10. to embrace** (embrace) it and regulate it.

Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- Every recommendation she gives me is great since she can predict if I will like a particular restaurant.

[句子分析]句中 she gives me 为省略关系代词 that 或 which 的定语从句,修饰先行词 recommendation; since she can predict if I will like a particular restaurant 为 since 引导的原因状语从句,其中 if 引导宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]因为她能预测我是否会喜欢某家餐馆,所以她给我的每一个建议都很棒。

- Millenniumbutterfly, you say how great it would be to have self-driving cars, but what about all the taxi drivers who would lose their jobs?

[句子分析]句中 but 连接表示转折关系的并列句。第一个分句中 how great it would be to have self-driving cars 为 how 引导的宾语从句;第二个分句中 who would lose their jobs 为关系代词 who 引导的定语从句,修饰先行词 drivers。

[尝试翻译]千禧蝶,你说拥有自动驾驶汽车会很好,但是所有将失去工作的出租车司机怎么办?

▶ 思维品质培养

Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

- How should we deal with super-intelligent AI?
Embrace and regulate it.
- Do you use AI in your daily life? What other roles can AI play in people's lives?

略

课后素养评价(十六)

I. 阅读理解

A new wave of startups are using deep learning to build synthetic (合成的) voice actors for digital assistants, video-game characters, and corporate videos. Each one is based on a real voice actor, whose likeness has been preserved using AI. Companies can now license these voices to say whatever they need. They simply feed some text into the voice engine, and out will generate an audio clip of a natural-sounding performance.

Not too long ago, such deepfake voices had something of a bad reputation for their use in Internet trickery. But their improving quality has since aroused the interest of a growing number of companies. Recent breakthroughs in deep learning have made it possible to replicate (仿制) many of the subtleties (细微差别) of human speech. These voices pause and breathe in all the right places. They can change their style or emotion. AI voices are also cheap and easy to work with. Unlike a recording of a human voice actor, synthetic voices can update their script (剧本) in real time. Some AI firms can now handle the voices for adapting ads depending on who is listening, changing not just the accent of the voice but also the words being spoken.

But there are limitations to how far AI can go. It's still difficult to maintain the realism of a voice over long stretches of time that might be required for an audio book. And there's little ability to control an AI voice's performance in the same way a director can guide a human performer. Expressive, creative and long-form projects are still best done by humans.

According to Rupal Patel, a professor at

Northeastern University, the point of AI voices is ultimately not to replace existing audio work. The promise of AI voices is that they could open up entirely new possibilities.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了人工智能语音技术取得的进步及其不足。

1. What plays a key role in the improvement of synthetic voices?

- A. Licensing real voices.
- B. Breakthroughs in deep learning.
- C. Feeding texts into the voice engine.
- D. Preserving the likeness of a real voice.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Recent breakthroughs in deep learning have made it possible... Unlike a recording of a human voice actor, synthetic voices can update their script (剧本) in real time.”可知,深度学习的突破在改善合成语音中起着关键作用。故选 B。

2. Which can best describe AI voices?

- A. Cheap and limitless.
- B. Creative and irreplaceable.
- C. Portable and ready to update.
- D. Adaptable and easy to operate.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“‘They can change their style or emotion... but also the words being spoken.’”可推知,人工智能语音易修改,便于处理。故选 D。

3. In which of the following do AI voices perform best?

- A. A TV talk show.
- B. Audio navigation.
- C. *Harry Potter* audio books.
- D. A live football match broadcast.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“‘It's still

difficult to maintain the realism of a voice over long stretches of time that might be required for an audio book.”和“Expressive, creative and long-form projects are still best done by humans.”可推知,电视谈话节目、《哈利·波特》有声书和足球比赛实况转播之类富有表现力、创造性和长篇的项目仍不适合用人工智能语音,人工智能语音在语音导航方面表现最好。故选 B。

4. What is the best title for the text?
- A. AI Voices Sound More Human than Ever
B. AI Voices Will Soon Replace Human Voices
C. There Is Still a Long Way to Go for AI Voices
D. Advances in AI Voices Will Prevent Internet Trickery
- C 标题归纳题。通读全文,结合第二段中的“Recent breakthroughs in deep learning have made it possible to replicate (仿制) many of the subtleties (细微差别) of human speech.”,第三段中的“But there are limitations to how far AI can go.”和最后一段的内容可知,文章介绍了人工智能语音技术取得的进步,但同时也指出其不足,表明人工智能语音还不能代替人类做的一些音频工作。由此推知,“There Is Still a Long Way to Go for AI Voices”是最佳标题。故选 C。

II. 七选五

How to Think like a Wise Person

Wisdom is the ability to make sound judgments and choices. 1 So, what does it take to distinguish wise people from the rest of the pack? Here are several insights. 2

The people with the highest wisdom scores are just as likely to be 30 as 60. It indicates that the number of life experiences has little to do with the quality of those experiences. Wisdom emerges not from experience itself, but rather from reflecting thoughtfully on the lessons gained from experience.

Developing wisdom is a deliberate choice that people can make regardless of age.

Balance self-interest and the common good

One quality of wisdom is the ability to look beyond personal desires. This doesn't mean wise people are self-sacrificing. In fact, well-being and success both suffer if we're too focused on others or on ourselves. Wise people reject the assumption that the world is a win-lose, zero-sum place. 3

Aim to understand, rather than judge

More often than not, many of us judge others' actions so that we can sort them into categories of good and bad. 4 Over time, this emphasis on understanding rather than evaluating brings an advantage in predicting others' actions, enabling wise people to make better decisions.

Focus on purpose over pleasure

It turns out that wise people don't experience more positive emotions, perhaps because wisdom requires critical self-reflection and a long-term view. 5 From time to time, what makes us happy will weigh less than our quest for meaning and significance.

- A. Choose your wisdom deliberately.
B. It's a virtue desired by nearly everyone.
C. Start developing your wisdom right now.
D. It seems like an extremely tough problem.
E. They find ways to benefit others that also advance their own objectives.
F. However, there's a clear psychological benefit: a stronger sense of purpose in life.
G. Wise people resist this, operating more like detectives to explain others' behaviours.

答案:1~5 BCEGF

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The rich man felt sympathy for the **victims** in the earthquake and gave away a lot of money to them. 受害者
2. Every coin has two sides, and **artificial** intelligence is no exception. 人工的
3. Young people are the most **susceptible** to advertisements. 易受影响的
4. The result has been a giant **leap** in productivity. 剧变

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--|--|
| <u>assistant</u> <i>n.</i> 助手, 助理 | <u>assistance</u> <i>n.</i> 帮助 <u>assist</u> <i>v.</i> 帮助 |
| <u>automation</u> <i>n.</i> 自动化 | <u>automatic</u> <i>adj.</i> 自动的 <u>automatically</u> <i>adv.</i> 自动地; 无意识地 <u>automate</u> <i>v.</i> 使自动化 |
| <u>analyse</u> <i>v.</i> 分析 | <u>analysis</u> <i>n.</i> 分析 |
| <u>regulate</u> <i>v.</i> 控制, 管理 | <u>regulation</u> <i>n.</i> 规则 <u>regulator</u> <i>n.</i> 调节器 |
| <u>illegal</u> <i>adj.</i> 非法的, 违法的 | <u>legal</u> <i>adj.</i> 合法的 |
| <u>immoral</u> <i>adj.</i> 不道德的, 道德败坏的 | <u>moral</u> <i>adj.</i> 道德的 |
| <u>capacity</u> <i>n.</i> 能力, 才能 | <u>capable</u> <i>adj.</i> 有能力的; 有技能的; 能干的, 能力强的 |

III. 补全短语

1. happen to 发生在……身上
2. so far 迄今为止
3. in contrast 与此相反; 相比之下
4. be susceptible to 易受……影响
5. hang out 闲逛

6. in the long run 从长远来看
7. speaking of 说到; 谈到; 至于……
8. on the whole 总体而言
9. wipe out 扫清; 消灭; 彻底摧毁
10. lie in 在于
11. go away 消失; 走开; 离开
12. be capable of 能够
13. be consistent with 与……一致

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: get + 宾语 + 宾语补足语
Thanks to AI, I've got my own super-smart personal assistant built into my phone.
多亏了人工智能, 我才可以在我的手机中内置我自己的超级智能私人助手。
2. 句型公式: since 引导原因状语从句
Every recommendation she gives me is great since she can predict if I will like a particular restaurant.
因为她能预测我是否会喜欢某家餐馆, 所以她给我的每一个建议都很棒。
3. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作状语
Self-driving cars can learn to drive in the same way that we do, and can make judgements based on information.
自动驾驶汽车可以学习与我们相同的驾驶模式, 并且可以根据信息做出判断。
4. 句型公式: while 引导让步状语从句
But while super-intelligent AI could be the biggest leap forward in human history, if it goes wrong or falls into the wrong hands, it could also be the most dangerous.
但是, 尽管超智能 AI 可能是人类历史上最大的飞跃, 但如果出错或者落入坏人手中, 也可能是最危险的。

任务型课堂

1. **assistant** *n.* 助手, 助理
[教材原文] Thanks to AI, I've got my own super-smart personal **assistant** built into my phone.

多亏了人工智能, 我才可以在我的手机中内置我自己的超级智能私人助手。

[归纳拓展]

(1) an assistant to... ……的助手

(2) assist *v.* 帮助, 协助

assist sb. with sth. 在某方面帮助某人

assist sb. in doing... 帮助某人做……

(3) assistance *n.* 帮助, 协助, 援助

with the assistance of... 在……的帮助下

come/go to one's assistance 来/去帮助某人

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Mr Smith had begun his political career as an assistant to Mr White.② The doctor shares his phone number with the patients in case they need medical assistance (assist).③ One of her fellow passengers came to her assistance.

(2) 一句多译

我帮助我的儿子做他的家庭作业。

① I assisted my son with his homework.

② I assisted my son in doing his homework.

2. capacity *n.* 能力, 才能[教材原文] I believe most of the value of AI lies in its **capacity** to analyse and interpret vast amounts of data...

我认为人工智能的大部分价值在于它分析和解析大量数据的能力……

[归纳拓展]

(1) have the capacity to do/for doing sth. 有做某事的能力

(2) capable *adj.* 有能力的, 有才干的

be capable of doing... 能做……

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① We love Mr Lin, our English teacher, very much because he is capable of making (make) the class interesting.② He has the capacity to do/for doing (do) the job well.

(2) 完成句子

They built a robot capable of understanding spoken commands.

他们制造了一个能懂口头指令的机器人。

3. while 引导让步状语从句

[教材原文] But **while** super-intelligent AI could be the biggest leap forward in human history, if it

goes wrong or falls into the wrong hands, it could also be the most dangerous.

但是, 尽管超智能 AI 可能是人类历史上最大的飞跃, 但如果它出错或者落入坏人手中, 也可能是最危险的。

[句式分析] 句中 while 是从属连词, 引导让步状语从句, 主句中含有 if 引导的条件状语从句。

[归纳拓展]

while 引导让步状语从句, 多用于句首, 意为“尽管, 虽然”。while 还有下列功能:

(1) 引导时间状语从句, 意为“当……的时候”。

(2) 用作并列连词, 意为“而, 却”。

[即学即练]

(1) 写出下列句中 while 的含义

① **While** she was in prison, she wrote her first novel. 当……的时候② **While** I understand what you say, I can't agree with you. 虽然, 尽管③ I went swimming **while** the others played tennis.而, 却

(2) 完成句子

① While he loves his students, he is very strict with them.

虽然他爱他的学生们, 但是他对他们很严格。

② He went out for a walk, while I stayed at home.

他出去散步了, 而我却待在家里。

4. 条件状语从句的省略

[教材原文] **If not**, it might wipe us all out!

如果不这样的话, 它可能会把我们都消灭!

[句式分析] 句中 If not 是 If we're not lucky 的省略形式, 表示否定意义。

[归纳拓展]

(1) 在时间状语从句和条件状语从句中, 如果从句主语与主句主语一致或从句主语为 it, 且谓语动词为 be 动词时, 则可以省去其主语和 be 动词。

(2) if 构成的省略形式:

if not 如果不这样的话, 不然(表示否定意义)

if so 如果这样的话(表示肯定意义)

if any 如果有的话

if ever 如果有过或发生过的话

if necessary/possible 如果有必要/可能

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Are you ready? If so, let's set off at once.② She wants to go with us, if possible.

(2)句型转换

① Wash it in water and pick out the small particles, if there are any.
→ Wash it in water and pick out the small particles, if any.

② I'll go if you are going. If you aren't going, I'd rather stay at home.
→ I'll go if you are going. If not, I'd rather stay at home.

• 多义词汇专练

1. leap: A. v. 跳 B. v. 突然做(某事) C. n. 剧增

- ① They **leapt** into action immediately. B
② A shark emerged when a dolphin **leapt** out of the water. A
③ This year saw a **leap** in profits. C

2. capacity: A. n. 能力, 才能 B. n. 容量, 容积 C. n. 职位, 职责

- ① Their reasoning **capacity** must be developed. A
② She worked here in the **capacity** as nurse. C
③ The **capacity** of the freezer is 1.1 cubic feet. B

课后素养评价(十七)

I. 单词拼写

- Kalan called his assistant (助理), Hashim, to take over while he went out.
- She was one of the victims (受害者) of the car accident.
- He did not want his life to be much longer by artificial (人工的) means.
- The situation is unstable and potentially (潜在地) dangerous.
- Limited resources are restricting our capacity (能力) for developing new products.
- In analysing (分析) a situation, it's essential to distinguish the main aspect from the minor ones.
- Despite his illegal (非法的) act, few people think badly of him.
- She was questioned about his immoral (不道德的) conduct towards her.
- There are some strict rules regulating (控制) the use of chemicals in food.

II. 短语填空

be based on; be capable of; in the long run; on the whole; happen to; hang out; lie in; in contrast

- The household robot is more expensive but you will benefit in the long run.
- I neither knew nor cared what had happened to him.
- Just as the saying goes, "One tree doesn't make a

forest." Our success is based on cooperating with others.

- On the whole, travelling is the best choice to enrich our lives and get ready for the new challenges.
- The monitor is capable of organising various activities, for which we admire him.
- Such illegal actions usually lie in our daily life.
- We use AI potentially, but in contrast they think it is illegal to use AI.
- He'd be a great assistant to hang out with over a couple of beers.

III. 完成句子

- What about going hiking this weekend?
这周末去徒步旅行怎么样?
- More and more children get their life controlled by phones, which is worrying.
越来越多的孩子让手机控制了他们的生活, 这令人担忧。
- While he was unwilling, he had no choice but to walk home.
尽管他很不情愿, 但他别无选择, 只能走回家了。
- Since you haven't find a solution to the problem so far, perhaps we should turn to someone else for help.
既然到目前为止你还没有找到这个问题的解决方案, 那我们也许该向其他人求助了。

5. Once you agree on when to come to Beijing, do let us know ahead of time.

一旦你们达成了来北京的时间,一定要让我们提前知道。

IV. 完形填空

Mum-of-three Alli Smith 1 her heaviest weight of 125 kg after three difficult pregnancies caused her to rise to a size 20. She wasn't 2 with herself, and she wasn't living life to the fullest. She didn't want to go to events because she didn't have any clothes that would suit her.

Most of the time she was 3 herself with diets. However, snacking on nearly two blocks of 4 a night, the 27-year-old factory worker chewed doughnuts (甜甜圈), chips and biscuits throughout the day. Apart from that, she was 5 chocolate and was into it mainly for the taste.

She tried every diet under the sun and was spending all this money on all these 6 to just fail every time.

7 to change her ways, Alli saw her doctor, who recommended she conduct gastric (胃部的) sleeve surgery to prevent health complications (并发症) in the future 8 her size.

She soon 9 her nightly chocolate habit and has since dropped 35 kg in just seven months and 10 her sugar heavy diet for fresh fruits and salads.

Now, Alli also has more 11 to play with her children with Henry, four, Kate, two, and George, one. "I'm more energetic. I run around with my 12 and they're enjoying it," says Alli. She feels more 13 than ever in her new 90 kg frame, recently wearing shorts outside the house for the first time in six years. She delightedly says, "My son said to me, 'Mum, you look so pretty.' And now I wear what I want, not just what 14. I've finally 15 in losing weight and am on the road to where I want to be."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述的是 Alli Smith 尝试了世界上各种节食方法失败后,通过手术和改变自己的生活习惯,瘦了 35 千克。

1. A. remained B. reached
C. impressed D. enjoyed

B 根据下文“after three difficult pregnancies”可知,Alli 怀孕三次导致发胖,最胖体重达到了 125 千克。故选 B。

2. A. satisfied B. connected
C. careful D. angry

A 根据下文“and she wasn't living life to the fullest”可知,变胖的她对自己不满意。故选 A。

3. A. begging B. restricting
C. tolerating D. ignoring

B 根据上文“her heaviest weight of 125 kg”和“She didn't want to go to events because she didn't have any clothes that would suit her.”可知,发胖影响自己的生活,所以她限制自己的饮食。故选 B。

4. A. cake B. chip
C. biscuit D. chocolate

D 根据上文“snacking on nearly two blocks of”以及下面原词“chocolate”可知,此处指两块巧克力。故选 D。

5. A. addicted to B. tired of
C. worried about D. devoted to

A 根据下文“and was into it mainly for the taste”可知,她吃巧克力主要是为了它的味道,这是对巧克力上瘾。故选 A。

6. A. problems B. theories
C. programmes D. circumstances

C 根据上文“She tried every diet under the sun and was spending all this money on all these”可知,为了减肥,她花很多钱在节食的项目上。故选 C。

7. A. Cruel B. Incredible
C. Desperate D. Unwilling

C 根据下文“Alli saw her doctor”可知,她求助医生是因为渴望改变自己。故选 C。

8. A. contrary to B. regardless of
C. instead of D. due to

D 根据上文“her heaviest weight of 125 kg”和常识可知,因为超重会出现并发症,所以医生建议她进行胃袖状切除术。故选 D。

9. A. relied on B. gave up
C. responded to D. made up

B 根据下文“and has since dropped 35 kg in just seven months”可知,她放弃吃巧克力,体重下降。故选 B。

10. A. exchanged B. stuck
C. occupied D. ruined

A 根据下文“her sugar heavy diet for fresh fruits and salads”可知,她用新鲜水果和沙拉代替高糖饮食。故选 A。

11. A. life B. time
C. energy D. money
C 根据下文“to play with her children with Henry, four, Kate, two, and George, one. ‘I’m more energetic.’”可知,她减肥后有精力和孩子们玩。故选 C。
12. A. friends B. parents
C. sisters D. kids
D 根据上文“play with her children with Henry, four, Kate, two, and George, one”可知,这是她和孩子们玩。故选 D。
13. A. confident B. painful
C. lonely D. shameful
A 根据下文“than ever in her new 90 kg frame,

- recently wearing shorts outside the house for the first time in six years”可知,减重的 Alli 对自己感到更自信了。故选 A。
14. A. rises B. matters
C. fits D. exists
C 根据上文“And now I wear what I want”可知,减重后的 Alli 不用只穿合身的衣服了,可以想穿什么就穿什么。故选 C。
15. A. involved B. resulted
C. insisted D. succeeded
D 根据上文“‘She feels more 13 than ever in her new 90 kg frame”可知,Alli 减肥成功变得自信。故选 D。

Section III Using language

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The affair was settled to the complete satisfaction of the **client**. 客户
2. Our manager **reckons** the odds are against the plan going ahead. 认为,以为
3. Red blood **cells** are blood components that transport oxygen throughout the body. 细胞
4. You’ve done so much work—you are **bound** to pass the exam. 可能的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <u>assess</u> v. 评价,评定 | assessment n. 评价 |
| <u>demand</u> n. 需要,需求 | demanding adj. 要求高的;苛刻的 |
| <u>cite</u> v. 引用,引述 | citation n. 引文,引句,引语 |
| <u>cycle</u> n. 自行车 v. 骑自行车 | cyclist n. 骑自行车的人 |

III. 补全短语

1. on the horizon 将要发生
2. around the corner 即将来临
3. at the speed of 以……的速度
4. be bound to 很有可能,肯定会
5. result in 引起,导致
6. ahead of 在……前面;先于
7. bank on 依靠,指望

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:when it comes to (doing) sth.
I think it’s also fair to say that we can get our hopes up when it comes to finding cures for serious diseases, such as cancer.
我认为,公平地说,当谈到寻找癌症等严重疾病的治疗方法时,我们可以燃起自己的希望。
2. 句型公式:主谓一致
A large number of clients have been attracted to it.
它吸引了大量的客户。
3. 句型公式:主谓一致
Each of the children is given a report showing their possible talents.
为每个孩子提供一份展示他们潜在才能的报告。

任务型课堂

1. bound *adj.* 可能的;有义务的;受约束的;准备前往(某地)

[教材原文] Some of these ideas may sound far ahead of their time, but I'm sure they're **bound** to happen sooner or later!

其中一些想法可能听起来很超前,但我相信它们迟早会发生!

[归纳拓展]

be bound to 很有可能,肯定会

be bound to do sth. 有义务做某事

be bound from... to... 从……开往……

be bound for 准备前往……

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① That ship is bound for South America.

② The train is bound from Shanghai to Nanjing.

(2) 完成句子

You are bound to feel tired after a long walk.

长时间步行后你必然会感到疲劳。

2. demand *n.* 需要,需求 *v.* 需要,要求

[教材原文] ... with companies intending to provide on-demand services.

……公司打算提供按需服务。

[归纳拓展]

(1) demand to do sth. 要求做某事

demand that... 要求……(从句中的谓语动词用“should+动词原形”,should可省略)

(2) meet/satisfy one's demands 满足某人的要求
on demand 一经要求

in demand (某物)很受欢迎

(3) demanding *adj.* 要求高的;苛刻的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The strikers demanded to see (see) the manager.

② My demand is that the information referred to in my report (should) be emailed (email) to Mr Brown without delay.

③ He found he could no longer cope with his demanding (demand) job.

④ It is impossible to satisfy all your demands (demand).

(2) 一句多译

他要求别人将一切都告诉他。

① He demands that he (should) be told everything.

② He demands to be told everything.

多义词汇专练

She wants to travel to broaden her **horizons**.

A. *n.* 眼界 B. *n.* 领域 C. *n.* 地平线

A

语法探究

主谓一致(2)

「语法感知」

① ... almost 50 per cent of US jobs **are** at risk from automation in the next 20 years.

② ... 50 per cent of my time **was** spent researching new restaurants.

③ ... none of us **is** prepared for the challenges of AI.

④ The secretary and manager **was** present at the meeting.

⑤ The teacher as well as the students **likes** this painting.

⑥ Either the principal or his assistants **are** to attend the meeting.

⑦ To work hard **is** necessary.

⑧ Many a student **fails** to pass the examination.

⑨ There **is** a sausage, an orange and a piece of cheese on the table.

⑩ Every recommendation she gives me **is** great since she can predict if I will like a particular restaurant.

1. 句①和②中“数词+of+名词”作主语时,谓语动词的单复数形式与 of 后的名词 的数保持一致。

- 由句③可知,“none of+复数名词或代词”作主语时,谓语动词用单数或复数均可,但在正式文体中则应用单数形式。
- 由句④可知,and 连接两个名词作主语,且名词只有一个冠词时,谓语动词用单数形式。
- 由句⑤可知,单数名词作主语,后面跟 as well as, rather than, but, except, along with, including 等时,谓语动词用单数形式。
- 由句⑥可知,either... or...连接两个词作主语时,谓语动词的单复数形式采取就近原则。
- 由句⑦可知,不定式作主语时,谓语动词用 单数形式。
- 由句⑧可知,“many a+单数名词”作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。
- 由句⑨可知,there be 句型中 be 的单复数形式采取就近原则。
- 由句⑩可知,“every+可数名词单数”作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。

「语法精讲」

- 由 and 连接的并列单数主语前如果分别有 no, each, every, more than a(n), many a(n) 修饰时,其谓语动词要用单数形式。
Every man, woman, and child **needs** love.
每个男人、女人和孩子都需要爱。
No teacher and no student **is** admitted.
师生一律不得入内。
- 有些由 and 连接起来的单数名词,由于关系密切,已被看成一个整体,因而作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。
Fish and chips **is** a popular fast food in England.
炸鱼薯条在英国是很受欢迎的快餐。
- 主语后面跟有 with, together with, except, but, like, as well as, rather than, more than, no less than, besides, including 等引起的短语时,谓语动词的单复数形式与最前面的主语保持一致。
The factory with all its equipment **has been burnt**.
这家工厂及其所有设备都被烧毁了。
The teacher, as well as the parents, **is** to blame for the accident.
老师和家长都应该为这次事故负责。
- 由 any, some, no, every 与 body, one, thing 构成的不定代词作主语或主语的一部分时,谓语动词用单数形式。
Let's establish the ground rules so that everybody **knows** what to expect.
我们得定一下基本规则,以便让每个人都知道要求如何。
- what, who, which, any, more, all 等代词可以是单数,也可以是复数,主要由句子的意思来决定。
Which **is** your favourite subject?
你最喜欢的科目是什么?
Which **are** your favourite subjects?
你最喜欢哪些科目?
- “定冠词 the+形容词或分词”表示某一类人时,谓语动词用复数形式。
The rich **get** richer and the poor **get** poorer.
富人越来越富,穷人越来越穷。
- 当两个主语由 or, either... or..., neither... nor..., whether... or..., not only... but also... 连接时,谓语动词的单复数形式和邻近的主语保持一致。
Either John or his friends **are** to blame for the bad results.
要么由约翰要么由他的朋友们为这次不好的结果负责。
- there be 句型中,be 动词的单复数形式取决于其后的主语,应与靠近的那个主语保持一致。(here 引导的句子用法相同)
There **is** a pen, a knife and several books on the desk.
书桌上有一支钢笔、一把刀和几本书。
There **are** twenty girls and only one boy in our class.
我们班有二十个女孩,只有一个男孩。
- “分数/百分数+of+名词”作主语时,谓语动词的单复数形式与 of 后的名词的数保持一致。
Two fifths of the land **is** covered with trees.
五分之二的地面上都栽上了树。
20 per cent of the workers in the factory **are** women.
这家工厂 20% 的工人是女性。
- 动词不定式短语、动名词短语、从句或其他短语作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。
To play basketball **is** good.
打篮球很好。
Whether she comes or not **is** of no matter.
她来不来都没有关系。

「语法冲关」

I. 用括号内所给动词的正确形式填空

1. No one except Jack and Tom knows (know) the answer.
2. Three-fifths of the money has been used (use) up so far.
3. The number of the people who own cars is increasing (increase) now.
4. More than one answer was given (give) to the question at the meeting.
5. Seventy per cent of the students in our school are (be) from the countryside.
6. The young are (be) mostly ambitious.
7. Tom as well as two of his friends was invited (invite) to the concert last night.

8. A poet and artist is coming (come) to speak to us about Chinese literature and paintings tomorrow afternoon.

II. 完成句子

1. Two thirds of the students are satisfied with the class.
三分之二的学生对这个班满意。
2. The poor were looked down upon in the old days.
从前穷人受歧视。
3. More than one pilot was killed in the air raid.
这次空袭中牺牲的飞行员不止一个。
4. The number of people present was much greater than we expected.
出场的人数之多大大出乎我们的意料。
5. An expert, together with some assistants, was sent to help in this work.
一位专家和几位助手被派去协助这项工作。

课后素养评价(十八)

I. 选词填空

assess; on the horizon; demand; ahead of; be bound to; result in; when it comes to; client; cite; cell

1. Who said that making a robot so much like a man was bound to cause trouble?
2. In America the demand for oil has grown by 22 percent since 1990.
3. That means you must be able to assess when people are not telling the whole truth and then try to discover it.
4. His efforts have resulted in 1,360 acres of naturally-grown land that has become home to many plants and animals.
5. There are new problems on the horizon, so we must take action as quickly as possible.
6. As is known to all, all living things are composed of cells.
7. We offer only the best food to our clients.
8. His works are more cited as an economist than any other economist in the world.
9. His ideas were so well ahead of his time that few people could understand it.
10. When it comes to what makes a good student, everyone may have an opinion.

II. 单句语法填空

1. None of the students is allowed (allow) to use phones in class.
2. Each of the participants needs (need) a pen and a notebook to attend the meeting.
3. Sooner or later those dishonest people will pay a price for their acts.
4. Occasionally there are direct buses from Taiyuan to Qikou, but do not bank on it.
5. The workers demanded that their working conditions be improved (improve).
6. Not only Tom but also his classmates are (be) working hard for the coming exam now.
7. Does neither he or his children eat the bread?
8. E-mail, as well as telephones, is (be) playing an important part in daily communication.

III. 阅读理解

A team of engineers has invented a new type of tiny, self-driven robots that can travel through liquid at incredible speeds and may one day even deliver drugs to hard-to-reach places like bladder (膀胱) inside the human body.

The new study shows this research is a big step forward for tiny robots. The microrobots are really small. Each one measures only 20 micrometres wide, several times smaller than the width of a human hair. They're also really fast, capable of travelling at speeds of about 3 millimetres per second, or roughly 9,000 times their own length per minute. The machines look a bit like small rockets and come complete with three tiny wings. The team makes its microrobots out of materials by using a technology similar to 3D printing. Each of the robots carries a small bubble (泡泡) of trapped air. If you expose the machines to sound, the bubbles will begin to shake wildly, pushing water away and shooting the robots forward.

"Imagine if microrobots could perform certain tasks in the body, such as surgeries without cutting into the body," said Jin Lee, lead author of the study, "we can simply introduce the robots to the body through a pill or an injection, and they would perform the procedure themselves. If that sounds like something copied from science fiction, that's because it is." He imagined that, just like in the movie, microrobots could move through a person's bloodstream, seeking out targeted areas. "Once there, the machines slowly released their medicine over the course of about two days. Such a steady flow of medicine could improve the outcome for patients," Lee added, "But there is a lot of work to do before microrobots can travel through real human bodies."

For a start, the group wants to make the machines fully biodegradable so that they would eventually disappear in the body, causing no damage at all. "If we can make them work in the bladder,"

Lee said, "maybe patients wouldn't have to come into the clinic as often."

【语篇解读】文章主要讲述了工程师发明了一种新型的微型自驱动机器人,可用于医疗。

1. What is an advantage of the invention?

- A. The small size.
- B. The rocket-like shape.
- C. The big bubble.
- D. The 3D-printed material.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段的内容可知,工程师发明了新型的微型机器人,这项发明的优势在于尺寸小,未来可将药物送到人体里。故选 A。

2. What can we infer from Lee's words about the robots in Paragraph 3?

- A. They cure bladder diseases.
- B. They help to give patients pills.
- C. They are inspired by science fiction.
- D. They have performed tasks in human bodies.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的 "If that sounds like something copied from science fiction, that's because it is." 可知,这个想法是受到科幻小说的启发。故选 C。

3. Which of the following can best replace the underlined word "biodegradable" in Paragraph 4?

- A. Efficient.
- B. Resolvable.
- C. Recyclable.
- D. Sensitive.

B 词义猜测题。根据第四段中的 "For a start, the group wants to make the machines fully biodegradable so that they would eventually disappear in the body, causing no damage at all." 可知,研究者希望这些机器能够消失在体内,画线词与 resolvable 最为接近,意为 "可分解的,可溶解的"。故选 B。

4. What is the purpose of the text?

- A. To introduce a healthcare robot.
- B. To advertise a medical machine.
- C. To arouse interest in developing robots.
- D. To raise concern about bladder diseases.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容以及下文的具体介绍可知,短文主要介绍了一款医疗机器人。故选 A。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

- 1. tightly *adv.* 紧紧地
- 2. desperate *adj.* 拼命的, 绝望的
- 3. faulty *adj.* 有故障的, 有缺陷的
- 4. consistent *adj.* 一贯的, 一致的
- 5. clue *n.* 线索, 提示
- 6. mechanical *adj.* 机械的
- 7. go through 经历; 检查; 浏览; 通过, 穿过; 遭受
- 8. as though/as if 好像
- 9. change one's mind 改变主意
- 10. difference between... and...与.....的不同
- 11. break down 发生故障; 分解
- 12. go wrong 出错, 出故障
- 13. set out 陈述, 阐明; 出发
- 14. in shock 震惊地; 吃惊地

15. come on 加油; 来吧

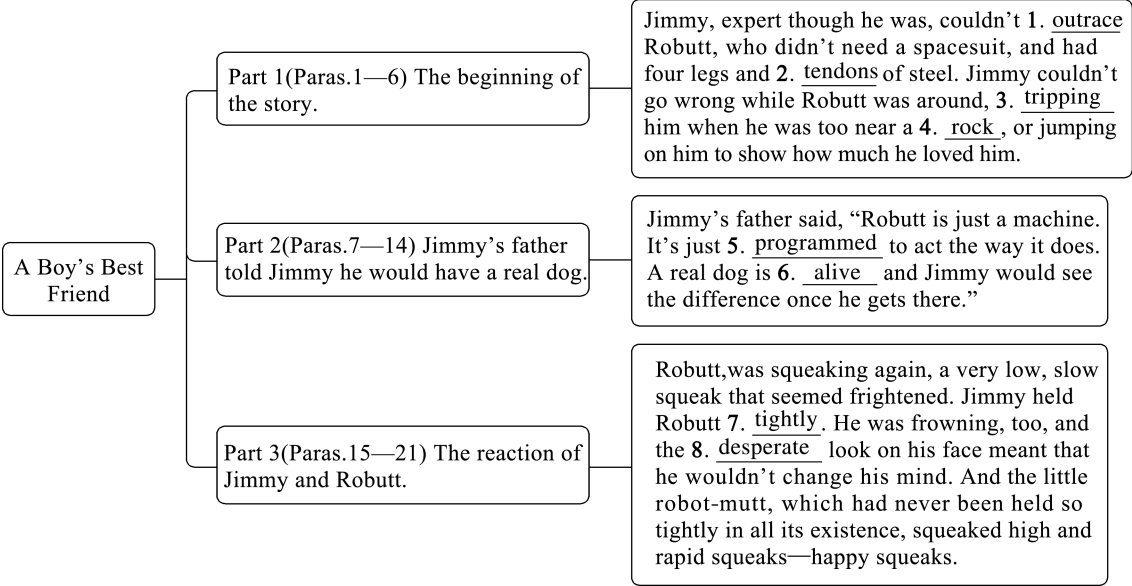
(二)阅读词汇

- 1. squeak *v.* 发出吱吱声
- 2. imitation *n.* 仿制品
- 3. mutt *n.* 杂种狗
- 4. positronic *adj.* 正电子的
- 5. crater *n.* (物体坠落、炸弹爆炸等在地上造成的)坑
- 6. agile *adj.* 敏捷的, 灵活的
- 7. slope *v.* 倾斜, 成斜坡
- 8. hop *n.* 跳跃
- 9. tendon *n.* 腱
- 10. wavelength *n.* 波长
- 11. frown *v.* 皱眉
- 12. start up 开动, 创立
- 13. all the time 一直, 始终; 经常, 老是

多维化析文

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- 1. Who wanted to know where Jimmy was?

A. Mr Anderson.
B. Mrs Anderson.
C. Robutt.

D. A Moon-born man.

答案:A

2. What can we see from the whole text?

A. Robutt is a whole dog.

B. Robutt is a toy which is a mechanical imitation.

C. Jimmy doesn't like Robutt at all.

D. Every child on the Moon has a Robutt.

答案:B

3. Why did Robutt run faster than Jimmy?

A. Because it could roll around.

B. Because it knew well about the race.

C. Because it didn't need a spacesuit.

D. Because it was born on the Moon.

答案:C

4. What was Robutt actually according to the passage?

A. A dog from Earth.

B. A man from Earth.

C. A robot like a human being.

D. A little robot dog.

答案:D

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

Jimmy is Moon-born and can't visit Earth. He has a dog **1. called** (call) Robutt. He has never seen a real dog. So Mr Anderson brought a real dog for him. Jimmy, expert though he was, couldn't outrace Robutt, who didn't need a spacesuit, and had four legs and **2. tendons** (tendon) of steel. Jimmy couldn't go wrong while Robutt was around, **3. tripping** (trip) him when he was too near a rock, or jumping on him to show **4. how** much he loved him. However, Jimmy's father, Mr Anderson told Jimmy a real dog would come to the family to replace Robutt. Jimmy didn't agree with his father. Jimmy looked at Robutt, **5. who** was squeaking again, a very low, slow squeak **6. that** seemed frightened. His father told Jimmy the dog would really love him and Robutt **7. acted** (act) as though it loved him. Jimmy held Robutt **8. tightly** (tight). He was frowning, too, and the desperate look on his face meant that he wouldn't change **9. his** (he)

mind. And the little robot-mutt, which had never been held so tightly in all its **10. existence** (exist), squeaked high and rapid squeaks—happy squeaks.

Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Jimmy, expert though he was, couldn't outrace Robutt, who didn't need a spacesuit, and had four legs and tendons of steel.

[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。though 引导让步状语从句,句子使用了部分倒装;who 引导非限制性定语从句,对 Robutt 进行补充说明。

[尝试翻译]吉米虽然很熟练,但他比不过罗布,罗布不需要宇航服,而且有四条腿和钢腱。

2. Jimmy couldn't go wrong while Robutt was around, tripping him when he was too near a rock, or jumping on him to show how much he loved him, or circling around and squeaking low and scared when Jimmy hid behind a rock, when all the time Robutt knew well enough where he was.

[句子分析]while 引导时间状语从句,而从句中又含有三个 when 引导的时间状语从句,以及 how much 引导的宾语从句;or 连接三个并列的现在分词短语作伴随状语。

[尝试翻译]当罗布在身边时,吉米就没有危险。当吉米太靠近一块石头时,它会扑倒他或者扑向他,以表示它有多爱他;或者当吉米躲在石头后面时,它会原地打转、低吼、战战兢兢。不论什么时候,罗布都对吉米的位置了如指掌。

思维品质培养

Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. What are the similarities and differences between Robutt and a real dog?

① Similarities: Both are able to respond to orders given by human beings and both can outrace, guide and protect human beings.

② Differences: They have different appearances. A real dog loves human beings as a result of its nature, while Robutt is just adjusted to act as though it loves human beings.

2. What other sci-fi novels about robots can you think of?

略

课后素养评价(十九)

I. 单词拼写

1. The boy lost in the desert felt desperate (绝望的) as he couldn't tell the right direction.
2. A reward of 2,000 dollars has been offered to whoever can find the clue(s) (线索) to the identity of the killer.
3. Everybody bought some clothes just because they were cheap, but they turned out to be faulty (有缺陷的).
4. The result of the second experiment was exactly consistent (一致的) with that of the first one.
5. The patient's husband was so thankful to the doctors that he held their hands tightly (紧紧地), tears in his eyes.
6. The doctor advised them to buy a mechanical (机械的) wheelchair for the old man.

II. 短语填空

make an effort to; come on; in shock; as though; go wrong; set out; at the beginning of; change one's mind; make comments on; start up; go through; break down

1. I'm still in shock after hearing that bad news.
2. The couple resolved their differences and made an effort to get along.
3. In his yesterday's report, he clearly set out his ideas on how to introduce artificial intelligence into our daily life.
4. I never went through a final exam that was as difficult as that one.
5. There is no chance that he will change his mind.
6. At one stage it looked as though they would win.
7. I went over to start up a conversation, asking her who she knew at the party.
8. This paper is intended to make comments on the advantages of accounting sample teaching.
9. We'll reach the sales targets in a month which we set at the beginning of the year.
10. Old-fashioned phones matter when wireless networks break down in disasters.
11. Come on, it's time we set out for Beijing to visit the Forbidden City.
12. Why do I always get the blame for everything that goes wrong?

III. 完成句子

1. Poor though/as the old man was, he donated much money to the homeless boy.
尽管这个老人贫穷,他还是捐了很多钱给那个无家可归的男孩。
2. The boy seemed to be listening to music while taking the English class.
这个男孩上英语课的时候好像在听音乐。
3. The actor won an award for his excellent performance. That was why he felt more confident about himself.
这位演员因其出色的表演而获奖。那就是他对自己更有信心的原因。
4. He talked as if he knew what had happened.
他说话的样子好像他知道发生了什么事情。
5. With you to help us, we'll surely succeed.
有你来帮我们,我们一定会成功。

IV. 七选五

The good news is that a research shows that the less junk food you eat, the less you crave (渴望得到) it. 1 As I've slowly begun to eat healthier, I've noticed myself wanting pizza and candy and ice cream less and less. Some people refer to this transition period as "gene reprogramming".

2 That is to say, if you can find ways to gradually eat healthier, you'll start to experience the cravings of junk food less and less. I've never claimed to have all the answers, but here are some strategies that might help.

First, you can use my "outer ring" strategy to avoid processed and packaged foods at the grocery store. If you limit yourself to purchasing foods that are on the outer ring of the store, then you will generally buy whole foods (fruit, vegetables, meat, eggs, etc.) 3 But you will avoid a lot of unhealthy foods.

You can also follow the "5-Ingredient rule" when buying foods at the store. If something has more than 5 ingredients in it, don't buy it. The chances are that it has been designed to fool you into eating more of it. 4 There's a reason why many people eat as a way to deal with stress. 5 These chemicals can trigger (触发) mechanisms that are similar to the cravings you get from fat and sugar. In

other words, when you get stressed, your brain feels the addictive call of fat and sugar and you're pulled back to junk food.

We all have stressful situations that arise in our lives. Learning to deal with stress in a different way can help you overcome the addictive pull of junk food. This could include simple breathing techniques or a short-guided meditation (冥想).

- A. My own experiences have mirrored this.
B. Not everything on the outer ring is healthy.

- C. Whatever you want to call it, the lesson is the same.
D. When buying these foods, you must make the right choice.
E. Avoid those products and stick with the more natural options.
F. Stress causes certain regions of the brain to release chemicals.
G. No matter what you talk about it, it is of quite great difference.

答案:1~5 ACBEF

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Her eyes searched her assistant's face as though looking for some **clues**. 线索
2. The depth of the **crater** is expected to be about 30 feet. 坑
3. She was quick-witted (机智的) and had an extraordinarily **agile** mind. 敏捷的
4. He looked up the **slope** of land that rose from the house. 斜坡
5. The pursuer cleared the fence in one **hop**. 跳跃
6. While playing badminton, I hurt my **tendon**. 腱
7. Sunlight consists of different **wavelengths** of radiation. 波长
8. If others smile at us, we cannot **frown** back. 皱眉

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <u>mechanical</u> <i>adj.</i> 机械的 | mechanic <i>n.</i> 技工; 修工 |
| <u>imitation</u> <i>n.</i> 仿制品 | imitate <i>v.</i> 仿效 |
| <u>tightly</u> <i>adv.</i> 紧紧地 | tight <i>adj.</i> 紧的 |
| | tighten <i>v.</i> 加强, 拧紧 |
| <u>desperate</u> <i>adj.</i> 拼命的, 绝望的 | desperately <i>adv.</i> 绝望地, 拼命地 |
| | desperation <i>n.</i> 绝望, 拼命, 不顾一切 |
| <u>faulty</u> <i>adj.</i> 有故障的, 有缺陷的 | fault <i>n.</i> 责任, 过错 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--|--------------------------------|
| <u>consistent</u> <i>adj.</i> 一贯的, 一致的 | consistency <i>n.</i> 连贯性, 一致性 |

III. 补全短语

1. change one's mind 改变主意
2. in shock 震惊
3. go through 经受; 通过
4. as though/if 好像
5. make comments on 对……做出评论
6. keep... from 隐瞒; 阻止; 抑制
7. race up 向上跑, 急剧上升
8. hold out 伸出
9. cry out 大喊
10. rush out of 冲出……

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: with 复合结构
He looked thicker and stubbier with his spacesuit on ...
穿着宇航服的他虽然看起来臃肿矮胖了一些……
2. 句型公式: though 引导让步状语从句时的倒装
Jimmy, expert though he was, couldn't outrace Robutt, who didn't need a spacesuit...
吉米虽然很熟练, 但他比不过罗布, 罗布不需要宇航服……
3. 句型公式: as though 引导方式状语从句
Robutt is just adjusted to act as though it loves you.
罗布只是被设定好, 假装很爱你。

任务型课堂

1. desperate *adj.* 拼命的, 绝望的

[教材原文] He was frowning, too, and the **desperate** look on his face meant that he wouldn't change his mind.

他也皱着眉头, 脸上绝望的表情意味着他不会改变主意。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be desperate for sth. 极想要某物, 渴望得到某物

be desperate to do sth. 极想做某事

(2) desperation *n.* 绝望, 拼命, 不顾一切

in desperation 绝望地

(3) desperately *adv.* 绝望地, 拼命地

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① In desperation (desperate), he called Louise and asked for her help.

② The man lost in the desert was desperate for water.

③ He is desperate to pass (pass) the entrance exam.

④ The man looked around desperately (desperate) for someone to help him.

2. faulty *adj.* 有故障的, 有缺陷的

[教材原文] Another prison breakout: **faulty** robotics blamed.

另一个越狱事件: 被指责为机器人技术有缺陷。

[归纳拓展]

fault *n.* 责任, 过错; 故障, 毛病; 缺点

at fault 有过错; 应当负责

find fault with 挑毛病, 挑剔

to a fault (良好品质) 过分, 过度

名师点拨 ■■■■

fault 表示具体的“缺点; 缺陷; 故障”时, 可用作可数名词; 泛指抽象的“过失, 过错, 责任”时, 是不可数名词。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The driver who didn't stop at the red light was at fault in the accident.

② He is constantly finding fault with my work.

③ James is cautious to a fault.

(2) 翻译句子

① 尽管有缺点, 但他仍不失为一名好老师。

With all his faults, he was still a good teacher.

② 她对每一件事和每一个人都吹毛求疵。

She finds fault with everything and everybody.

3. consistent *adj.* 一贯的, 一致的

[教材原文] Now make comments on your partner's story and see whether the language style is **consistent**.

现在对你搭档的故事发表评论, 看看语言风格是否一致。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be consistent with... 与……一致

(2) consistency *n.* 连贯性, 一致性

(3) consistently *adv.* 一致地, 始终如一地

(4) consist of... 由……组成

consist in (= lie in) 在于

consist with... 与……一致

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The true wealth does not consist in what we have, but in what we are.

② What he has said doesn't consist with what he has done.

③ The atmosphere consists of more than 70% of nitrogen (氮).

④ The result is entirely consistent (consist) with our earlier research on the project. Therefore, our method proves to be correct.

⑤ Coal consisting (consist) mostly of carbon is the main energy today.

(2) 句型转换

Your conduct doesn't consist with what you say.

→ Your conduct isn't consistent with what you say.

4. though 引导让步状语从句时的倒装

[教材原文] Jimmy, **expert though he was**, couldn't outrace Robutt, who didn't need a spacesuit...

吉米虽然很熟练, 但他比不过罗布, 罗布不需要宇航服……

[归纳拓展]

though 表示“尽管, 虽然”时, 其引导的让步状语从句可以用陈述语序, 也可以用倒装语序, 即把让步

状语从句中作表语的名词(提前名词前不带冠词)或形容词、作状语的副词、作谓语动词的实义动词提前。

[即学即练]

用倒装语序完成句子

① Hot though the night air was, we slept deeply because we were so tired after the long journey. 尽管夜间的空气很热,但我们睡得很沉,因为长途旅行之后,我们太累了。

② Try though she might, Sue couldn't get the door open.

尽管她尝试了,苏还是打不开门。

③ Paul has many ways to make a class active. Young teacher though he is, he is popular with his students.

保罗有很多方法使班级活跃起来。虽然他是个年轻的老师,但他在学生中很受欢迎。

多义词汇专练

The only **clue** he has is a fossil, "the snake stone" which she left behind along with a note on which she had written, "Take good care of Sammie."

A. *n.* 线索

B. *n.* (帮助警方破案的)迹象

C. *n.* 解答提示

A

写作探究

续写故事

「写作指导」

本单元的写作任务是续写故事。续写短文多以记叙故事类文章或夹叙夹议类文章为主,线索逻辑性强,故事曲折跌宕。续写需要大胆推断但不能偏离主题。续写步骤如下:

1. 精读全文,确定线索。

精读全文时,首先要解决好五个 W 和一个 H 的问题,即理清人物 who、地点 where、时间 when、事件 what、原因 why 及怎样发展 how,然后根据关键词厘清故事发展的线索。

2. 构思情节,谋篇布局。

以原文结尾为起点,按照原文中事件发生的逻辑性,得出各段的主旨大意,构思好情节发展,预测故事的结局。

3. 厘清思路,优化语言。

结合文中的关键词语拟写草稿,展开丰富的联想和想象,紧紧围绕主题,按照情节的发展进行续写。写作手法上必须以记叙为主,描写上以动作描写为重心,情节的发展要合乎逻辑。所续写的内容在主题、人物、线索及语言风格上要与原文保持一致,表现为上下文衔接自然,前后情节互相照应。

「典题示例」

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Mo was waiting in the corridor outside her class. She was feeling sick. She had two exams that

day and physics was the first. She really hated physics. It was her worst subject. Terry looked back at her from the front of the line, and then looked away quickly. Mo thought she looked guilty. She didn't have a problem with physics. She didn't have a problem with anything... Miss Perfect!

"Hi, Mo, it's your favourite exam today," said Nina, laughing as she joined the line. Terry was looking at Mo again. "So what's wrong with her?" asked Nina. "I thought you were friends." "Yes, so I did," said Mo. "But she hasn't spoken to me for two weeks now. She promised to help me review for the physics exam too, but then she ignored all my calls and texts. And when I rang her house, her mum just told me she was busy. She's forgotten who her friends are!" said Mo angrily. "Are you listening to me?" Mr Reed was talking to the class and the other students were going into the exam room. Mo gave Nina a worried look and followed them.

Mo couldn't answer question number five. She looked up and saw Terry sitting two rows in front of her. Mo couldn't believe it! Terry was holding her phone on her knee under the table and reading from it. Is that how Terry always got such good grades? She felt really angry at Terry, but she didn't know what to do. She thought about telling the teacher, but what would everyone else think of her? "Stop

writing and put your pens down,” said Mr Reed as he started to collect the exam papers. Oh no, Mo hadn’t answered two of the questions. She was going to fail again.

Mo wanted to talk to Terry at lunchtime, but she couldn’t find her anywhere. The next exam was history. That was Mo’s favourite subject but she wasn’t feeling good. Mo went to the library to study, but she couldn’t concentrate. She didn’t know what to do about Terry. She thought about telling the teacher, but everyone would hate her if she did that. “It isn’t fair!” she thought. “Terry was getting good grades by cheating all that time,” thought Mo. Just then, Mr Reed walked past her table. “Mr Reed…”

Mo was sitting behind Terry again in the history exam that afternoon. Mo was feeling terrible. Why had she told Mr Reed? But it was too late now. And anyway, Terry didn’t want to be her friend! Mr Reed wanted her to look at him and nod if she saw that Terry was cheating in the exam.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

She was working on the last question when she saw that Terry had her phone under the table. _____

Mo was walking towards the school gate, when she heard footsteps behind her. _____

Step 1: 审题谋篇

| | |
|----|--|
| 文体 | 记叙文 |
| 时态 | 一般过去时 |
| 人称 | 第一、三人称 |
| 要点 | 1. Mo 在一番纠结后告诉了老师, Terry 被叫出了考场, Mo 的心里很不安 2. 放学后, Terry 找到了 Mo, 跟她解释了自己不理她的原因——父亲病了。而且, 今天有一个十分重要的手术, 所以她不顾考场纪律看手机, 就是想知道父亲的情况。最终两个人和好如初 |

Step 2: 要点补全

- ①Terry didn’t notice (没注意到) Mr Reed until the teacher patted her on the back (直到老师拍她的背)。
②She felt guilty for (为……感到内疚) telling Mr Reed about it.

③It had resulted in (导致) Terry’s not finishing her exam.

④Terry rushed out of the class, crying all the way (一路哭着)。

⑤Instead of feeling relaxed (不是感到轻松自在), Mo had ants in her pants.

Step 3: 句式升级

- ①用强调句型改写 Step 2 中的①句。
It wasn’t until the teacher patted her on the back that Terry noticed Mr Reed.
②用定语从句连接 Step 2 中的②③两句。
She felt guilty for telling Mr Reed about it, which had resulted in Terry’s not finishing her exam.

Step 4: 连句成篇

She was working on the last question when she saw that Terry had her phone under the table. Though feeling uneasy and restless, she looked at Mr Reed and nodded. With her eyes glued to the phone, it wasn’t until the teacher patted her on the back that Terry noticed Mr Reed. Immediately, Terry was asked to leave. Terry rushed out of the class, crying all the way. Instead of feeling relaxed, Mo had ants in her pants. She felt guilty for telling Mr Reed about it, which had resulted in Terry’s not finishing her exam.

Mo was walking towards the school gate, when she heard footsteps behind her. She turned to find it was Terry who had just come out of the teachers’ office. Feeling embarrassed, Mo wanted to run away. Nevertheless, Terry stopped her and said, “Mo, I’m sorry I haven’t kept my promise to help you review, but my father has been badly ill for two weeks. Today he had a significant operation. I was so worried about him that I kept on reading the texts on the phone sent by my mother to get the latest news about him, so Mr Reed forgave me. Can you forgive me?” “Of course! Let’s go to the hospital to see your father,” Mo couldn’t wait to reply.

「学以致用」

阅读材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Chloe and Kevin enjoy going out to Italian restaurants. They love to eat pasta, share a dessert, and have espresso (浓咖啡). Chloe and Kevin’s anniversary is coming up. Kevin wants to plan a

night out at an Italian restaurant in town. He searches for the Italian restaurants in their town, but only to find two of them. He calls a restaurant to make a reservation but they have no tables available on that day. He calls the other restaurant, but they have no availability either.

Kevin thinks and paces around the house. He knows that Chloe loves Italian food far more than anything else. He knows that nothing makes her happier. It would be the best to celebrate their anniversary with an Italian dinner. But the only two Italian places in town are both too busy.

Kevin has an idea. What if he cooks Chloe a homemade Italian meal? Kevin pictures it: He puts down a fancy tablecloth, lights some candles and plays romantic Italian music. Chloe loves it when Kevin makes an effort.

Everything seems perfect with the plan except for one thing: Kevin isn't a good cook. In fact, Kevin is a terrible cook. When he tries to make breakfast, he burns the eggs; when he tries to make lunch, he screws up the salad; when he tries to make dinner, even the neighbours smell how bad it is. And it is nearly impossible to improve his cooking skills in such a short time.

Kevin has another idea: If he calls up one of the

restaurants before Chloe gets home and orders takeout, he can serve that food instead of his bad cooking. In that way, their anniversary will be enjoyable and it saves a lot of effort.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

The day of the anniversary arrives. Chloe is still at work while Kevin orders the food from the Italian restaurant, picks it up, and brings it back home. As he lays down the table settings, lights the candles and puts the music on, Chloe walks in. "Happy Anniversary!" Kevin tells Chloe. He shows off their romantic dinner setting, smiling. Far from Kevin's expectations, Chloe looks confused. "Our anniversary is tomorrow, Kevin," she says.

Kevin is surprised and looks at the calendar. He then realises that Chloe is right. He looks back at her with an embarrassed smile. "It is always good to practise!" he says. On the next day, which is the actual date of their anniversary, Kevin is very worried because Chloe already knows his plan. But Chloe seems busy preparing to go out. Kevin asks her where she is going, and Chloe says, "I have booked a table at the Italian restaurant in advance!" Now Kevin knows why the restaurant is full.

课后素养评价(二十)

I. 单句语法填空

1. When the little girl saw the dog, she held her mother tightly (tight) by the arm.
2. She spoke mechanically (mechanical), as if thinking of something else.
3. I'll show it to Benjamin. He's bound to know (know).
4. It would be unwise to comment on the situation without knowing all the facts.
5. They admit they are now desperate for a lucky break.
6. Be sure that your reply is consistent with your original argument.
7. Our holiday photos didn't come out because the film was faulty (fault).
8. The police were trying to chase down all possible clues (clue) to the murder.
9. To our disappointment, they do not understand or appreciate what we go through.
10. Come on, George, we'd better get back now.

II. 完成句子

1. John lost his new cycle. That's why his parents were in shock.
约翰弄丢了他的新自行车。那就是他的父母感到震惊的原因。
2. Assistant though/as he is, he has mastered more clues than the captain.
尽管他是一名助手,但他掌握的线索比队长多。
3. It is not until humanity is susceptible to AI that we realise the importance of science.
直到人类易受到人工智能的影响,我们才意识到科学的重要性。
4. I felt as if my heart had stopped.
我觉得好像我的心都不跳了。

III. 语法填空

According to a report by *South China Morning Post*, China is planning to launch a hyperloop (超级高铁), also known 1 as a super-high speed pipeline maglev system by 2035. If the project goes as

2. planned (plan), the new train will be the world's fastest ground-based transport.

In the past few days, the Chinese government officers 3. have announced (announce) the approval of the country's first hyperloop line. Its 4. length (long) will be 175 kilometres, and it will pass between Shanghai and Hangzhou. The distance between the two cities can be covered in about three hours by car or an hour by high-speed train. But the hyperloop can reach the speed of 1,000 km/h, 5. which means the route can be completed in just 15 minutes.

The project will make China one of the pioneers in hyperloop technology, 6. allowing (allow) faster travel between several major cities. The hyperloop provides 7. a high-security level with low energy consumption. The technology will 8. further (far) advance China's position as a leader in transport.

A super-fast hyperloop train in China has completed 9. its (it) first test runs. These consisted of three test runs at a superconducting maglev test line in Datong, Shanxi Province. However, the current tube available for trials measures only 2 km long. It 10. is expected (expect) to be extended to 60 km in the near future.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

一家英语报社向中学生征文,主题是“十年后的我”。请根据下列要点展开想象,写一篇英语短文:

1. 家庭;
2. 工作;
3. 业余生活。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯;
3. 开头已给出,不计入总词数。

【参考范文】

I often imagine what my life will be like in the future. I think my life will be very different in ten years. I will have my own family, probably with a lovely child. I hope I'll work in a computer company as a program designer. I'll enjoy my work and get along well with my colleagues. In my free time, I'll continue to take regular exercise, such as swimming, running and various ball games. On my holidays, I'll travel around the world. In a word, my life will be much richer and more colourful.

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Megan is a bright and curious little girl, as most children at age eight. When walking she looks up, down, or sideways, never where she's going. One day, she spotted, partly covered by leaves and litter, a \$100 bill. She looked to see if anyone was watching and bent down to crumple (弄皱) the bill in her tiny hand. Sliding it into her jacket pocket, she took another guilty look and then hurried off to school.

Her day was spent watching her jacket hung on the wall by the door. During lunch, she took it off and ran to the far side of the playground to pull out the crumpled bill and stare at it and see that it was real and belonged to her. When some older kids wandered by, she put it back into her pocket quickly and rushed back into the classroom.

It wasn't until she was riding home on the school bus that she started to wonder about whom the bill had belonged to before it came to be hers. "Probably somebody rich," she thought. "Why else would he be so careless with the \$100 bill?"

She imagined a tall man in a fine wool jacket walking to his big car and pulling out a roll of money, not noticing one bill drifting (飘) to the ground. Putting the roll back in his pocket, he climbed into his car and drove away. Just then, a wind blew some leaves to cover most of the lost bill.

But, then she thought, what if the bill had been a present for the little niece living with her grandma because her parents were killed in a car crash? She'd have treasured that \$100 bill because it came from her generous uncle. And she'd be dreaming, even now if she hadn't realised she'd lost it, of all the toys and treats that the bill could buy. She could use it to buy a present for her grandmother. She would be heartbroken to find she'd lost that \$100 bill.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

Walking slowly towards her house, she debated whether to tell her mum about her newly-found treasure. If she told her mum what had happened to her, then what would happen to the \$100 bill? Maybe she couldn't achieve her dream—she wanted to use the money to buy some homeless children some toys; without the money, she could do nothing. But if she continued to keep the \$100 bill, she would feel so guilty that she couldn't sleep well. At that moment, she regretted picking up the bill. Finally, she decided to ask her mother to buy some

toys for some poor children. Without hesitation, her mother agreed.

The next day was Sunday and Megan and her mum arrived at the local supermarket early. The money was still in her jacket and it still belonged to her. Suddenly, she found some toy planes which

were right presents just for those children! She stopped her mother, and offered to buy them. “I can pay for the toys myself,” she told her mother what had happened. After Megan paid for the presents, her mother gave her a \$100 bill and the thumbs up. Getting a praise from her mother, she felt very happy.

阶段综合提升(二)

Unit 3—Unit 4

I. 阅读理解

A

Welcome to Adventureland!

Everyone loves Adventureland! The parks and exhibitions were built for you to explore, enjoy, and admire their wonders. Every visit will be an unforgettable experience. You will go away enriched, longing to come back. What are you going to do this time?

The Travel Pavilion

Explore places you have never been to before, and experience different ways of life. Visit the Amazon jungle (丛林) village, the Turkish market, the Tai floating market, the Berber mountain house and others. Talk to the people there who will tell you about their lives, and things they make. You can try making a carpet, making nets, fishing...

The Future Tower

This exhibition shows how progress will touch our lives. It allows us to look into the future and explore the cities of the next century and the way we'll be living then. Spend some time in our space station and climb into our simulator (模拟装置) for the Journey to Mars!

The Nature Park

This is not really one park but several. In the Safari Park you can drive among African animals in one of our Range Cruisers: see lions, giraffes, elephants in the wild. Move on to the Ocean Park to watch the dolphins and whales. And then there is still the Aviary to see...

The Pyramid

This is the centre of Adventureland. Run out of films; need some postcards and stamps? For all these things and many more, visit our underground shopping centre. Come here for information and ideas too.

【语篇解读】本文是一则广告。文章介绍了

Adventureland 的几个特色项目。

1. Which one will you visit if you are interested in knowing about what people's life will be?

- A. The Travel Pavilion.
- B. The Safari Park.
- C. The Future Tower.
- D. The Pyramid.

C 推理判断题。The Future Tower 部分都是介绍未来生活的情况,符合本题的要求。故选 C。

2. Why is The Travel Pavilion built?

- A. To help visitors realise the importance of travelling.
- B. To help visitors become familiar with mountain countries.
- C. To help visitors learn something about different places in the world.
- D. To help visitors learn how to make things such as fishing nets.

C 细节理解题。根据 The Travel Pavilion 部分中的第一句“Explore places you have never been to before, and experience different ways of life.”可知选 C。

3. If you want to get a postcard, where will you most likely to go?

- A. The Nature Park.
- B. The Future Tower.
- C. The Travel Pavilion.
- D. The Pyramid.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一部分中的“need some postcards... For all these things and many more, visit our underground shopping centre”可知,The Pyramid 有地下购物中心,可以在这里买到明信片。故选 D。

B

A tree-planting initiative in Kenya has seen over 30,000 trees being planted. The Green Generation Initiative is a Kenyan charity that has been planting trees to counter climate change and the reduction in forest in the East African nation since 2016.

Founded by climate activist Elizabeth Wathuti when she was fifteen years old, the initiative's primary focus is on developing young climate activists through environmental education in schools and addressing food insecurity in the region through planting fruit trees. Since its foundation, over 30,000 trees have been planted in Kenya, while thousands of school children have not just planted trees but adopted them to ensure that young people learn the importance of acting as a guardian over the health of the environment. The trees have recorded a survival rate of over 98 percent, as they remain tended to from young trees to maturity.

Speaking to world leaders at the recent United Nations Climate Conference in Glasgow (COP26), Elizabeth issued a serious warning on the threat of climate change. Over two million of Kenyans are facing climate-related starvation. In 2025, half of the world's population will be facing water shortage. The climate crisis will displace 80 million people in sub-Saharan Africa alone.

Elizabeth said, "I have been doing what I can. Inspired by the great Wangari Maathai, I founded a tree growing initiative that enhances food security for young Kenyans." So far, they have grown 30,000 fruit trees to maturity, providing desperately needed nutrition for thousands of children. "Every day we see that when we look after the trees, they look after us. We are the adults on this Earth right now, and it is our responsibility to ensure that the children have food and water," she added.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。为了应对气候变化和森林减少以及由气候变化带来的饥饿问题，Elizabeth Wathuti 创立的慈善机构 the Green Generation Initiative 已在肯尼亚种了 3 万多棵果树。

4. What is the initiative intended for?

- A. Making policies.
- B. Raising money.
- C. Educating adults.
- D. Fighting climate change.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段第二句“The Green Generation Initiative is a Kenyan charity that has been planting trees to counter climate change and the reduction in forest in the East African nation since 2016.”可知，这一倡议的目的是应对气候变化。故选 D。

5. What crisis are Kenyans encountering at present?

- A. Hunger.
- B. Sickness.

C. Water shortage.

D. Economic risks.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段第二句“Over two million of Kenyans are facing climate-related starvation.”可知，肯尼亚人目前面临的危机是饥饿问题。故选 A。

6. What has been achieved since 2016?

- A. 3,000 trees have been planted.
- B. Green awareness has been raised.
- C. 80 million people have been saved.
- D. School education has been guaranteed.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段第二句“The Green Generation Initiative is a Kenyan charity that has been planting trees to counter climate change and the reduction in forest in the East African nation since 2016.”可知，这一慈善机构是 2016 年成立的；再根据第二段前两句“Founded by climate activist Elizabeth Wathuti when she was fifteen years old, the initiative's primary focus is on developing young climate activists through environmental education in schools and addressing food insecurity in the region through planting fruit trees. Since its foundation, over 30,000 trees have been planted in Kenya, while thousands of school children have not just planted trees but adopted them to ensure that young people learn the importance of acting as a guardian over the health of the environment.”可知，该慈善机构自成立以来，不仅种植了 3 万棵果树，还提高了年轻人的环保意识。故选 B。

7. Which of the following can best describe Elizabeth Wathuti?

- A. Friendly and talented.
- B. Caring and responsible.
- C. Honest and determined.
- D. Ambitious and humorous.

B 推理判断题。根据 Elizabeth Wathuti 创立慈善机构的目的，特别是第三段第一句“Speaking to world leaders at the recent United Nations Climate Conference in Glasgow (COP26), Elizabeth issued a serious warning on the threat of climate change.”和第四段中的“Elizabeth said, ‘I have been doing what I can. Inspired by the great Wangari Maathai, I founded a tree growing initiative that enhances food security for young Kenyans.’”可推知，Elizabeth Wathuti 是一位富有爱心和责任心的人。故选 B。

C

In 1917 Orville Wright predicted that “the aeroplane will help peace in many ways—in particular I think it will have a tendency to make

war impossible". Earlier in 1904, American journalist John Walker declared, "As a peace machine, the value of the aeroplane to the world will be beyond computation." This wasn't the first grand promise of technology. In that same year Jules Verne announced, "The submarine (潜艇) may be the cause of bringing battle to a stoppage."

Alfred Nobel sincerely believed his dynamite (火药) would be a war obstacle: "My dynamite will sooner lead to peace than a thousand world conventions (公约)." Similarly, when Hiran Maxim, inventor of the machine gun, was asked in 1893, "Will this gun not make war more terrible?" He answered, "No, it will make war impossible." Guglielmo Mareconi, inventor of the radio, told the world in 1912, "The coming of the wireless time will make war impossible, because it will make war ridiculous." General James Harbord, chairman of the board of RCA in 1925, believed, "Radio will serve to make the concept of Peace on Earth, Good Will Towards Men a reality."

David Nye, a historian of technology, adds to the list of inventions imagined as abolishing war forever and leading to universal peace the hot-air balloon, poison gas, land mines and laser guns.

It is not that all these inventions are without benefits—even benefits towards democracy. Rather, it's the case that each new technology creates more problems than it solves. "Problems are the answers to solutions," says Brian Arthur.

Most of the new problems in the world are problems created by previous technology. These problems are nearly invisible to us. Every year 1.2 million people die in automobile accidents. The technological transportation system kills more people than cancer. Global warming, environmental poisons, nuclear terrorism, and species loss, are only a few of the many other serious problems troubling people.

If we embrace (拥抱) technology, we need to face its costs.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了飞机、炸药、机枪、无线电通信的发明者的初衷,即阻止战争、保卫和平;但事实上这些新科技给人类带来的问题远比它们解决的问题要多。

8. What will new inventions do according to the first two paragraphs?
- They will increase wars.
 - They will lead to peace.
 - They will serve people.

D. They will break conventions.

B 推理判断题。根据第一、二段中的关键词“help peace”“make war impossible”“bringing battle to a stoppage”“would be a war obstacle”“make the concept of Peace on Earth”等可知,每一项发明都是想阻止战争、保卫和平。故选 B。

9. What invention was considered to make war silly by its inventor?
- The radio.
 - The aeroplane.
 - Dynamite.
 - The machine gun.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Guglielmo Mareconi, inventor of the radio, told the world in 1912, 'The coming of the wireless time will make war impossible, because it will make war ridiculous.'”可知,无线电通信的发明者认为他的发明会使战争变得荒唐。故选 A。

10. Why does the author list so many inventions?
- To show people's creativity.
 - To appreciate their benefits.
 - To contradict the original ideas.
 - To prove grand promises.

C 推理判断题。根据第一、二段的内容可知,发明者都认为自己的发明可以阻止战争。根据最后三段,尤其是第四段中的“Rather, it's the case that each new technology creates more problems than it solves.”可知,很多问题都是由之前的发明带来的。因此,作者用这些发明为例,是为了反驳它们被发明出来的初衷。故选 C。

11. What does the author hope to tell us about new technology through the text?
- It will experience many tests.
 - It will bring about huge costs in the world.
 - It provides answers to many problems.
 - It presents more problems than it solves.

D 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“Rather, it's the case that each new technology creates more problems than it solves.”和第五段中的“Most of the new problems in the world are problems created by previous technology.”可知,作者想要通过文章告诉我们:科技带来的问题远比它解决的问题多。故选 D。

D

IQ is often regarded as a crucial driver of success, particularly in fields such as science, innovation and technology. But the truth is that some of the greatest achievements by our species have primarily relied on what scientists call “cognitive flexibility”.

Cognitive flexibility is a skill that enables us to switch between different concepts, or to adapt behaviour to achieve goals in a novel or changing environment. And the good news is that it can be trained. Currently, a group of researchers from Cambridge University are conducting a research, trying to work out how people can best boost their cognitive flexibility.

Cognitive flexibility may have affected how people coped with the pandemic lockdowns, which produced new challenges around work and schooling. Some people may have changed their routines from time to time, trying to find better and more varied ways of going about their day. Others, however, struggled and finally became more rigid in their thinking. They stuck to the same routine activities, with little flexibility or change.

Flexible thinking is key to creativity. It also supports academic and work skills such as problem solving. Unlike working memory, it is largely independent of IQ. For example, many visual artists may be of average intelligence, but highly creative and have produced masterpieces.

So does cognitive flexibility make people smarter in a way that isn't always captured on IQ tests? We know that it leads to better rational thinking throughout the lifespan. For example, for children it leads to better reading abilities and better school performance.

It can also help protect against a number of prejudice. People who are cognitively flexible are better at recognising potential faults in themselves and using strategies to overcome these faults.

Cognitive flexibility is essential for society to flourish. It can help maximise the potential of individuals to create innovative ideas and creative inventions. Ultimately, it is such qualities that we need to solve the big challenges of today.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要说明了“认知灵活性”的重要性、认知灵活的人的特点以及如何才能最好地提高人们的认知灵活性的研究。

12. What is the purpose of the research conducted by Cambridge University researchers?
- To clarify people's misunderstanding about cognitive flexibility.
 - To figure out the relationship between IQ and cognitive flexibility.
 - To explore effective ways to improve people's cognitive flexibility.
 - To make out the benefits of increasing people's cognitive flexibility.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Currently, a group of researchers from Cambridge University are conducting a research, trying to work out how people can best boost their cognitive flexibility.”可知,剑桥大学研究人员进行这项研究的目的是探索提高人们认知灵活性的有效途径。故选 C。

13. What will cognitively flexible people probably do to deal with new challenges?

- Stick to their original plan.
- Handle new problems rigidly.
- Adjust their thoughts and behaviour.
- Apply creative ideas to improve their IQ.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“Cognitive flexibility is a skill that enables us to switch between different concepts, or to adapt behaviour to achieve goals in a novel or changing environment.”以及第三段中的“Cognitive flexibility may have affected how people coped with the pandemic lockdowns, which produced new challenges around work and schooling. Some people may have changed their routines from time to time, trying to find better and more varied ways of going about their day.”可推知,在应对新挑战时,认知灵活的人可能会调整他们的想法和行为。故选 C。

14. What can we learn about cognitive flexibility?

- It is closely related to people's IQ.
- It is an unchangeable inborn quality.
- It helps people avoid reasonable thinking.
- It helps people make greater achievements.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“‘But the truth is that some of the greatest achievements by our species have primarily relied on what scientists call ‘cognitive flexibility’.”可知,认知灵活性帮助人们取得更大的成就。故选 D。

15. What do the last three paragraphs mainly talk about?

- Applications of cognitive flexibility.
- Benefits of cognitive flexibility.
- Experiments on cognitive flexibility.
- Definitions of cognitive flexibility.

B 段落大意题。根据最后三段的内容可知,最后三段主要说明了认知灵活性的好处。故选 B。

II. 七选五

Now I live in Paris. Actually, I don't mind the food or the people, but I do care about the land that is extraordinarily lack of characteristics of hiking. I enjoy being outdoors and hiking, but Paris's natural resources don't hold much potential for my bent. So

when my dad asked if I wanted to go hiking with him, I was overjoyed. 16 It turned out that I was too optimistic.

We started our main hike up Flattop Mountain. As we hiked it was much more challenging than I expected. 17 The path is winding and we saw mountains towering over the green valleys and cliffs that seemed endless. What amazed me most was that thick clouds enveloped the mountainsides. 18

I stared up at the top to see how much farther we had to go and I began to worry that I wouldn't finish it. 19 It made me doubtful about my persistence (坚持). But when we looked back at the path that faded in the distance, I was filled with fulfillment with seeing how much we had done.

As I was hiking, I started to reflect on how hiking was similar to other aspects of my life. 20 It reminded me of my struggles in my classes and the difficulties I had to overcome. I spotted that the process of learning isn't always the most fun, but the fulfillment after seeing how much I had finished just increases the thirst for knowledge, causing me to long for more learning. Looking down at the mountain I was content but never fully satisfied. Having considered a lot, I was determined to pursue the summit (山顶).

- A. Hiking could make me fly.
B. Hiking gave time for my mind to wander.
C. I thought I would finish the journey with ease.
D. But I was shocked at the beauty surrounding me.
E. I was satisfied with the landscape along the way.
F. It was unlike anything I had ever witnessed before.
G. A recent ankle injury had left me unsure of my physical capabilities.

答案: 16~20 CDFGB

III. 完形填空

Joriden's love with migrating (迁徙的) raptors (肉食鸟) started when he saw a group of strangers scanning the sky with telescope on top of a hill in his village. His 21 drove him to find out what they were doing. To his joy, the strangers 22 him to take a look. With just one quick look, Joriden was 23. "The sight is very 24," says Joriden. "They take away my stress. I 25 watching these mighty birds."

Joriden used to hunt birds for fun or food. But the 26 with the birdwatchers shifted his mind. Now, not only did he 27 his fellow youths or even older folk to 28 birds they've caught, but he also 29 the community members to stop

cutting trees in the mountains to 30 the roosts (栖息地) of the migratory birds.

Raptors are 31 indicators of the health of the environment. They sit on top of the food chain, and thus their health depends on the health of the whole ecosystem they live in. Declines in their population can indicate a 32 in the specific ecosystem that raptor species depend upon or visit. Raptors, which are natural predators (食肉动物), are also 33 to human food security and livelihoods. If their population 34, the population of harmful insects and animals along their migrating path will increase, 35 agricultural productivity.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇夹叙夹议文。文章主要讲了Joriden在一次与观鸟者的邂逅后呼吁人们保护肉食鸟,因为肉食鸟是环境健康的天然指示器,同时也影响人类粮食安全和生计。

21. A. joy B. curiosity
C. experience D. confidence
B 根据上文的“he saw a group of strangers scanning the sky with telescope on top of a hill in his village”可知,他看到一群陌生人在他村子的山顶上用望远镜扫视天空,所以出于好奇心,他去了解他们在做什么。故选B。
22. A. reminded B. urged
C. allowed D. convinced
C 根据下文的“With just one quick look”可知,那些陌生人允许他看一眼。故选C。
23. A. attracted B. controlled
C. rewarded D. accepted
A 根据下文的“They take away my stress.”可知,Joriden觉得鸟带走了他的压力,所以此处是指被吸引住了。故选A。
24. A. regular B. strange
C. famous D. impressive
D 根据上文的“With just one quick look, Joriden was 23.”可知,他被吸引住了,所以那个景象是令人印象深刻的。故选D。
25. A. imagined B. avoided
C. enjoyed D. risked
C 根据上文的“They take away my stress.”可知,他觉得那些鸟带走了他的压力,所以此处是指他喜欢看这些强大的鸟。故选C。
26. A. encounter B. discussion
C. adventure D. training
A 根据第一段中的“when he saw a group of strangers scanning the sky with telescope on top of a hill in his village”可知,他和观鸟者的邂逅改变了他的想法。故选A。

27. A. wait for B. send for
C. rely on D. appeal to
D 根据下文的“his fellow youths or even older folk to 28 birds they've caught”可知,他呼吁年轻人和老年人释放捕获的鸟。appeal to 意为“呼吁”。故选 D。

28. A. sell B. raise
C. scare D. release
D 根据下文的“birds they've caught, but he also 29 the community members to stop cutting trees in the mountains to 30 the roosts (栖息地) of the migratory birds”可知,他采取行动保护鸟,所以此处是指呼吁人们释放捕获的鸟。故选 D。

29. A. warned B. persuaded
C. forced D. expected
B 根据下文的“the community members to stop cutting trees in the mountains to 30 the roosts (栖息地) of the migratory birds”可知,此处指他还说服社区成员停止砍伐山上的树木。故选 B。

30. A. protect B. locate
C. clear D. hide
A 根据空前的“to stop cutting trees in the mountains”和空后的“the roosts (栖息地) of the migratory birds”可知,停止砍伐山上的树木是为了保护候鸟的栖息地。故选 A。

31. A. natural B. statistical
C. subjective D. faulty
A 根据下文的“indicators of the health of the environment”可知,肉食鸟是环境健康的天然指示器。故选 A。

32. A. probability B. problem
C. secret D. pattern
B 根据上文的“Declines in their population”可知,它们数量的下降可能表明肉食鸟物种依赖或逗留的特定生态系统出现了问题。故选 B。

33. A. familiar B. accessible
C. obvious D. beneficial
D 根据下文的“If their population 34, the population of harmful insects and animals along their migrating path will increase, 35 agricultural productivity.”可知,肉食鸟对人类的粮食安全和生计是有益的。故选 D。

34. A. doubles B. decreases
C. varies D. ages
B 根据下文的“the population of harmful insects and animals along their migrating path will increase”可知,肉食鸟吃害虫,所以,如果它们的数量减少,那么害虫的数量就会增加。故选 B。

35. A. boosting B. maintaining
C. affecting D. measuring
C 根据上文的“the population of harmful insects and animals along their migrating path will increase”可知,如果肉食鸟的数量减少,它们迁徙途中的害虫和动物的数量就会增加,从而影响农业生产力。故选 C。

IV. 语法填空

So, you are interested in becoming a good journalist but don't know where to start? Well, there are a couple of things you should put on your list of priorities.

To begin with, you need to be skilled at writing. The information **36. involved** (involve) in a complex story may come from dozens of **37. sources** (source). Good journalists need to organise all this information clearly to give an accurate account of **38. what** is happening.

In addition, you must have a natural curiosity about things **39. that/which** are happening, even though they may appear to be minor matters. When something newsworthy comes **40. about**, it may escape the attention of ordinary people. However, good journalists are sensitive enough to notice **41. the** event and draw public attention to it.

Finally, good journalists commit **42. themselves** (they) to revealing the truth. According to Noam Chomsky, “The duty of journalists is **43. to tell/telling** (tell) the truth. Journalism means you go back to the actual fact, you look at the documents, you discover what the record is, and you report it that way.” To do this, journalists need to investigate an event **44. completely** (complete).

To sum up, being a good journalist **45. requires** (require) writing skills, curiosity and commitment to finding the truth. Good luck!

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

世界环境日(6月5日)即将到来,为了提升你校学生对环境问题的认识与态度,学校英语社团将举办关于爱护环境的征文比赛,请你以“爱护环境从身边做起”为主题写一篇英语稿件参赛,内容如下:

1. 介绍世界环境日;
2. 保护环境的行为;
3. 建设最美校园。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Caring for the Environment Starts from Ourselves

World Environment Day is on June 5 every

year. It reflects the attitude of people around the world to environmental issues and expresses human pursuit of a better environment.

As young students, we should promote environmental protection and start from the things around us, such as caring for every plant and tree in the school, and actively participating in various public welfare activities that care for nature. In addition, we should also obey the rules of the school, striving to be good students with civilisation and politeness, which will contribute to the construction of the most beautiful campus.

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Karen Helps Out

Karen sat at the kitchen table. She finished her last bite of cereal as she watched Dad fill a bucket with tools. “What are you working on today?” she asked.

“Last week I fixed the porch railing,” Dad said. “That means today it’s ready to paint.” “Can I help?” asked Karen. Dad usually said no, because his tools were sharp and too heavy for Karen to pick up. Karen usually just watched Dad work.

“Yes,” said Dad. “Painting is a safe job for you to try. Go put on some old clothes and meet me out front.”

Karen found play clothes from last summer that were a little small. Next year they wouldn’t fit at all. It would be okay if she dripped paint on them by mistake. Karen was planning to be very careful.

“Ready!” called Karen. She sat down on the top porch step.

Dad dipped his paint brush into a can of white paint. Karen watched as he carefully wiped the edge of the brush on the side of the can. “That’s what you do to get rid of extra paint. See? No drips.” Then

Dad made one long smooth line of paint along the porch railing. “Remember to paint in just one direction so things stay neat,” said Dad.

Karen was very excited to try painting herself. She dipped her brush in the paint and wiped the edge, just like Dad. Then she tried to paint a stripe on the railing. Her paint line started out nicely, but she soon ran out of paint.

“That’s a good start,” said Dad. “Now dip your brush again and continue your line.” Karen tried again. Soon her paint line was almost as long as Dad’s. She watched as Dad went over her line one more time. He smoothed it out and connected it to his line. “Painting is fun!” said Karen. She and Dad kept working together.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

Soon the whole railing was painted white. It looked fresh and clean, “Great job, Karen,” said Dad. Hearing this, Karen wore a shining smile on her face. “Today I have learnt a lot. It seems that I will learn more living skills from Dad in the future,” Karen thought to herself. Dad made some additions to some places. “When it’s dry, we can show Mum what we did today,” Dad said to Karen. She felt very proud. She couldn’t wait to show Mum all her hard work later.

Seeing her mother come back, Karen threw herself into Mum’s arms. “Here, Mum! Here!” Karen exclaimed as she led her mum to see the newly painted railing. At first Mum looked a little puzzled, but her eyes widened open when she found the railing took on a new look. Karen excitedly told Mum how she helped Dad paint the railing. Mum couldn’t help hugging Karen, saying, “You did a great job! Our little Karen has grown up.” Karen laughed, determined to do more for her parents, her eyes shining with excitement.

读后续写技能养成

如何推动情节发展

「技能概述」

1. 推动情节发展:指把要求续写的两段的故事情节在续写给文的故事情节基础上继续向前推进,使其达到故事的高潮和结尾。
2. 续写技巧:依据续写给文的故事情节和续写的两个段首句,利用“六所”思维法(所见、所听、所嗅、所感、所说、所做)快速、合理地构建故事情节。

「范例体悟」

(2022·新高考I卷续写)

(第一段) We sat down next to each other, but David wouldn’t look at me. → 我安慰大卫 → 大卫哭泣并解释 → 我再安慰大卫 → 大卫决定参赛

(第二段) I watched as David moved up to the starting line with the other runners. → 大卫参赛并

开跑→大卫落后但精神高涨→大卫冲线和我的感受
→大卫获奖时的感受

体会本例中故事情节的发展,并用“六所”思维法加以分析:

我的“所说、所做、所见、所感”与大卫的“所做、所说、所听、所感”交替发展。

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. my words broke the silence 我的话打破了沉默
2. let sb. down 让某人失望
3. hang one's head in frustration 沮丧地低着头
4. contest for the lead 奋勇争先
5. struggle to keep up 努力追赶
6. pick oneself up 站起来
7. make one's way 前进
8. shine with hope 闪烁着希望
9. crowd into one's mind 涌入脑海
10. trip over 被……绊倒
11. gather all one's strength 用尽全力
12. blurt out 脱口而出

II. 佳句背诵

1. I wanted to make them know that I was really anxious to help them.
我想让他们知道我真的很想帮助他们。
2. I wanted to know what they were going through and I was desperate to know what I could do for them.
我想知道他们正在经历什么,我迫切地想知道我能为他们做些什么。
3. This experience made me realise that there are so many people in this world who need our help.
这次经历让我意识到在这个世界上有那么多人需要我们的帮助。
4. It also made me realise that our small act of kindness can make them feel warm and make a great difference to them.
这也让我意识到,我们小小的善举可以让他们感到温暖,对他们产生很大的影响。
5. Under the guidance of their father, they took

positive actions and started all over again.

在父亲的指导下,他们采取了积极的行动,重新开始。

6. It was not only the gift, but the love of the children for her that moved her very much.
让她非常感动的不仅是礼物,还有孩子们对她的爱。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. I thought I should have my own money and plan how to spend it.
我认为我应该有自己的钱,并计划好如何花。
2. Whatever the boys said, Osman wouldn't take the money.
不管男孩子们说什么,奥斯曼都不会拿钱。
3. Frightened as I was, I tried to keep my balance to prevent myself from falling off the horse.
尽管我很害怕,我努力保持平衡,不让自己掉下马来。
4. What we could do was go back along the previous track slowly.
我们所能做的只有沿着之前的路慢慢走回去。

II. 用推动情节发展技巧完成语段

(前文故事情节提示:我发现自己肚子大、鼻子丑、笑声难听,同学和其他人嘲笑我的相貌,我感到自卑,对自己的身体失去自信。一次,我的一个表妹给我打电话时,我告诉她我的想法。)

- (第一段) *Then I started telling her and it all came out.* 1. (从“所感、所做和所说”角度写表妹的反应与做法) She seemed so surprised and said how special I was. She started listing all my good qualities, saying I shouldn't listen to people who said mean things because they were probably just feeling bad about themselves or trying to look cool. Definitely, she added, I shouldn't let them tell me how to feel about myself or my body.
2. (从“所想”角度写我的感想) It was like a sudden wake-up call: focusing on what other people thought of me only made things even worse, and I must learn to love and accept myself for who I am.

Unit 5 Learning from nature

| | |
|--------|--|
| 必背单词 | architect, superb, frontier, pond, sow, wisdom, employ, bat, physician, bow, rural, decent, cottage, withdraw, domestic, depressive, purity, resign, botanical, reject, ease, attain, evaluate |
| 重点表达 | take... for granted, an example of, convert... into..., respond to, seek solutions to, draw... from, come about, withdraw from, resign oneself to |
| 重点知识 | 1. find+宾语+宾语补足语 2. that 引导同位语从句 |
| 单元语法 | 非谓语动词作主语、宾语和表语 |
| 单元写作 | 从自然中得到的启示 |
| 主题美文赏读 | <p>What kind of house will you buy in the future? Would you like to live in a house where your plants can call your phone to tell you that they need to be watered? Or a house that helps you cut your energy bill by turning off the lights when you leave a room?</p> <p>The Smart Home is made entirely of recyclable and renewable materials. The furniture is made from used light bulbs, plastic bottles and other renewable materials, but you can't tell from just looking at them. The kitchen countertops(工作台面) are made of recycled glass.</p> <p>The entire house is designed to control the use of energy. The roof of the Smart Home has a sustainable vegetable garden, which does little harm to nature. Even the personal computer is green; it uses less power than a 60-watt light bulb. The house can raise and lower the window shades by itself.</p> <p>你将来会买什么样的房子？你想住在一个你的植物可以给你打电话告诉你它们需要浇水的房子里吗？或者当你离开房间时可以关灯，以帮助你减少能源费用的房子？</p> <p>智能家居完全由可回收和可再生材料制成。这些家具是用废旧灯泡、塑料瓶和其他可再生材料制成的，但你只是看一眼它们是辨别不出来的。厨房的台面是用再生玻璃做的。</p> <p>整个房子的设计都是为了控制能源的使用。智能家居的屋顶有一个可持续发展的菜园，对自然几乎没有危害。甚至个人电脑也是环保的；它比一个 60 瓦的灯泡用的电还少。这房子可以自己升降窗帘。</p> |

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. superb *adj.* 极好的, 出色的
2. architect *n.* 建筑师
3. convert *v.* 使转变; 使转换
4. frontier *n.* (学科的) 知识前沿
5. take... for granted 认为……理所当然
6. respond to 对……作出反应
7. convert... into... 把……转换成……
8. associate... with... 把……与……联系起来
9. be based on 基于……; 以……为基础
10. look like 看起来像
11. in fact 事实上; 实际上

(二)阅读词汇

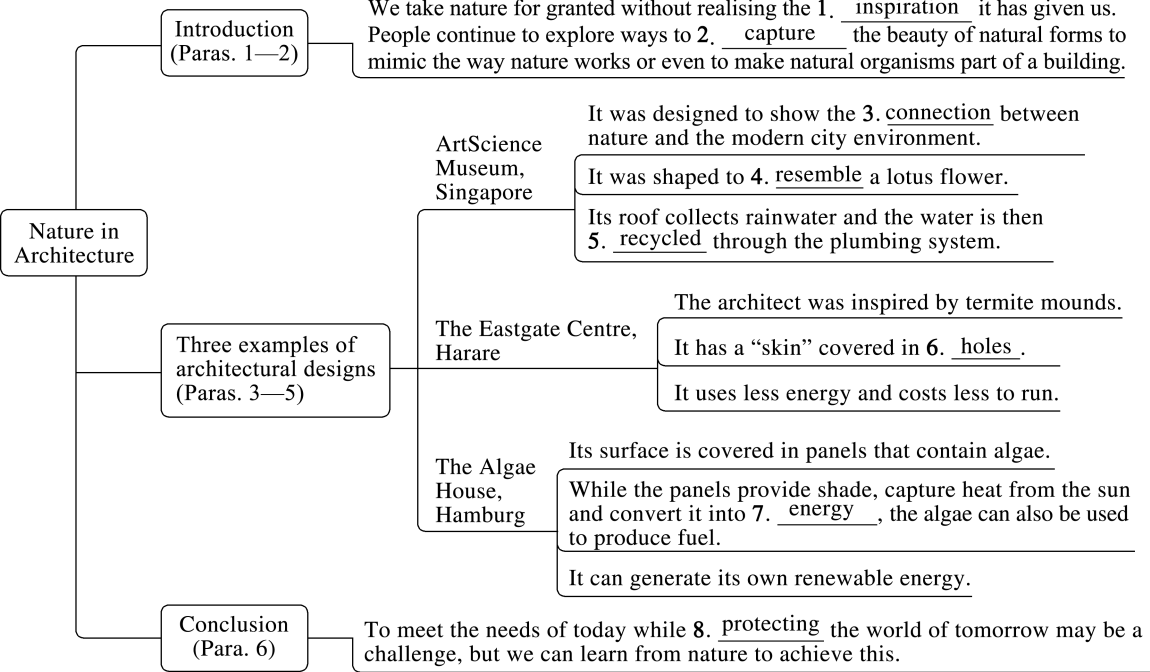
1. dioxide *n.* 氧化物

2. lotus *n.* 莲花, 荷花
3. mimic *v.* 模仿
4. mound *n.* 土堆, 土丘
5. algae *n.* 藻类(植物)
6. tile *n.* 瓦片
7. waterfront *n.* 滨水地区
8. promenade *n.* 滨海步行道
9. termite *n.* 白蚁
10. plumbing *n.* 管道系统
11. biomimicry *n.* 仿生学
12. pine cone 松果, 松球
13. in a similar way 以同样的方式; 类似地
14. stick with 坚持(做)
15. an example of ……的一个例子

多维化析文

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



▶ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- Which building is a superb example of biomimicry?
 - Water Cube, Beijing.
 - ArtScience Museum, Singapore.
 - The Eastgate Centre, Harare.
 - The Algae House, Hamburg.
- What inspired Mick Pearce to create Harare's Eastgate Centre?
 - Termites.
 - Mounds.
 - Holes.
 - A nature documentary about termites constructing their nests.
- What's the author's opinion about the relationship between humans and nature?
 - Living in harmony with nature.
 - Constructing buildings in nature.
 - Protecting the world by creating more algae-powered buildings.
 - Taking nature for granted.

答案:C

答案:D

答案:A

▶ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

Nature has inspired many **1. designs** (design) around us. Shaped to resemble a lotus flower, the ArtScience Museum seems **2. to float** (float) above the waterfront promenade and the water that **3. surrounds** (surround) it. It collects rainwater **4. through** the roof and the water is recycled through its own plumbing system. **5. Based** (base) on the form and the process of termite mounds, Harare's Eastgate Centre also has little holes on the walls allowing air to move freely in and out of the building, thus reducing the need **6. for** traditional air conditioning and heating systems. In this way, it uses **7. less** (little) energy and costs less to run. The

Algae House is covered in panels containing algae. While the panels provide shade as well as capture heat and convert it **8. into** energy, the algae can also be used to produce fuel. The building reduces damage to the environment by **9. generating** (generate) its own renewable energy. In short, nature-inspired buildings enable us **10. to live** (live) in closer harmony with our environment.

Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- In fact, we are so used to them that we may even take them for granted without realising how much inspiration they have given us.
[句子分析]句中 so used to them that... 为 so... that... 引导的结果状语从句,其中介词 without 后是动名词短语作宾语,how much inspiration they have given us 为 how much 引导的宾语从句。
[尝试翻译]事实上,我们已经习惯了它们,甚至可能认为它们是理所当然的,没有意识到它们给了我们多少灵感。

- To meet the needs of today while protecting the world of tomorrow may be a challenge, but even the simplest organisms can help teach us how to achieve this.

[句子分析]句中 but 连接表示转折关系的并列句。第一个分句中不定式短语 To meet the needs of today 为主语,while protecting the world of tomorrow 为时间状语;第二个分句中 how to achieve this 为宾语。

[尝试翻译]在保护明天的世界的同时满足今天的需要可能是一个挑战,但即使是最简单的生物体也可以帮助我们实现这一点。

▶ 思维品质培养

Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

- Which of the three buildings are you most impressed by? Why?
略
- If you were given a chance to design a building, what inspiration would you take from nature?
略

课后素养评价(二十一)

I. 阅读理解

Plastic mobile phone cases and sweet wrappers, some more than 50 years old, have recently been pulled from the sea off the coast of East Yorkshire. The finds lead to growing concern among scientists about the long-term impact of plastic waste on our seas, with research suggesting it takes over 400 years for a drink bottle to break down in the sea.

Notpla, a London-based startup company, is currently designing a seaweed-based replacement for single-use plastic packaging. Founded in 2014, the company has been sparing no effort to further develop its product line.

The firm initially looked to seaweed as the solution to the world's white pollution, because it is plentiful, grows quickly, doesn't compete with land crops and doesn't use chemicals, but absorbs carbon from the air. Design director Karlijn Sibbel says, "It can grow into the sea, where it actually has many positive benefits so it can create new ecosystems for other organisms to grow in."

Sibbel says they look to nature as inspiration "for the ideal packaging" like the skin on a fruit. "A peel (果皮) will eventually be used as nutrients by nature, disappear and become part of the cycle."

"The exciting thing is that this is a film that can replace most of the flexible packaging you see around," Sibbel says. The potential contents could include coffee grounds or toilet paper. For food items, such as noodles, they have even experimented with adding flavours to the packaging, so that dissolving the bag could add seasoning to the food. "You can cook with it. And you can really start to rethink what we can do with these materials," she explains.

The approach feels especially relevant as the world is coming to terms with the effects of decades of uncontrolled plastic production. Co-CEO Paslier says, "We're excited to see our power in the food service industry and looking forward to moving into the fashion markets very soon."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了在塑料污染日益严重的情况下,一家名叫 Notpla 的公司采用海藻作为塑料包装的替代品,这种方法不仅切实可行,而且对环境有益,应用领域很广泛。

1. What problem is mainly referred to in Paragraph 1?

- A. Energy crisis.
- B. Food waste.
- C. Ecological disaster.
- D. White pollution.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“The finds lead to growing concern among scientists about the long-term impact of plastic waste on our seas, with research suggesting it takes over 400 years for a drink bottle to break down in the sea.”可知,第一段主要介绍了塑料垃圾难以分解,会对海洋造成负面影响,即白色污染的问题。故选 D。

2. What is Paragraph 3 mainly about?

- A. How seaweed grows in the sea.
- B. How seaweed absorbs carbon from the air.
- C. Why seaweed can create more new ecosystems.
- D. Why seaweed was chosen as a plastic alternative.

D 段落大意题。根据第三段的内容可知,该段主要解释了利用海藻来解决白色污染的原因,不仅方案可行,而且还可以带来很多的好处。D 项“为什么选择海藻作为塑料替代品”能概括本段段落大意。故选 D。

3. What is the ideal packaging according to Sibbel?

- A. It can be digested by nature.
- B. It's as thin as a peel.
- C. It can be transformed into chemicals.
- D. It bears a flavour enhancer.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中 Sibbel 所说的话可知,在 Sibbel 看来,理想的包装应该像果皮一样,最终被自然消化,成为循环的一部分。故选 A。

4. Which word can best describe the prospects of Notpla?

- A. Doubtful.
- B. Uncertain.
- C. Promising.
- D. Darkening.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,Notpla 公司的这种方法符合目前的世界发展趋势,除了应用于餐饮业,也有望应用于时装产业,因此公司的前景很好。故选 C。

II. 七选五

The human body is made up of over 75% water, and we cannot live without water. Keep in mind that water is healthy and necessary for leading yourself towards better health.

Your own personal need for water can vary greatly due to exercise, weight and temperature.

1 By drinking water on a regular basis you can replenish (补充) the water in your body.

By the time you are thirsty you have already

lost two or more cups of the body's water supply.

2 Whenever you exercise, you need more water. Due to exercise, your body loses quite a bit of water. For each pound lost, you need to drink two cups of water.

3 By drinking a glass of water before you go to sleep, you can wake up with your body functioning as it should be. When you are sick, you need more water than at any other time. 4 Therefore, you feel more thirsty than usual when you have a cold. You can try to prevent this by drinking more water at times when you become sick.

5 You should keep a bottle of water with you at all times and drink it throughout the day. You should also teach yourself to drink water instead of other drinks that don't include the things that your body needs.

A. Always make it a habit to drink water on a daily

- basis.
- B. You should decide which the best type of water is.
- C. Therefore, drinking water regularly is much better than simply waiting until you are thirsty.
- D. Even when you lie down to sleep, your body loses water.
- E. When you get a cold, your body loses water quite quickly.
- F. There are several different opinions as to whether drinking water is actually beneficial.
- G. Research has proven that over two thirds of adults don't get the water they need on a daily basis.

答案:1~5 GCDEA

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Language points

自主式预习

- I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思
1. The Spanish National Football Team is such a **superb** one that they can beat us hands down. 极好的, 出色的
2. They point out that **algae** is cheap and grows very quickly. 藻类
3. I hope you can see the white **tile** underneath the table. 瓦片
4. Across the river are **waterfront** baseball and football stadiums. 滨水地区
5. A wide **promenade** allows many people to walk at the same time. 滨海步行道
6. Reducing levels of carbon **dioxide** in the atmosphere is of critical importance. 二氧化碳

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| <u>architect</u> n. 建筑师 | architecture n. 建筑; 建筑学 |
| | architectural adj. 建筑的; 建筑上的 |
| <u>plumbing</u> n. 管道系统 | plumber n. 水暖工 |
| <u>biomimicry</u> n. 仿生学 | mimic v. 模仿 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <u>convert</u> v. 使转变; 使转换 | convertible adj. 可改变的; 可转换的 |
| | conversion n. 转变; 换算 |

III. 补全短语

1. take... for granted 认为……理所当然
2. associate... with ... 把……与……联系起来
3. be based on 基于……; 以……为基础
4. stick with 坚持(做)
5. in fact 事实上; 实际上
6. convert... into ... 把……转换成……
7. respond to 对……作出反应

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: It + be + adj. + to do
It is natural to think in this way, but of course it wasn't the umbrella that inspired the flower or the roof that inspired the pine cone.
这样思考是很自然的, 但当然不是雨伞给了花朵灵感, 也不是屋顶给了松果灵感。
2. 句型公式: find + 宾语 + 宾语补足语
Visitors are often amazed to find themselves in an

urban building that so truly captures the beauty of natural forms.

游客常常惊奇地发现自己置身于一座能如此真实地捕捉到自然形态之美的城市建筑中。

3. 句型公式:if 引导虚拟条件句

If you were given a chance to design a building, what inspiration would you take from nature?

如果你被给予一次机会设计一座建筑物,你会从大自然中得到什么灵感?

任务型课堂

1. (be) based on 根据;基于……;以……为基础

[教材原文] To use biomimicry is to create structures **based on** natural forms and processes.

利用仿生技术,在自然形态和过程的基础上来创造建筑结构。

[归纳拓展]

(1) base *n.* 根基,基底;基础;基地;总部 *v.* 把基地设于,以……为基地

(2) basic *adj.* 基本的;基础的

(3) basically *adv.* 大体上;基本上;总的说来

(4) basis *n.* 基础;根据;要素

on the basis of 根据……;在……的基础上

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① Basically, his income only meets basic living expenses. So he only chooses a simple lifestyle based on his limited salary. (base)

② Based (base) on the analysis she made a prediction that his company would pick up soon.

③ I suggest changes be made to your original plan based (base) on how many guests will turn up.

④ We drew this conclusion on the basis of experiments.

2. absorb *v.* 吸收;吸引,使全神贯注;理解

[教材原文] At night, the heat **absorbed** by the wall during the day warms the cool air, creating a comfortable temperature inside.

晚上,白天墙壁吸收的热量会使冷空气变暖,创造一个适宜的内部温度条件。

[归纳拓展]

(1) absorb oneself in 全神贯注于

absorb... into... 把……吸入……

absorb... from... 从……中吸收……

(2) absorbed *adj.* 被……吸引住;专心致志的;全神贯注的

be absorbed in 专心于;专注于

be absorbed into... 被融入/吸纳进/同化为……

(3) absorbing *adj.* 引人入胜的

(4) absorption *n.* 吸收;全神贯注,专心致志;并入;同化

名师点拨

表示“专心于;致力于”的短语:be absorbed in, be devoted to, be lost in, be buried in, concentrate on, focus on/upon 等。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① We need to be absorbed in physical exercise before we break down.

② You will never gain success unless you are fully absorbed (absorb) in your work.

③ Vitamin C increases the absorption (absorb) of iron from food.

④ The surrounding small towns have been absorbed into the city.

(2) 完成句子

Absorbed in every movement of mine, the foreign students were once again amazed by this unique culture and they couldn't help taking pictures from time to time.

这些外国学生被我的每一个动作所吸引,他们再次对这种独特的文化感到惊奇,忍不住连连拍照。

3. convert *v.* 使转变;使转换

[教材原文] The panels also capture heat from the sun and **convert** it into energy that powers the building.

太阳能板还能从太阳中获取热量,并将其转化为电能,为建筑物供电。

[归纳拓展]

(1) convert from sth. to sth. 由某物改成某物

convert sth. into/to sth. 把某物改成某物

(2) convertible *adj.* 可改变的;可转换的

(3) conversion *n.* 转变;换算

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① The signal will be converted into/to digital code.

② In the process, the power has converted from light energy to heat energy.

③ The warehouse (仓库) was undergoing conversion (convert) into apartments.

4. find+宾语+宾语补足语

[教材原文] Visitors are often amazed to **find themselves in an urban building** that so truly captures the beauty of natural forms.

游客常常惊奇地发现自己置身于一座能如此真实地捕捉到自然形态之美的城市建筑中。

[句式分析] 句中 find themselves in an urban building 为“find+宾语+宾语补足语”结构的应用,其表示“(在事先毫无知觉的情况下)突然发现自己处于某种状态”。宾语补足语常由介词短语、现在分词、过去分词、形容词或副词充当;一般不用不定式,但可用 to be。

[归纳拓展]

(1) find+宾语+宾语补足语(形容词/副词/介词短语/现在分词/过去分词) 发现/觉得……处于某种状态

(2) find+it+adj./n.+to do sth. 发现/认为做某事……

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① When she came to herself, she found herself lying (lie) in a strange room.

② One night, she was sleeping heavily in bed when she found herself trapped (trap) in a big fire.

(2) 完成句子

With so much noise going around, he found it hard to settle down to his work at that time. (find+it+adj.+to do...)

周围有那么多噪音,那时他发现难以安下心来工作。

(3) 句式升级

He found that his son was surrounded by letters and papers and he was looking very worried. (用“find+宾语+宾语补足语”改写)

→ He found his son surrounded by letters and papers and looking very worried.

课后素养评价(二十二)

I. 单词拼写

- Each of the rooms has a superb (极好的) view of the sea.
- The house was designed by architect (建筑师) Louis Kahn.
- The stories of those scientists working in the frontier (前沿) of science and technology inspire us to study harder.
- The report is based (以……为基础) on figures from six different European cities.
- As is known to all, plants absorb (吸收) nutrients from the soil.

II. 短语填空

take... for granted; be used to; convert... into...; in harmony with; respond to; such as; look like; stick with

- Although Lee found the project difficult, he was determined to stick with it.
- How did your friends respond to your decision on going abroad for further study?
- It is obvious that the lazy man has taken it for granted that we should help him.

- Most of the exchange students have been used to the new environment in the university.
- It takes more time to convert knowledge into your own ability.
- It protects against environmental hazards such as wind and sun.
- The wild flowers look like a soft orange blanket covering the desert.
- With better education, people will be able to build a better society in harmony with nature.

III. 完成句子

- It is natural to feel nervous when you give a speech in public for the first time.
第一次在大众面前演讲感到紧张是自然的。
- While mimicking Charlie Chaplin on the stage, he himself couldn't help laughing.
当在舞台上模仿查理·卓别林时,他自己情不自禁地笑了。
- The designer developed the habit of observing in his childhood, enabling him to design such a unique architecture.
这位设计师在童年时代养成了观察的习惯,这使他能够设计出如此独特的建筑。

4. It appears that there has been a mistake.

看来有一个差错。

5. I would go with you if I had time.

如果有时间的话,我就和你一起去了。

6. I found it impossible to answer all the questions within such a short time.

我发现在如此短的时间里回答所有的问题是不可能的。

IV. 完形填空

On an early summer day in the fascinating landscape of Jiulong Peak provincial nature reserve, deep in Anhui Province, Du Minghui, working in the reserve, was taking a group of 20 students on a study 1. With the symphony of birdsong 2 through the air, they went on the journey, winding their way through the forest to 3 the secrets and wonders of wildflowers and trees.

The tours primarily 4 nature education. They aim to allow children to gain a profound understanding of nature by acquiring knowledge of the animals and plants in the 5. Throughout the tour, students have the opportunity to acquire essential 6 skills in the wild, such as learning to tie knots and 7 simple stretchers (担架).

In recent years, the reserve has strengthened partnerships with scientific institutions, making use of its advantages to develop 8 tours and ecotourism. During the first three days of June, Du and his colleagues 9 three groups of students. With summer vacation approaching, they 10 a flood of children to appreciate the appealing beauty of nature.

The 11 in study tours is closely linked to the 12 environment of the mountains. In the past four years, the reserve has captured nearly 350,000 13 of wild animals. With the environment becoming better, people are 14 to witness the return of animal species that had been 15 for years.

【语篇解读】文章介绍了安徽省九龙峰自然保护区通过加强与科研机构的合作,利用自身优势发展教育旅游和生态旅游的情况。

1. A. schedule B. task
C. tour D. experience

C 根据下文“they went on the journey”可知,这是一个由 20 名学生组成的游学团。故选 C。

2. A. playing B. echoing
C. releasing D. composing

B 根据下文“through the air”可知,鸟的叫声在空中回响。故选 B。

3. A. keep B. leak
C. spread D. unlock

D 根据上文“a study 1”及下文“the secrets and wonders of wildflowers and trees”可知,此处指通过这次游学旅程,孩子们可以了解自然界的秘密和奇迹。故选 D。

4. A. centre around B. rely on
C. cope with D. take over

A 根据下文“They aim to allow children to gain a profound understanding of nature by acquiring knowledge of the animals and plants”可知,这次游学主要以自然为中心。故选 A。

5. A. zoos B. mountains
C. villages D. cities

B 根据上文“understanding of nature by acquiring knowledge of the animals and plants”可知,此处指通过了解山上的动物和植物,这些学生能对自然有更深刻的了解。故选 B。

6. A. writing B. weaving
C. survival D. withdrawal

C 根据下文“skills in the wild, such as learning to tie knots and 7 simple stretchers (担架)”可知,这些技能对于人们在野外生存是必要的。故选 C。

7. A. lifting B. building
C. sending D. borrowing

B 根据上文“learning to tie knots”及下文“simple stretchers (担架)”可知,这里指学习打结和搭建简单的担架的技巧。故选 B。

8. A. recreational B. commercial
C. educational D. medical

C 根据上文“The tours primarily 4 nature education.”及“strengthened partnerships with scientific institutions”可知,这里指保护区加强与科研机构的合作,利用其优势发展教育旅游。故选 C。

9. A. hosted B. assessed
C. sponsored D. rewarded

A 根据上文“Du Minghui, working in the reserve, was taking a group of 20 students on a study 1”可知,在游学活动中,杜作为领队带领着这些学生,所以此处指他们接待了三组学生。故选 A。

10. A. persuade B. anticipate
C. require D. allow
B 根据上文 “With summer vacation approaching” 及下文 “a flood of children to appreciate the appealing beauty of nature” 可知, 暑假到来后, 会有很多的学生愿意来欣赏迷人的大自然之美, 所以此处指他们预想会有很多的学生来参加游学活动。故选 B。
11. A. contest B. prejudice
C. reform D. boom
D 根据上文 “a flood of children to appreciate the appealing beauty of nature” 可知, 参加游学的学生数量很多, 说明游学活动在日益繁荣。故选 D。
12. A. improved B. mixed
C. disturbed D. exploited

- A 根据下文 “With the environment becoming better” 可知, 自然环境在日益变好, 故选 A。
13. A. feelings B. images
C. sounds D. shapes
B 根据 “captured nearly 350,000” 可知, 此处指拍摄了近 350 000 张野生动物的照片。故选 B。
14. A. confused B. moved
C. delighted D. shocked
C 根据下文 “witness the return of animal species” 可知, 人们看到多年不见的物种重新出现, 自然是高兴的。故选 C。
15. A. free B. diverse
C. extinct D. absent
D 根据上文 “witness the return of animal species” 可知, 人们看到物种重新出现, 说明好多年来是看不到这些动物的。故选 D。

Section III Using language

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. They also had a small **pond** in which they kept fish. 池塘
2. **Bats** fly at night and feed on insects. 蝙蝠
3. We continued tracking the plane on our **radar**. 雷达
4. I will put on my **swimsuit** and swim in the pool. 游泳衣
5. They caught a **dragonfly** and watched its wings carefully. 蜻蜓
6. Above him an invisible **drone** flew through the night sky. 无人驾驶飞机

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| employ v. 使用, 运用 | employer n. 雇主, 老板 |
| | employee n. 雇员, 受雇者 |
| | employment n. 使用; 雇用; 就业 |
| | unemployment n. 失业; 失业人数 |
| wisdom n. 智慧 | wise adj. 明智的, 聪明的 |

III. 补全短语

1. crash into 撞到……
2. come about 发生, 产生
3. come into being 出现, 形成, 产生
4. take inspiration from 从……中获取灵感
5. be good for 对……有好处
6. go back 追溯到

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 动词-ing 形式作主语
Drawing inspiration from nature is a tradition that goes back centuries.
从大自然中汲取灵感是几百年前的传统。
2. 句型公式: “nowhere is + 形容词比较级 + than” 表示最高级含义
Nowhere is this better illustrated than in the beautiful Lingering Garden of Suzhou.
最能说明这一点的莫过于美丽的苏州留园。
3. 句型公式: be supposed to do
Visitors are also supposed to explore it scene-by-scene.
游客也应该一个景色接一个景色地探索。
4. 句型公式: 时间状语从句的省略
When solving a design problem, you can sometimes look to nature for a solution.
在解决设计问题时, 有时你可以向大自然寻求解决方案。

任务型课堂

1. inspire v. 激励,鼓舞;激发,启发;使产生灵感

[教材原文] Inspired by dolphins, people have learnt how to send signals underwater, which is currently employed in tsunami early-warning systems.

受海豚的启发,人们学会了如何在水下发送信号,目前这已应用于海啸预警系统。

[归纳拓展]

(1)inspire sb. to do sth. 激励某人做某事

inspire... in sb. 激发/激励某人的……

(2)inspired adj. 激动人心的;卓越的

(3)inspiring adj. 鼓舞人心的;启发灵感的

(4)inspiration n. 灵感;启发灵感的人(或事物)

take inspiration from 从……中获取灵感

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

①When asked where her inspiration of the novel came from, she said her father's inspiring words inspired her to write it. (inspire)

②His speech was inspiring (inspire) and touched everyone's heart, which inspired all the people present to work (work) even harder later.

③Some other museums across the country, such as the National Museum of China, are inspired (inspire) by the Palace Museum's efforts and are working on similar projects of their own.

2. employ v. 使用,运用

[教材原文] Inspired by dolphins, people have learnt how to send signals underwater, which is currently **employed** in tsunami early-warning systems.

受海豚的启发,人们学会了如何在水下发送信号,目前这已应用于海啸预警系统。

[归纳拓展]

(1)be employed in doing sth. 从事于/忙于做某事

(2)employer n. 雇主,老板

(3)employee n. 雇员,受雇者

(4)employment n. 使用;雇用;就业

(5)unemployment n. 失业;失业人数

(6)unemployed adj. 失业的,没有工作的

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

①An increase in crime is one of the results of unemployment, so the government and the employers should pay more attention to the employment. (employ)

②He was employed in watering the garden.

③Some unemployed (employ) workers have been fortunate to find their jobs in the suburbs.

④The young man impressed all the employers (employ) with his honesty.

多义词汇专练

I guess he can be on our team and we'll try to put him in to **bat** in the final inning.

A. n. 蝙蝠 B. v. 击球 C. n. 球棒

B

语法探究

非谓语动词作主语、宾语和表语

「语法感知」

①It is natural **to think** in this way...

②Today, architects continue **to explore** ways to capture the beauty of natural forms...

③People whose interest is **exploring the relationship** between art and science will enjoy Singapore's ArtScience Museum.

④... it appears **to float** above the waterfront promenade and the water that surrounds it.

⑤Visitors are often **amazed** to find themselves in an urban building that so truly captures the beauty of natural forms.

⑥**To use biomimicry** is **to create** structures based on natural forms and processes.

⑦**Creating buildings** such as these enables us to live in closer harmony with our environment.

⑧I can hardly imagine **sailing across the Atlantic Ocean in five days**.

1. 以上句子中,句①和句⑥中的第一处黑体部分为不

定式短语作主语，有时可以用 it 作形式主语而把不定式短语放在后面，如句①；句②中不定式短语作宾语；句④和句⑥中的第二处黑体部分为不定式短语作表语。

- 2. 句③中动词-ing 形式作表语；句⑦中动词-ing 形式作主语。
- 3. 句⑤中过去分词作表语。
- 4. 句⑧中动词-ing 形式作宾语。

「语法精讲」

一、非谓语动词的基本形式、结构与句法功能

(一)基本形式、结构

| — | | 主动形式 | 被动形式 |
|----------|--------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| 肯定式 | 不定式 | to do, to be doing, to have done, to have been doing | to be done, to have been done |
| | 动词-ing 形式 | doing, having done | being done, having been done |
| | 过去分词 | — | done |
| 否定式 | | 以上形式前加 not, 如 not to do, not doing, not to be done, not having done | |
| 复合 结构 | 动词-ing 形式 | 名词所有格、形容词性物主代 词+动词-ing 形式 | |
| | 不定式 | for sb./sth. to do | |

(二)句法功能

| | 主语 | 宾语 | 补语 | 表语 | 定语 | 状语 |
|-----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 不定式 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| 动词-ing 形式 | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ | ✓ | |
| 分词 | | | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |

二、非谓语动词作主语

动词-ing 形式和不定式在句子中都可充当主语。单个的动词不定式或动词-ing 形式作主语时，谓语动词常用单数。有时，为避免句子由于主语太长而显得头重脚轻，用 it 作形式主语，而把真正的主语移到句子后部。例如以下结构：

- ①It+be+名词/形容词+to do sth.
- ②It+be+形容词+for+sb.+to do sth.

名师点拨 ■■■■

形容词说明不定式所表示的行为的性质或特点，不能说明不定式动作的执行者。常用的表示客观情况的形容词有 difficult, easy, hard, important, impossible, necessary 等。

- ③It+be+形容词+of+sb.+to do sth.

名师点拨 ■■■■

形容词说明不定式逻辑主语的品行、性格、性质等，该句型通常可改为：Sb.+be+形容词+to do sth.，常用 careless, clever, good, foolish, honest, kind, lazy, nice, right, silly, stupid, wise 等表示赞扬或批评的词。

- ④It+be+ $\left\{\begin{matrix} \text{no use/good} \\ \text{not any use/good} \\ \text{of little use/good} \\ \text{useless} \end{matrix}\right\}$ +doing sth.

To climb the mountain road **is** easy while **to go** down the hills **is** hard.

上山容易下山难。

Reading aloud **is** very important for us to learn a foreign language.

大声朗读对我们学一门外语是很重要的。

It is hard to think of a world without metals.

难以想象一个没有金属的世界(是什么样子)。

It's a good idea to have your destination written in Chinese.

把你的目的地用汉语写出来是个好主意。

It's easy for me to work out this maths problem.

对我来说，解出这道数学题是容易的。

It is no use asking me. I know no more than you know.

问我没用。我还没你了解的多。

It was considerate of Michael to inform us of his delay in advance in case we got worried.

迈克尔提前告知我们他会晚到以免我们担心，他考虑得真周到。

It seems very difficult to finish the work within an hour.

在一个小时内完成这项工作似乎十分困难。

三、非谓语动词作宾语

- 1. 不定式和动词-ing 形式可在句中充当宾语。

有一部分动词后面只可以接不定式作宾语，如 decide, want 等，而某些动词只能接动词-ing 形式作宾语，如 enjoy, appreciate 等。某些动词后面既可以接不定式作宾语，也可以接动词-ing 形式作宾语，但是它们表达的意义不同，如下表：

| 动词 | 以 to do 作宾语的意义 | 以 doing 作宾语的意义 |
|------|----------------|----------------|
| stop | 停止手中事，去做另一件事 | 停止正在做的事 |

续表

| 动词 | 以 to do 作宾语的意义 | 以 doing 作宾语的意义 |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| go on | 接着做另外一件事 | 接着做同一件事 |
| remember/ forget/regret | (指动作尚未发生)记得/忘记/感到遗憾要去做某事 | (指动作已经发生)记得/忘记/感到后悔做过某事 |
| try | 设法、努力、尽力做某事 | 试试去做某事,看有何结果 |
| mean | 打算做某事,企图做某事 | 意思是,意味着 |
| can't help | 不能帮忙做某事 | 忍不住要做某事 |

She **pretended not to see** me when I passed by.
当我经过时,她假装没看见我。
We **agreed to meet** here but so far she hasn't
turned up yet.
我们约好了在这里见面,但是她到现在还没有
露面。

Remember to lock the door.
记得锁门。
I remember locking the door.
我记得把门锁上了。
Try doing more exercise, and you will
lose weight.
试着多做运动,你就能减肥了。
I will try to improve my oral English.
我将努力提高我的英语口语。
In some parts of London, missing a
bus means waiting for another hour.
在伦敦的某些地区,错过一趟公共汽车
就意味着再等一个小时。
I didn't mean to leave her name off the
list; it was an oversight.
我不是有意在名单上漏掉她的名字的,
这是个疏忽。

【记忆归纳】

(1) 只能用不定式作宾语的动词(词组)
decide/determine/manage/learn
promise/plan/intend
offer/ask/demand/help/prepare
pretend/agree/refuse
hope/wish/expect/desire/want/fail
(2) 只能用动词-ing 形式作宾语的动词(词组)
enjoy/appreciate/consider/avoid

give up/risk
mind/imagine/delay/put off
require/finish/look forward to
allow/escape
can't help/excuse
suggest/go on/practise
keep on/succeed in
(3) 既可以接不定式作宾语,也可以接动词-ing 形
式作宾语,但是表达的意义不同的动词(词组)
remember/forget/mean/go on/continue/try/stop/regret

2. 作宾语的不定式或动词-ing 形式有补足语时,有时
要使用形式宾语 it,把真正的宾语——不定式或动
词-ing 形式放在后面。

I found **it impossible to finish the work on time.**
我认为按时完成这项工作不可能。
I don't think **it possible to master** a foreign
language without much memory.
我认为掌握一门外语不靠大量的记忆是不可
能的。
His being late **made it impossible for us to finish**
the work on time.
他的迟到使我们不能按时完成工作。

3. 动词 need, require, want 作“需要”,deserve 作“应
受,应得”讲时,其后用动名词的主动形式(doing)
或不定式的被动形式(to be done)表示被动意义。
此外,need, require, want 后可以接名词或代词作
宾语,然后接不定式作宾语补足语,表示“需要/要
求/想要某人做某事”。

The window **needs/requires/wants to be cleaned/**
cleaning.
这个窗户需要擦一下。
These proposals **deserve consideration/**
considering/to be considered.
这些建议值得考虑。

4. 介词后面要用动词-ing 形式,要特别注意 to 的
词性,分析其为介词还是不定式 to。下列结构
中的 to 为介词:be accustomed to(习惯于),be
used to(习惯于),stick to,turn to,devote
oneself to,be devoted to,look forward to,pay
attention to,get down to,contribute to,lead to,
the key to 等。
Please pay attention to **adding** the date in the
form.
请注意在表格里添加日期。
—How do you deal with the disagreement
between the company and the customers?

——你如何解决公司与顾客之间的矛盾?

—The key to **solving** the problem is to meet the demand made by the customers.

——解决问题的关键是满足顾客提出的要求。

四、非谓语动词作表语

(一)不定式和动词-ing形式在句子中可充当表语

不定式作表语相当于名词作表语,表示主语的内容,主语和表语可以对调;动词不定式通常表示将来某一次的动作,而动词-ing形式则表示经常性发生的动作。

My job is **teaching/to teach** English.

我的工作是教英语。

Her wish was **to become an artist**.

她的愿望是成为一名艺术家。

The purpose of the new technology is **to make** life easier, **not to make** it more difficult.

这项新技术的目的是要使生活更简单,而不是让它更困难。

(二)不定式作表语的常见用法

1. 表示按约定、计划、职责、义务、要求等即将发生的动作,这是将来时的一种用法。

They **are to pay a visit** to the teacher together at ten tomorrow morning.

他们明天上午十点钟一起去看望这位老师。

2. 表示必须或应该,在意思上相当于 must, should, ought to 或 have to.

This medicine **is to be taken** three times a day.

这个药必须一天吃三次。

3. 表示注定要发生或不可避免要发生的事。

You **are to be rewarded**.

你定会得到奖励。

4. 如果主语是以 aim, duty, hope, idea, happiness, job, plan, problem, purpose, thing, wish 等为中心的名词或 what 引导的名词性从句,不定式作表语,对主语起补充说明的作用。

The **aim** of education is **to teach** young people to think for themselves and not follow others blindly.

教育的目的是让年轻人独立思考而不是盲目追随别人。

5. 动词不定式作表语, to 的省略问题。

动词不定式作表语时,如果前面有实义动词 do,则后面的动词不定式 to 要省略。

The last thing I want to **do** is **hurt** you.

我最不想做的事就是伤害你。

What I want to **do** now is **thank** him.

我现在想做的就是感谢他。

名师点拨 ■■■■

不定式 to blame, to let 用作表语时,通常要用主动形式表示被动意义。

Who is **to blame**? 该怪谁呢?

The house is **to let**. 此屋出租。

(三)分词也可充当表语

The book is **interesting**.

这本书很有趣。

The speech was **inspiring**.

这个演讲鼓舞人心。

The students were **excited**.

学生们很激动。

名师点拨 ■■■■

分词作表语时,它们都带有形容词的性质。现在分词作表语时,说明主语的特点,意为“使/令人……”;过去分词作表语常表示主语的性质、特征或状态,有时并无完成或被动之意,而是表示主语的状态或思想感情。过去分词作表语基本上都是已经形容词化的动词的-ed形式,通常意为“感到……的”。

「语法冲关」

I. 单句语法填空

1. Travelling (travel) along the old Silk Road is an interesting and rewarding experience.
2. It took him a long time to learn (learn) the skills he needed to become a good dancer.
3. My duty is watering (water) the flowers every day.
4. He suggested taking (take) my daughter to the zoo the next day.
5. It's important for the figures to be updated (update) regularly.
6. It's no use complaining (complain) without taking action.
7. She hopes to find (find) a good job in the future.
8. She pretended not to see (not see) me when I passed by.

II. 完成句子

1. She considers it necessary to make friends with him.
她认为与他交朋友是有必要的。

2. I will show you how to deal with it/what to do with it.
我会向你演示如何处理它。
3. The stranger offered to show me the way.
这个陌生人主动给我指路。

4. I will make it a rule to do physical training after supper.
我将把晚饭后进行体育锻炼定为一项规则。

课后素养评价(二十三)

I. 选词填空

wisdom; employ; take inspiration from;
physician; seek solutions to

1. Western designers take inspiration from China and its rich culture for Western creative work.
2. Piggy banks teach children the wisdom of saving, and adults often need to relearn childhood lessons.
3. The children should be taught how to employ their spare time properly.
4. The local physicians were brought in to research into the cause of the flu epidemic.
5. They attempt to seek solutions to the tough problem.

II. 单句语法填空

1. According to the specialist, it is time for the farmers to sow (sow) the seeds.
2. It's not easy to find (find) your way around the town.
3. He described that he was too nervous to open (open) his eyes.
4. This is how they learn to make friends and to avoid doing (do) things that hurt others.
5. As we all know, it's no use crying (cry) over spilt milk.
6. Parents should learn to praise their children instead of blaming (blame) them.
7. Thomas Edison failed thousands of times before he succeeded in inventing (invent) the first electric lamp.
8. The policeman asked me to tell him exactly how this accident came about.
9. No one knows how this custom came into being.
10. Whisky can be good for you if taken in moderation (有节制地).

III. 阅读理解

A teenager joins a line of people boarding a spaceship. Once on board, she approaches a bed,

crawls in, closes the lid and falls asleep. Her body is frozen for a trip to a planet several light-years from Earth. A few years later she wakes up, still the same age. This ability to put her life on pause while asleep is called “suspended animation”.

Scenes like this are the staple content of science fiction. All of these stories have something in common: People enter an unconscious state in which they can survive for a long time. Nothing like this is yet possible in the real world. But some animals and birds have their own forms of suspended animation: They hibernate. This might hold some lessons for how to put astronauts of the future into hibernation for long space flights.

“I think this is realistic,” says Katharine Grabek, a famous biologist. “It would be done by making ourselves as similar as we can to a hibernator.”

As an animal hibernates, it chills its body and slows its heart rate and breathing. Metabolism (新陈代谢) also slows. To do this, an animal must turn on and off certain genes when they hibernate. Those genes do things like controlling whether an animal burns sugars or fats for fuel. Other genes are involved in keeping muscles strong. Humans have many of these same genes. Turning some of these genes on or off might allow humans to do something similar to hibernation.

Since a person probably wouldn't survive their body temperature dropping below freezing, it is suggested that people might hibernate like bears. If people are like bears, hibernation may help keep bones and muscles strong. That is important in space. Bones and muscles tend to break down in low gravity. Hibernation could cut the amount of food, water and oxygen that crews need. And it could save people from the inevitable boredom of long trips in space.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了一些动物和鸟类的冬眠可能会为未来的航天员进入冬眠状态以进行长期太空飞行提供一些经验。

- What is the function of the first paragraph?
A. To tell readers a story.
B. To give a definition.
C. To share scientific knowledge.
D. To introduce the topic of the text.
D 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,第一段通过讲述一个例子引出文章的主题:未来的航天员可以进入冬眠状态以进行长期太空飞行。故选 D。
- What does the underlined word “this” in Paragraph 2 refer to?
A. Human hibernation.
B. Living forever.
C. Boarding spaceships.
D. Animals' suspended animation.
A 词义猜测题。根据第二段中的“But some animals and birds have their own forms of

suspended animation: They hibernate. This might hold some lessons for...”可知,动物的冬眠会为未来的航天员进入冬眠状态以进行长期太空飞行提供一些经验,this 指代人类冬眠。故选 A。

- What's Katharine Grabek's attitude to human hibernation?
A. Doubtful. B. Critical.
C. Positive. D. Dismissive.
C 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容可知,Grabek 对人类冬眠的态度是积极的。故选 C。
- What does the last paragraph mainly talk about concerning human hibernation?
A. Its current problems.
B. Its working mechanism.
C. Its benefits for astronauts.
D. Its appeal to the scientists.
C 段落大意题。根据最后一段的内容可知,最后一段主要谈论了人类冬眠对航天员的好处。故选 C。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

- deliberately *adv.* 不慌不忙地,从容不迫地
- depressive *adj.* 抑郁的
- reluctant *adj.* 不情愿的;勉强的
- purity *n.* 纯洁;洁净
- resign *v.* 使自己顺从于(做)某事;安于
- botanical *adj.* 植物(学)的
- reject *v.* 拒绝接受
- ease *n.* 舒适,悠闲
- attain *v.* 得到,获得
- fulfilment *n.* 满足(感)
- evaluate *v.* 评估,评价
- rural *adj.* 农村的,乡村的
- decent *adj.* 可接受的,相当好的
- bow *v.* 鞠躬
- reaction to 对……的反应

- withdraw from 从……撤退
- resign oneself to 使自己顺从于……
- be opposed to 反对
- in other words 换句话说
- in contrast to 和……对比;与……相反

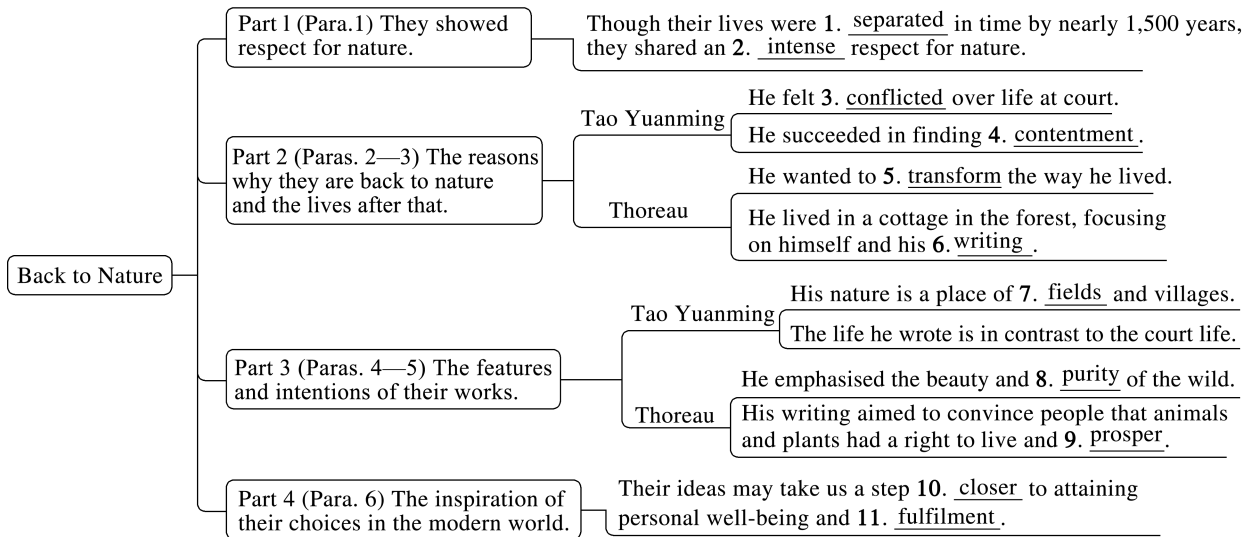
(二)阅读词汇

- superficially *adv.* 表面(上)地
- depart *v.* 离开
- lane *n.* (乡间的)小路
- atop *prep.* 在……顶上
- mulberry *n.* 桑葚;桑树
- cottage *n.* 乡村小屋
- domestic *adj.* 驯养的;家养的
- in return for 作为……的报答
- draw... from... 从……获得……
- at ease with 不拘束,放松
- for good 永久地;永远地

多维化析文

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What are the similarities between Tao Yuanming and Henry David Thoreau?
 - They both showed great respect for nature.
 - They both lived in the year 1500.
 - They were both officials in the government.
 - They both lived a simple life.

答案:A
- Why did Tao Yuanming go back to nature?
 - He wanted to work the land in the field.
 - He was rejected by the court.
 - He was opposed to the life at court.
 - He learned from Henry David Thoreau.

答案:C
- What's Henry David Thoreau's purpose in writing about nature?
 - To transform the way he lived.
 - To live on the edge of Walden Pond for about 2 years.
 - To make a personal decision.
 - To live in harmony with nature in the quietness of his life.

答案:D

- Which of the following statements describes the life of Tao Yuanming?
 - A beautiful life breathing the air, drinking the drink and tasting the fruit.
 - A calm and peaceful life with some chickens and dogs.
 - A peaceful life by a lake.
 - A life of quality but in a simpler way.

答案:B

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

Tao Yuanming and Henry David Thoreau were both 1. poets (poet), but one lived in Ancient China and the other in 19th century America. 2. Superficially (superficial), these two men, 3. whose lives were separated in time by nearly 1,500 years, were polar opposites. And yet they shared an intense respect 4. for nature, which made them each an influential figure of their time. Both men 5. made (make) dramatic transformations to their lives in order to reconnect with nature. While Tao's return to nature was a reaction to a lifestyle he was opposed to, Thoreau's was a personal decision to transform the way he lived. 6. Although Tao and

Thoreau do not treat nature in quite the same way, their works show its beauty and value. It takes considerable courage 7. to reject (reject) the easy and familiar and instead try to live 8. closer (close) to nature, as both Tao and Thoreau did. In today's modern world, their ideas about living simply and being at ease with nature may take us a step closer to 9. attaining (attain) personal well-being and 10. fulfilment (fulfil).

Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. In 405, he quit the service of the court for good, expressing his unhappiness in the now famous line that he would not “bow like a servant in return for five *dou* of grain”.

[句子分析]本句是一个简单句。expressing...是现在分词短语作状语,状语部分中有一个 that 引导的同位语从句,修饰先行词 famous line。

[尝试翻译]公元 405 年,他辞去了官职,以表达他的不满,用今天的一句名言形容就是“不为五斗米折腰”。

2. From his poetry, we can learn that although his

life was arduous, he succeeded in finding contentment in its simplicity and in drawing pleasure from nature.

[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。谓语动词 learn 后接 that 引导的宾语从句,宾语从句中 although 引导 让步状语从句,从句中的主句是 he succeeded...。

[尝试翻译]从他的诗歌中我们可以看出,虽然他的生活是艰苦的,但他成功地在简单的生活中找到了满足感,从自然中获得了快乐。

思维品质培养

Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. Why are their ideas important to our lives today?
Because in today's modern world, we still need to live harmoniously with nature, and live a simple life. Fewer material desires lead to better personal well-being and fulfilment.
2. What do you think about living in nature like Tao and Thoreau? Give your reasons.

略

课后素养评价(二十四)

I. 单词拼写

- In the botanical (植物的) garden we can find a variety of plants that range from tall trees to small flowers.
- He lived in a poor, rural (乡村的) area as a child and his writings are related to his life at that time.
- The old lady lived in the cottage (乡村小屋) at the foot of the mountain.
- History books do not tell us much about the domestic (家庭的) lives of our ancestors.
- You might feel strange when doing it, but try to bow (鞠躬) in Japan. You will be considered very polite!
- The new vaccine is being evaluated (评估) in clinical trials.
- Researchers found that women who exercised

regularly were reported to have about 50% fewer depressive (抑郁的) signs than women who didn't exercise as much.

- Parents who have books in the home increase the level of education their children will attain (获得).
- The lack of decent (相当好的) public transport is a great disadvantage.
- Chinese people regard the lotus as a symbol of purity (纯洁).

II. 短语填空

at ease with; in other words; in contrast to; in return for; focus on; draw... from...; devote... to...; withdraw from

1. There are many useful inferences that might be drawn from this research.

2. It's high time that we should devote ourselves to environmental protection and ecological improvement.
3. With five unexcused absences you will be withdrawn from the class.
4. She likes playing music. In other words, she will join the music club.
5. Listening to the soft music, the boy felt at ease with the communication with the psychologist.
6. With her attention focused on taking care of patients, she hardly has time to accompany her own child.
7. In return for your help, I invite you to spend the weekend with my family.
8. The stock (股票) lost 60 cents a share, in contrast to last year, when it gained 21 cents.

III. 完成句子

1. Would you like to explain the reason why you are opposed to our plan?
你能解释一下你为什么反对我们的计划吗?
2. Kate's reaction to the news suggests that she resigns herself to the fact that she will lose the job.
凯特对这个消息的反应表明她已经接受她将要失去这份工作的现实。
3. Widely employed in the teaching, the new method was popular with teachers and students.
这种新方法在教学中得到了广泛的应用,受到了师生的欢迎。
4. All night long he lay awake, thinking of the reason why she rejected his offer.
他整夜都躺着没睡着,思考着她为什么拒绝他的帮助。

IV. 七选五

Looking for a rewarding volunteering activity? Get outdoors and glean (拾落穗)! Picking fresh, healthy produce that is donated to food banks is a win-win activity. 1

Gleaning is not a new concept. In 18th-century England, there was a law that provided unharvested

crops should be given away to the poor. These days, there is a lot of produce that sits in the fields after harvest. 2 They will usually plant too much or will leave the produce that looks imperfect. Unfortunately, much of this produce would go unused in the field.

Gleaning offers farm-fresh, healthy food for people concerned about food security. That is where gleaners come in. Gleaning addresses farm waste and food poverty by providing free healthy food straight from farm to table. And today, with a cost of living crisis, there are more hungry people. 3 In 2017, there were five gleaning groups in the UK, while today there are 25.

Holly, head of the Cornwall Gleaning Group, said that her volunteers send around 300 boxes a week to food banks and community kitchens in her area. 4 "Any time I go gleaning, I am lifted up. For the volunteers, it's so good for mental health, getting outside and doing something practical that's good for the planet," Holly said.

5 To make this happen, more groups need to be established with farmers and more people need to volunteer their time to help. This form of helping may soon become common. It is rewarding for volunteers who harvest in the fields and it also offers fresh and nutritious food to those who need it the most.

- A. They find the work very delightful.
- B. Luckily, interest in gleaning is growing.
- C. Hopes are that awareness will continue to grow.
- D. And it is also gaining popularity across the globe.
- E. To assist the hungry people, more crops will be grown.
- F. This is due to overproduction on the part of the farmers.
- G. From farm to table, gleaning is often a worthless experience.

答案:1~5 DFBAC

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. After the performance, the actor gave a graceful **bow** to the audience. 鞠躬
2. He spoke with a heavy **rural** accent, which made us puzzled. 乡村的
3. He achieved his aim and got a **decent** job in the company. 相当好的
4. The famous model **withdrew** from fashion and took up writing. 退出
5. I hope I can live in a beautiful country **cottage**, with roses around the door. 乡间小屋
6. These **domestic** birds may not adapt to living in the wild. 家养的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| <u>depressive</u> <i>adj.</i> 抑郁的 | depress <i>v.</i> 使抑郁;使沮丧;使萧条 |
| | depression <i>n.</i> 抑郁症;沮丧;不景气,萧条期 |
| <u>deliberately</u> <i>adv.</i> 不慌不忙地,从容不迫地 | deliberate <i>adj.</i> 不慌不忙的,从容不迫的 |
| | deliberation <i>n.</i> 从容,谨慎 |
| <u>reluctant</u> <i>adj.</i> 不情愿的;勉强的 | reluctantly <i>adv.</i> 不情愿地;勉强地 |
| | reluctance <i>n.</i> 不情愿;勉强 |
| <u>evaluate</u> <i>v.</i> 评估,评价 | evaluation <i>n.</i> 评估,评价 |
| <u>attain</u> <i>v.</i> 得到,获得 | attainment <i>n.</i> 获得,达到;成就,造诣 |
| | attainable <i>adj.</i> 可达到的;可获得的 |
| <u>botanical</u> <i>adj.</i> 植物(学)的 | botany <i>n.</i> 植物学 |
| | botanist <i>n.</i> 植物学家 |

III. 补全短语

1. in return for 作为……的报答
2. draw... from ... 从……获得……
3. reaction to 对……的反应
4. resign oneself to 使自己顺从于……
5. at ease with 不拘束,放松
6. for good 永久地;永远地
7. be opposed to 反对
8. in other words 换句话说
9. seek solutions to 寻求……的解决方法

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:one... the other...

Tao Yuanming and Henry David Thoreau were both poets, but one lived in Ancient China and the other in 19th century America.

陶渊明和亨利·大卫·梭罗都是诗人,但一个生活在古代中国,另一个生活在19世纪的美国。

2. 句型公式:现在分词短语作伴随状语

... he lived in a cottage in the forest on the edge of Walden Pond, focusing on himself and his writing.

……他住在瓦尔登湖边森林中的一间小屋里,专注于自己和自己的写作。

3. 句型公式:that引导同位语从句

In 405, he quit the service of the court for good, expressing his unhappiness in the now famous line that he would not “bow like a servant in return for five dou of grain”.

公元405年,他辞去了官职,以表达他的不满,用今天的一句名言形容就是“不为五斗米折腰”。

任务型课堂

1. depressive adj. 抑郁的

[教材原文] The calm and peaceful life he wrote about is in contrast to and critical of the **depressive** court life...

他所写到的平静安宁的生活与压抑的朝堂生活形成了鲜明的对比, 是对压抑的官场生活的批判……

[归纳拓展]

(1) depress v. 使抑郁; 使沮丧; 使萧条

(2) depressing adj. 令人抑郁的, 令人沮丧的, 令人消沉的

(3) depressed adj. 意志消沉的, 沮丧的

be/feel depressed about 对……感到沮丧

(4) depression n. 抑郁症; 沮丧; 不景气, 萧条期

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① On hearing the depressing news, he felt depressed and soon got into a state of depression. (depress)

② They are fearful of another business depression (depress).

③ Your thoughts are negative, which furthers the depressive (depress) mood.

④ She's been very depressed (depress) and upset about this whole situation.

2. resign v. 使自己顺从于(做)某事; 安于; 辞职

[教材原文] *Live in each season as it passes; breathe the air, drink the drink, taste the fruit, and **resign** yourself to the influences of each.*

好好度过每一个季节, 呼吸新鲜的空气, 畅饮美酒, 品尝水果, 尽情享受这一切。

[归纳拓展]

(1) resign oneself to 使自己顺从于……

resign from 从……辞职

(2) resignation n. 辞职; 顺从

a letter of resignation 辞职信

hand in/offer one's resignation 呈递/上交辞职书

with resignation 安于现状; 听天由命

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Will you resign from the company if they ask you to?

② They accepted their defeat with resignation (resign).

(2) 句式升级

After he had resigned from the factory, he went to a larger city.

→ Having resigned from the factory, he went to a larger city. (现在分词短语作状语)

3. ease n. 舒适, 悠闲 v. (使)宽慰; 减轻; 缓解

[教材原文] In today's modern world, their ideas about living simply and being at **ease** with nature may take us a step closer to attaining personal well-being and fulfilment.

在今天的现代世界, 他们关于简单生活和与自然和谐相处的思想可能会让我们离获得个人幸福和满足感更近一步。

[归纳拓展]

(1) at ease with 和……一起时感到不拘束, 放松 with ease 轻易地

put/set... at ease 使……感到舒适

live a life of ease 过着安逸/无忧无虑的生活

(2) ease one's mind 使某人放心

[即学即练]

完成句子

① I am happy to be here and I find myself at ease with life very much here.

我很高兴来到这里, 并且我觉得这里的生活也很轻松。

② It would ease my mind to know that she was settled.

知道她已安顿下来会使我放心些。

4. that 引导同位语从句

[教材原文] In 405, he quit the service of the court for good, expressing his unhappiness in the now famous line **that** he would not "bow like a servant in return for five *dou* of grain".

公元 405 年, 他辞去了官职, 以表达他的不满, 用今天的一句名言形容就是“不为五斗米折腰”。

[归纳拓展]

(1) that 引导同位语从句, 只起连接作用, 无具体词义, 不可省略。可以接同位语从句的名词通常有 news, idea, fact, promise, question, doubt, thought, hope, message, suggestion, word (消息), possibility 等。

(2) 在某些名词 (如 demand, wish, suggestion, resolution 等) 后面的同位语从句要用虚拟语气, 即从句中的谓语动词形式用 “should + 动词原形”, should 可以省略。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① He made the suggestion that they (should) carry (carry) on their discussion in English.
② The possibility that there is life on other planets in the universe has always inspired

scientists to explore outer space.

(2) 判断下面句子中黑体部分的从句类型

- ① The news **that he gave it up** surprised us. 同位语从句
② The news **that he told me** surprised us. 定语从句

多义词汇专练

1. When he selects news of the other kind, he usually **withdraws** from the world of threatening reality towards the dream world. A
A. v. 退出 B. v. 取(款) C. v. 停止提供
2. Dr Rowan, whose secretary **resigned** two weeks ago, has had to do all his own typing. B
A. v. 使自己顺从于(做)某事 B. v. 辞职
3. **reject**: A. v. 不用, 不出版 B. v. 拒收, 不录用 C. v. 拒绝接受
① Imperfect articles are **rejected** by our quality control. A
② He **rejected** the suggestions his assistant had given. C
③ To his sadness, they **rejected** his application for membership. B
4. With that, I spent eight to ten hours a day with Joe in the hospital, doing anything and everything I could to **ease** his discomfort. B
A. v. 使……容易些 B. v. 减轻, 缓解 C. v. 降低

写作探究

从自然中得到的启示

「写作指导」

(一) 文体

此类文章属于夹叙夹议类小短文。写作通常只需包含“谁?”“干了什么事?”“结果如何?”等, 然后再谈谈从这次经历中得出了什么经验教训。需要注意的是:

1. 在时态上, 叙事多用一般过去时, 看法和感受多用一般现在时; 在人称上, 多以第一人称和第三人称为主;
2. 注意叙事的衔接性, 常见的衔接词有 (just) then, after (that), when, as soon as 等。

(二) 基本框架

第一部分: 简要叙述该事件;
第二部分: 从该事件中得到的感想和教训;
第三部分: 结合实际生活, 谈谈在实际生活中如何运用该经验。

「典题示例」

阅读下面短文, 谈谈该故事给你的启示。词数应不少于 120。

On a sunny day a shepherd (牧羊人) walked with his two hungry sheep along a winding country path. He managed to have them two tied to each other just in case they should go separated. It was quite a long time before they arrived at a place where there was merely a small amount of fresh grass on each side of the path. Both of the sheep were so hungry that they hurried to the grass but in the separated direction. Unfortunately the rope fastening them was not long enough. No matter how hard they struggled, neither was able to reach the grass in front of them.

The shepherd was about to help them when he was surprised to find that one of them should voluntarily abandon the struggle, and went along with the other. Consequently, together the two sheep enjoyed the fresh grass on one side happily, and then the grass on the other.

Step 1: 审题谋篇

| | |
|----|---|
| 文体 | 夹叙夹议文 |
| 时态 | 以一般现在时为主 |
| 人称 | 以第一、三人称为主 |
| 要点 | 1. 描述自然界中的现象 2. 该现象给我们的启示或道理 3. 如何将获得的启示或道理运用到生活中 |

Step 2: 要点补全

- ①It tells readers a story about two sheep (给读者讲述了两只羊的故事).
- ②They choose cooperation rather than competition (选择合作而不是竞争) in order to have access to the fresh grass (能吃到新鲜的草) of different sides.
- ③As a matter of fact/In fact (事实上), the fable mirrors that different attitudes may bring about different results (带来不同的结果).
- ④As an old saying goes (俗话说), unity means power.
- ⑤A chopstick breaks easily (容易折断).
- ⑥A bunch of them does not break easily (难折断).
- ⑦Cooperation is therefore the best policy in any case (因此在任何情况下都是最好的策略) because it can lead to a win-win situation.
- ⑧Both sides can gain benefit by virtue of joint efforts (凭借共同努力获得益处).
- ⑨In my daily life, I often cooperate with my classmates when playing basketball, taking part in running races (参加赛跑比赛) or going in for community-service activities (参加社区服务活动).
- ⑩I learn a lot from my classmates and friends by following their advice (通过听取他们的建议).
- ⑪Meanwhile, I also do my part to help them in return (帮助他们以此作为回报).
- ⑫Teamwork helps us secure numerous victories (确保无数次胜利).

Step 3: 句式升级

- ①用“介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句连接 Step 2 中的①②两句。
- It tells readers a story about two sheep, both of

whom choose cooperation rather than competition in order to have access to the fresh grass of different sides.

②用 while 连接 Step 2 中的⑤⑥两句。

A chopstick breaks easily, while a bunch of them does not.

③用 where 引导的定语从句连接 Step 2 中的⑦⑧两句。

Cooperation is therefore the best policy in any case because it can lead to a win-win situation, where both sides can gain benefit by virtue of joint efforts.

④用强调句型升级 Step 2 中的⑫句。

It is teamwork that helps us secure numerous victories.

Step 4: 连句成篇

It tells readers a story about two sheep, both of whom choose cooperation rather than competition in order to have access to the fresh grass of different sides.

As a matter of fact, the fable mirrors that different attitudes may bring about different results. As an old saying goes, unity means power. A chopstick breaks easily, while a bunch of them does not. Cooperation is therefore the best policy in any case because it can lead to a win-win situation, where both sides can gain benefit by virtue of joint efforts.

In my daily life, I often cooperate with my classmates when playing basketball, taking part in running races or going in for community-service activities. I learn a lot from my classmates and friends by following their advice. Meanwhile, I also do my part to help them in return. It is teamwork that helps us secure numerous victories.

「学以致用」

阅读下面短文,谈谈海狸修水坝的故事给你的启示。词数应不少于 120。

Most people think it's fine to be “busy as a beaver (海狸)”. But actually, although beavers may work hard, often they don't get much done.

Beavers are good at building dams and most

beaver dams are wonders of engineering. The best ones are strongly built of trees, stones, and mud. They are wide at the bottom and narrow at the top.

Beavers think nothing of building a dam more than two hundred feet long. One dam, in Montana, was more than two thousand feet long. The largest one ever seen was in New Hampshire. It stretched for four thousand feet. It made a lake large enough to hold forty beaver homes.

So beavers do build good dams. But they don't always build them in the right places. They just don't plan. They will build a dam across the widest part of the stream. They don't try to find a place where the stream is narrow. So a lot of their hard work is wasted.

Beavers should learn that it's not enough to be busy. You have to know what you're doing, too. For example, there was one Oregon beaver that really was a worker. It decided to fix a hole in a man-made dam. After five days of work it gave up. The hole it was trying to fill was the space that boats go through.

【参考范文】

Beavers are very diligent dam-builders who can build extremely good dams. However, they

sometimes don't know where to build the dams or which dams should be fixed only because they have no consciousness to make a plan.

The beavers' story illustrates the importance of planning. Without a plan the best intentions and efforts will not produce results. We shouldn't work blindly but have a clear idea of our purpose, the actions needed to achieve it, and how these should be ordered.

As a high school student, I achieved considerable success in learning English through the combination of hard work and planning. I prepared good materials with the help of my teacher, made plans for my daily study and self-monitored the whole process of my learning. I made rapid progress and became very confident. I think I couldn't have done it without a good plan.

Diligence is a key to success, but in my opinion, a good plan is also essential. Through planning, we can develop clear goals, find more efficient and effective methods and thus have more opportunities to reach our goals than through hard work alone.

课后素养评价(二十五)

I. 单句语法填空

1. According to the survey, people's reaction to the new film varies greatly.
2. We need to carry out a proper evaluation (evaluate) of the new system.
3. In other words, he must stop smoking for his health.
4. The volunteers' job is to have a chat with the depressive (depress) children to cheer them up.
5. As we all know, white is the symbol of purity (pure).
6. As a reward for his contribution to botany (botanical), Joseph Banks had a flower named after him.

7. Online networks, in contrast to the old kind, are open to all and easy to join.
8. One of the educational objectives of school is to attain (attain) a balanced development of students.
9. In return for your kindness, I would like to invite you to dinner.
10. I won't go to the party because I don't feel at ease with those people.

II. 完成句子

1. There's plenty of rain in the southeast, while there's little in the northwest.
东南部雨量充足,而西北部则很少下雨。
2. Most of the members of the football club were

opposed to cutting the number of the staff just now.

这个足球俱乐部的大多数成员刚才都反对裁员。

3. The most universal facial expression is, of course, the smile—its function is to show happiness and put/set people at ease.

最通用的面部表情当然是微笑——其作用是表示快乐和使人感到自在。

4. In front of the pine trees lives a family, whose members are always friendly to their neighbours.

在松树前住着一家人,其家庭成员对邻居总是很友好。

5. You must resign yourselves to waiting a bit longer.

你们必须再多等一会儿。

III. 语法填空

Austria's Vorarlberg is a pioneer in sustainable design, **1. attracting** (attract) lots of architects and curious visitors who draw inspiration from its breathtaking buildings.

Communities in the westernmost state of the Alpine county **2. have chosen** (choose) beauty, comfort and a careful use of resources since the 1960s. There is a **3. preference** (prefer) for local building materials: white pine and earth replace concrete whenever possible. Architecture in Vorarlberg is described as the clear, compact and functional design, **4. but** it does not cut corners on aesthetics (美学). As well as architects, the carpenters and craftspeople in Vorarlberg enjoy great international recognition and **5. are** (be) in high demand.

Economy is a guiding principle of the “Vorarlberg school”, **6. which** does not prevent them from using prefabricated (预制的) parts **7. to reduce** (reduce) costs—and prioritises (优先) energy efficiency. A lot of houses **8. are built** (build) to “passive house” standards, which stand for buildings with minimal energy needs due to perfected insulation (绝缘), specific ventilation (通风), and the equipment of solar panels and heat pumps.

“**9. What** I'm most proud of is that people are united by a common sense,” said Arnold Hirschbuehl, a former mayor of Krumbach who championed the architecture. He praised the way people used “resources in **10. the** most sustainable way possible, while staying true to themselves”.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你校新增了一个“亲近绿色农场”的课外活动。请你用英语给你们班来自英国的交换生 Peter 写一封电子邮件,邀请他参加。要点包括:

1. 写邮件的目的;
2. 活动的意义;
3. 期待回复。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考词汇:课外活动 extracurricular activity

【参考范文】

Dear Peter,

I'm writing to invite you to participate in an extracurricular activity that will start soon in our school.

It's to work on a small farm where students can grow flowers and vegetables. When you work on it after class, you will not only experience the pleasure of staying close to nature but also enjoy the rewards of your hard work in future. Besides, with more chances to communicate with Chinese students, you can improve your oral Chinese and also make some good friends. I am planning to join in it, hoping that we can work together on the farm.

I am looking forward to your reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Jenny was the only child in her home. She had a quarrel with her mother that afternoon and she ran out of the house angrily. She couldn't help weeping sorrowfully when she thought of the scolding from her mother. Having wandered aimlessly in the street

for hours, she felt a little hungry and wished for something to eat, but it was not possible for her, since she had nothing with her. She stood beside a stand for a while, watching the middle-aged seller busy doing his business. However, with no money in hand, she sighed and had to leave.

The seller behind the stand noticed the young girl and asked, "Hey, girl, do you want to have the noodles?"

"Oh, yes... but I don't have money on me..." she replied.

"That's nothing. I'll treat you today," said the man. "Come in."

The seller brought her a bowl of noodles, whose smell was so attractive. As she was eating, Jenny cried silently.

"What is it?" asked the man kindly.

"Nothing, actually I was just touched by your kindness!" said Jenny as she wiped her tears.

"Even a stranger on the street will give me a bowl of noodles, while my mother drove me out of the house. She showed no care for me. She is so merciless compared to a stranger!"

Hearing the words, the seller smiled, "Girl, do you really think so? I only gave you a bowl of noodles and you thanked me a lot. But it is your mother who has raised you since you were a baby. Can you number the times she cooked for you? Have you expressed your gratitude to her?"

Jenny sat there, speechless and numb with

shock; she remembered her mother's familiar face and weathered hands. "Why did I not think of that? A bowl of noodles from a stranger made me feel indebted, but I have never thanked my mum for what she has done for me."

On the way home, Jenny made up her mind to make an apology to her mother for her rudeness as soon as she arrived home.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

Approaching the doorway, Jenny took a deep breath. When she knocked at the door, she found the door was locked and her mother was not in. Tired and sad, she sat down in front of the house. "Where could my mother be?" she wondered. "Was she still angry with me?" Again, the scene of the quarrel appeared in her mind. She remembered her rudeness to her mother. Realising that all the scolding from her mother was due to the fact that her mother really cared a lot about her, she felt rather ashamed, but tears began to roll down her cheeks.

A gentle touch on her hair called her mind back. She raised her head and saw the familiar face of her mother. "Here you come! I've been looking for you," she said, tired but relieved. Jenny couldn't help throwing herself into her mother's arms. "Mum, I'm so sorry and thank you for all you have done for me." She expressed her sincere apology and great gratitude. Hearing this, her mother smiled patting her back gently.

读后续写技能养成

如何营造故事高潮

「技能概述」

1. 营造故事高潮:多数故事都有冲突和高潮。冲突是人物之间的矛盾,高潮是最扣人心弦的冲突部分。根据续写给文中的原有冲突增加最有紧迫感的冲突就能营造故事高潮。
2. 续写技巧:根据人物角色之间或人物与环境之间的原有矛盾设计新的冲突。设计冲突时,可以是“力

量均衡”的冲突,也可以是一方力量大于另一方力量的部分冲突,还可以是放大角色的内心冲突或增大环境的恶劣程度,从而增强故事的高潮感。

「范例体悟」

(2022·新高考 I 卷续写)续写给文中的人物冲突:大卫刻苦训练准备参加比赛与害怕被别的同学嘲笑之间的冲突。以下为冲突和高潮设计:

(第一段) *We sat down next to each other, but David wouldn't look at me. He dropped his head spiritlessly and seemed to be crying. "You know the team needs you, don't you, David?" my words broke the silence. ...*

(第二段) *I watched as David moved up to the starting line with the other runners. The starting gun fired, and they were off. All the runners contested for the lead, just with David struggling to keep up. Unluckily, he tripped and fell. Without hesitation, he picked himself up and plodded on after the others into the forest trail. ...*

写出文中高潮设计的合理性:

作者根据续写给文中的冲突设计了“劝说大卫参赛与大卫跑步中摔倒”之间的冲突。这个冲突可以看作是故事的高潮,这符合故事发展的常规逻辑和人们的正常思维。

「 词句储备 」

I. 好词积累

1. comfort *v.* 安慰
2. worry *v.* 担心
3. pat *v.* 轻拍
4. persuade *v.* 劝说
5. pursue *v.* 追求
6. believe *v.* 相信
7. sink *v.* 下沉
8. laugh at 嘲笑
9. fall down 摔倒
10. be left behind 落后
11. catch no sight of 没看见
12. turn up/show up 出现
13. to the best of one's ability 竭尽全力

II. 佳句背诵

1. "You don't want to give up, do you?" I asked in a soft voice.
“你不想放弃,是吗?”我轻声问道。
2. I held his hands tightly, "Just look at my eyes. Trust me!"

我紧紧握住他的手,“看着我的眼睛。相信我!”

3. He nodded with tears in his eyes but still hesitated.

他虽然含着泪点了点头,但仍然犹豫不决。

4. After the first person crossed the line, lots of other runners also finished their running. But no David.

在第一个冲过终点线后,许多其他的跑步者也跑完了全程。但没有大卫。

5. Seeing their frustrated faces, he told them to clean up the kitchen while he helped them make breakfast for Mother.

看到他们沮丧的表情,他让他们把厨房打扫干净,自己帮他们给妈妈做早餐。

「 技能达标 」

I. 完成句子

1. I was a bit excited when suddenly a shadowy figure fell over.
我正有点兴奋,突然一个模糊的身影倒下了。
2. It seemed as if something unpleasant happened.
好像发生了什么不愉快的事。
3. My parents had intended to buy a new truck but couldn't afford it.
我父母本来打算买一辆新卡车,但买不起。
4. My heart raced wildly, not knowing what to do.
我的心狂跳,不知道该怎么办。

II. 用营造故事高潮技巧完成语段

(第二段) *We had no idea where we were and it got dark. We got stuck in the forest. 1. (营造困难加重的高潮) And an unexpected shower added to the difficulty of us in finding a way home, for all the tracks we had made disappeared because of the rain. I was almost on the edge of breaking down when my father said, 2. (写出解决冲突的方案) "Don't worry, my son. I remember there is a river near the farm house. Find the river and we will be back home."* Finally, we found the river and got back to the house along it. Needless to say, we ate a late dinner.

Unit 6 Nature in words

主题语境

人与自然——文学中的自然

| | |
|--------|--|
| 必背单词 | weekly, inspector, insist, shaving, prospect, bend, church, rhyme, innocent, enhance, wheat, gentle, sweep, ban, chorus, dozen, thorough, precise, launch, reputation, elegance, passionate, diamond |
| 重点表达 | break out, come around, talk away, cause harm to, urge... to do, be a target for, stand by |
| 重点知识 | 1. as if/as though 引导表语从句 2. 形容词作状语 |
| 单元语法 | 非谓语动词作定语、补语、状语 |
| 单元写作 | 诗歌 |
| 主题美文赏读 | <p>Begin by opening your eyes and be surprised that you have eyes you can open, that incredible array of colours that is constantly offered to us for pure enjoyment.</p> <p>Look at the sky. We so rarely look at the sky. We so rarely note how different it is from moment to moment, with clouds coming and going. We just think of the weather, and even with the weather, we don't think of all the many nuances of weather. We just think of good weather and bad weather. This day, right now, has unique weather, maybe a kind that will never exactly in that form come again. That formation of clouds in the sky will never be the same that is right now. Open your eyes. Look at that.</p> <p>首先睁开你的眼睛,然后为你可以睁开眼睛,以及那不可思议的颜色阵列不断提供给我们纯粹的享受而惊讶吧。</p> <p>看看天空。我们很少看天空。我们很少注意云彩来来去去,每时每刻都有多么不同。我们只关心天气,而且即使是天气,我们也不会关注天气的所有细微差别。我们只关心天气是好是坏。今天,此时此刻,有着独特的天气,也许是一种永远不会再出现的天气。天空中云的组成再也不会和现在一样。睁开你的眼睛。看看那个。</p> |

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

- 1. insist *v.* 坚称, 坚决认为
- 2. innocent *adj.* 天真无邪的
- 3. enhance *v.* 改进; 增强
- 4. weekly *adj.* 一周一次的, 每周的
- 5. inspector *n.* 检查员, 巡视员
- 6. prospect *n.* 开阔的景观, 景色
- 7. bend *v.* 变弯曲
- 8. church *n.* 教堂
- 9. rhyme *n.* 儿歌, 童谣
- 10. transform... into... 把……转变成……
- 11. turn... into... 把……变成……

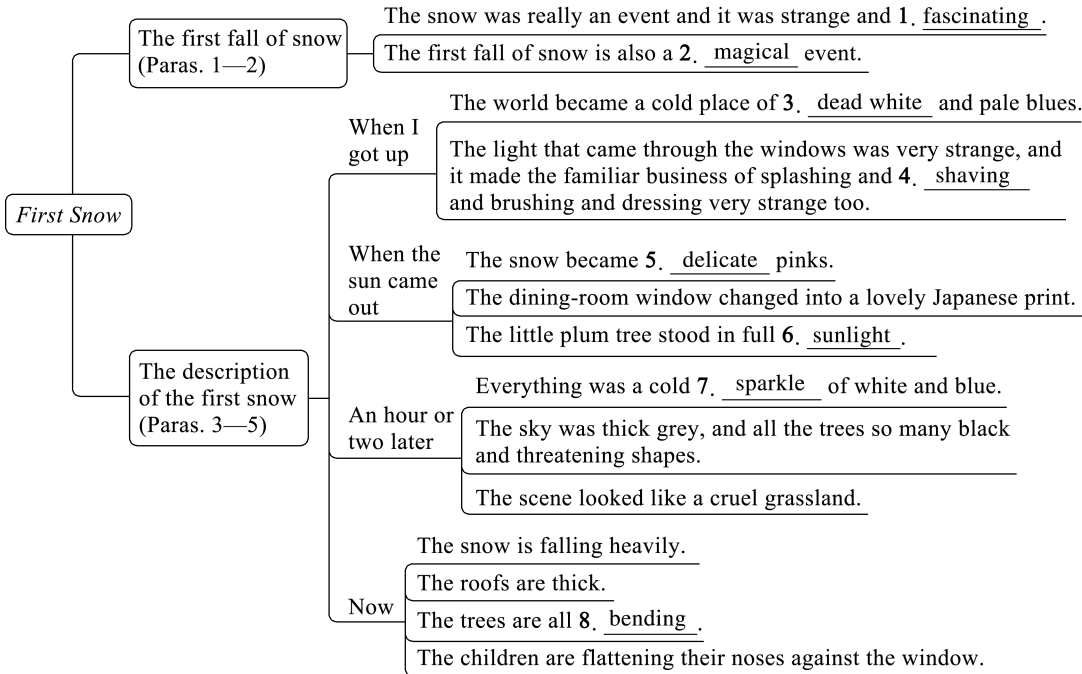
(二)阅读词汇

- 1. secrecy *n.* 保密, 秘密状态
- 2. shaving *n.* 刮胡子
- 3. faintly *adv.* 微弱地; 模糊地
- 4. dispose *v.* 排列, 布置
- 5. sparkle *n.* 闪耀, 闪光
- 6. feather *n.* 羽毛
- 7. goose *n.* 鹅
- 8. flush *v.* (使)发红
- 9. plum *n.* 李子; 梅子
- 10. redden *v.* (使)变红
- 11. talk away 不断地谈; 在谈话中度过
- 12. early on 在初期

多维化析文

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- 1. Why did the writer think it is a different age?
A. Because Mr Robert Lynd said a fall of snow

- was an event.
- B. Because it seemed as if Christmas had suddenly come round again.
- C. Because he didn't see a fall of snow for a long time.

D. Because he never saw so heavy a fall of snow before.

答案:C

2. How did the writer find the first fall of snow here?

- A. Magical. B. Quiet.
C. Strange. D. Common.

答案:A

3. What happened to the dining-room window?

- A. It was flushed with delicate pinks.
B. It became a lovely Japanese print.
C. It was covered by the faintly flushed snow.
D. It was artfully disposed in full sunlight.

答案:B

4. What made the writer hardly see the whole shallow valley clearly?

- A. The grey sky.
B. The falling flakes.
C. The bending trees.
D. The white and blue light.

答案:B

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

Last night's snow was not only an event but also a magical event. I was as excited about it **1. as** the children, whom I found all looking through the window at the magic outside and talking away **2. excitedly** (excite). This morning, the light **3. coming** (come) through the windows was very strange, **4. which** made the familiar business very strange too. By the time I **5. had sat** (sit) down to breakfast, the sun was shining bravely and flushing the snow with delicate pinks. The dining-room window had been transformed **6. into** a lovely Japanese print. An hour or two **7. later** (late) everything was a cold sparkle of white and blue. The little Japanese prints had all disappeared. The sky was thick grey and all the trees had so many black and threatening shapes. **8. It** seemed that a body of horsemen might be seen breaking out from the black trees. Now, the snow is falling heavily, so that you can hardly see across the shallow valley, and the **9. roofs** (roof) are thick and the trees all bending. At this time, there is running through my head a rhyme I used to repeat when I was a child and flattened my nose against the cold window **10. to watch** (watch) the falling snow.

Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. I was nearly as excited about it this morning as the children, whom I found all looking through the window at the magic outside and talking away as excitedly as if Christmas had suddenly come round again.

[句子分析] 句中 whom I found all looking through the window... 为 whom 引导的非限制性定语从句, 修饰先行词 children; as if Christmas had suddenly come round again 为 as if 引导的方式状语从句。

[尝试翻译] 今天早上我几乎和孩子们一样兴奋, 我发现他们都透过窗户望着外面奇妙的世界, 兴奋地说个不停, 好像圣诞节又突然来临了。

2. It is the first fall we have had here this winter, and last year I was out of the country, sweating in a hot climate, during the snowy season, so that it really does seem an age since I saw the ground so fantastically carpeted.

[句子分析] 句中 and 连接两个表示顺承关系的并列分句, 第一个分句中 we have had here this winter 为省略关系代词的定语从句, 修饰先行词 fall, 第二个分句中 so that it really does seem an age 为 so that 引导的结果状语从句, since I saw the ground so fantastically carpeted 为 since 引导的时间状语从句。

[尝试翻译] 这是今年冬天我们这里的第一场降雪, 去年雪季, 我身在异国, 在炎热的天气里汗流不止, 所以我确实很长一段时间没有欣赏到这银装素裹的世界了。

思维品质培养

Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. Why does the author mention Jane Austen at the beginning of the passage?

By referencing the characters of Jane Austen, who is known for her witty, perceptive observations of early 19th century English country life, the author is emphasising the irony and self-awareness with which he goes on to make his statement about the first snow.

2. What images does the author use to enhance the description of snow?

Images used by the author to enhance the description of snow: a cold place of dead white and pale blues, flushing the snow with delicate pinks, a cold sparkle of white and blue, falling heavily, in great soft flakes...

课后素养评价(二十六)

I. 阅读理解

The quote “Travel far enough, you meet yourself.” by English author David Mitchell may seem cryptic (含义隐晦的) and silly to many. But if you reflect on the meaning of this statement there’s actually something very deep about it.

The more experiences you have in life, the more you will find yourself diverging out (分歧) into new and different places, both physically and mentally. If you travel far enough, you will eventually find yourself back at the same place you started from, but your mind will be stretched by all of your journeys along the way. There are a few different ways we can interpret a phrase like travelling far enough. If you think about it literally, there is probably some amount of distance that we need to go. In doing so when we get to our destination, we will see everything with new eyes.

We may be surprised by what we see and change our outlook on life. This interpretation could apply to how people interact in their everyday lives. People have prejudices, stereotypes (刻板印象) and judgments towards other people based on where they live or grew up. When we travel outside those communities or countries, we learn to appreciate those differences rather than hold them against others.

Another interpretation is one that focuses on feeling confident and comfortable with ourselves while being far away from where we normally hang out and spend time, at home or work. It’s easy to get on a track where we see our habits and routine as comforting. But it’s important that we push our boundaries if we are ever going to make any kind of progress in life.

So take a leap into unknown territory. Explore places that you haven’t been to before. You can change your viewpoint and gain some perspectives on who you are as a person.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章解读了作家 David Mitchell 的一句名言,认为旅行可以改变我们对生活的看法,抛弃固有的偏见,懂得欣赏差异;旅行还可以让我们突破自己的界限,取得生活上的进步。因此作者鼓励我们去探索未知的领域。

1. What does the author think of “Travel far enough, you meet yourself.”?

- A. Stupid. B. Confusing.
C. Negotiable. D. Logical.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“‘But if you reflect on the meaning of this statement there’s actually something very deep about it.’可知,作者认为这句名言实际上有很深的含义。由此可知,作者认为它是合情合理的。故选 D。

2. What can be concluded from the literal sense of the quote?

- A. Travelling can make us more open.
B. We can discover true selves in travelling.
C. Travelling far enough changes who we are.
D. We should avoid judging others while travelling.

A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“‘If you think about it literally, there is probably some amount of distance that we need to go. In doing so when we get to our destination, we will see everything with new eyes.’可知,从字面意义去理解这句名言,旅行会让我们用全新的眼光看待事物。由此可知,旅行可以使我们更加开放。故选 A。

3. What should we do to make progress in life according to Paragraph 4?

- A. Travel to far places.
B. Expand our comfort zone.
C. Focus on positive feelings.
D. Quit old habits and routines.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“‘It’s easy to get on a track where we see our habits and routine as comforting. But it’s important that we push our boundaries if we are ever going to make any kind of progress in life.’可知,想要在生活中取得进步,我们应该突破界限,抛弃旧的习惯和常规。故选 D。

4. What might be the best title for the text?

- A. How Can We Walk out of Our Comfort Zone?
B. How Do We Change Our Mindset and Feel Comfortable?
C. What Does Travelling Alone Teach Us About Ourselves?
D. What Does “Travel Far Enough, You Meet Yourself” Mean?

D 标题归纳题。通读全文可知,文章围绕作家 David Mitchell 的一句名言展开,具体分析了解两种解读——一种认为旅行可以改变我们对生活的看法,抛弃固有的偏见,懂得欣赏差异;另一种认为旅行可以让我们突破自己的界限,取得生活上的进步,由此作者鼓励我们去探索未知的领域。因此,D项“走得足

够远,你会见到自己'是什么意思?"突出了主题,符合文章大意,适合作为标题。故选D。

II. 七选五

Work, family and world events can be so stressful that it feels like optimism and joy are far out of reach. Anyone can get stuck in a bad mood—but you don't have to stay there! 1

Once you're in a mood you need to shake, start by going to your happy place. 2 If not, keep a photo on your phone or computer of a beautiful, favourite place and take a moment to imagine yourself there. What's the weather like? What does the air smell like? What are you doing while you're there? How does being there make you feel? You'll instantly feel calmer, lost in the daydream or the memory of your happy place.

We can make our situations worse by keeping thinking about negative thoughts. 3 "Bad things always happen to me," becomes "What lesson can I learn from this situation?" "I wasted the whole day," becomes "I still have 5 more hours left to make today a great day!"

Whether it is going for a coffee at your favourite

café, or catching a movie in the theatre, make sure that once a week you schedule some "me" time. 4 That may mean getting less done during the day, but you deserve to take a mental break, regularly. So give priority to the time you need to recharge.

5 Whether it's the rare bit of easy traffic on your way to work or the break in the weather, you won't have time to complain about the negative things because you're so busy being grateful.

- A. You can also volunteer at your local shelter.
- B. It helps focus on the present and clear your mind.
- C. Thankfully, there are ways you can get back on track.
- D. If you're able, get into nature and breathe the fresh air.
- E. Relieve your stress and refresh your mind, body and spirit.
- F. When a negative thought flashes, replace it with a positive one.
- G. When a negative attitude takes over, shake it off by practising gratitude.

答案:1~5 CDFEG

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. The **prospect** from the balcony was breathtaking. 景色
- 2. The branch **bent** but didn't break when the boy climbed along it. 变弯曲
- 3. The peacock displayed its fine tail **feather**. 羽毛
- 4. Young children often learn nursery **rhymes**. 儿歌,童谣
- 5. The two halves of the town face each other, and both have interesting **churches**. 教堂

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| | inspect <i>v.</i> 检查 |
| inspector <i>n.</i> 检查员,巡视员 | inspection <i>n.</i> 检查;检阅 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| | secret <i>adj.</i> 秘密的 <i>n.</i> 秘密 |
| secrecy <i>n.</i> 保密,秘密状态 | secretary <i>n.</i> 秘书 |
| shaving <i>n.</i> 刮胡子 | shave <i>v.</i> 剃(须发);(尤指)刮脸 |
| glare <i>n.</i> 刺眼的强光 | glaring <i>adj.</i> 耀眼的;明显的 |
| innocent <i>adj.</i> 天真无邪的 | innocence <i>n.</i> 清白;无辜;无罪;天真 |
| enhance <i>v.</i> 改进;增强 | enhancement <i>n.</i> 改进;增强;提高 |
| insist <i>v.</i> 坚称,坚决认为 | insistence <i>n.</i> 坚称,坚决认为 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. come round 拜访;发生;苏醒

2. come out 出现;显露
3. break out (战争、火灾等)爆发
4. transform... into ... 把……转变成……
5. on and on 不断地
6. talk away 不断地谈;在谈话中度过
7. turn... into ... 把……变成……
8. as if 仿佛;好像
9. early on 在初期
10. at the risk of 冒着……的风险

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:as if 引导表语从句

It was as if our kindly countryside, close to the very heart of England, had been turned into a cruel grassland.

就好像我们这个靠近英格兰中心位置的亲切小乡村变成了暴躁的草原。

2. 句型公式:“in+关系代词”引导定语从句

They are people in whose lives a slight fall of

snow is an event.

在他们的生活中,一场小雪就是一件大事。

3. 句型公式:whom 引导定语从句

I was nearly as excited about it this morning as the children, whom I found all looking through the window at the magic outside and talking away as excitedly as if Christmas had suddenly come round again.

今天早上我几乎和孩子们一样兴奋,我发现他们都透过窗户望着外面奇妙的世界,兴奋地说个不停,好像圣诞节又突然来临了。

4. 句型公式:by the time 引导时间状语从句

Then the sun came out, and by the time I had sat down to breakfast it was shining bravely and flushing the snow with delicate pinks.

接着太阳出来了,等到我坐下来吃早饭的时候,太阳的光彩已是绚烂夺目,给雪地添了一抹柔和的粉红色。

任务型课堂

1. inspector n. 检查员,巡视员

[教材原文]... but is best remembered for his play *An Inspector Calls*.

……但是最令人难忘的是他的戏剧《探长来访》。

[归纳拓展]

(1)inspect v. 检查;视察;检阅

inspect sth./sb. for sth. 因某事检查某事/某人

(2)inspection n. 检查;视察;检阅

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

①The police will inspect the venue (会场) for safety.

②The manager told me that these machines were inspected (inspect) twice daily by some experienced workers.

③It is said that an inspector will come to inspect our school, and he will judge our school according to his inspection. (inspect)

2. insist v. 坚称,坚决认为

[教材原文]... I must insist that last night's fall of snow here was an event.

……我也必须坚持认为昨晚这里的降雪是件大事。

[归纳拓展]

(1)insist on/upon (doing) sth. 坚持要求(做)某事
insist that... (should) do... 坚持要求……做某事(虚拟语气)

insist that... 坚持说,坚持认为(真实语气)

(2)insistence n. 坚持;强调;坚决主张

at one's insistence 在某人的坚持下

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①She insisted on/upon seeing the manager as soon as possible.

②Although Tom insisted that he had handed (hand) in his homework yesterday, Mr Wang still insisted he (should) do (do) it again.

③The government insisted that plans (should) be made (make) to help those out of work.

④I did it, but only at your insistence (insist).

(2)一句多译

我想步行去车站,但他坚持要开车送我去那儿。

①I wanted to walk to the station, but he insisted that he (should) drive me there.

②I wanted to walk to the station, but he insisted on/upon driving me there.

3. as if/as though 引导表语从句

[教材原文]It was as if our kindly countryside, close to the very heart of England, had been turned into a cruel grassland.

就好像我们这个靠近英格兰中心位置的亲切小乡村变成了暴躁的草原。

[句式分析]句中 as if 引导的是表语从句。从句主干结构是 our kindly countryside had been turned into a cruel grassland.

[归纳拓展]

as if/as though 引导的从句可以分为以下几种

情况:

(1)在 be, look, seem, appear 等系动词后引导表语从句。

(2)引导方式状语从句。

(3)as if 还可用于省略句中。如果 as if 引导的从句是“主语+系动词”结构,可省略主语和系动词,这样 as if 后就只剩下名词、不定式、形容词(短语)、介词短语或分词。

名师点拨

as if/as though 从句用虚拟语气的情况:当说话人认为句子所表述的是不真实的或极少有可能发生或存在的情况。从句用虚拟语气时,其谓语动词形式如下:

(1)从句表示与现在事实相反,谓语动词形式用动词过去式。

(2)从句表示与过去事实相反,谓语动词形式用“had+过去分词”。

(3)从句表示与将来事实相反,谓语动词形式用“would/could/might+动词原形”。

即学即练

(1)单句语法填空

①She ran as if she had had (have) wings on her feet.

②He talked about Rome as if he had been (be) there himself.

③He has just arrived, but he talks as if he knew (know) all about that.

(2)完成句子

①The two strangers talked as if/as though they had been friends for years.

这两个陌生人交谈起来好像他们已经是多年的朋友了。

②I can't stand him. He always talks as if/as though he knew everything.

我受不了他。他说起话来总是像他知道一切似的。

多义词汇专练

- His job is not only to **dispose** of problems but also to meet unexpected challenges. B
A. v. 排列,布置 B. v. 处置,处理 C. v. 使倾向于
- prospect**: A. n. 开阔的景观,景色 B. n. 可能性,希望 C. n. 前景 D. n. (竞赛中的)有望获胜者
- ①There is no immediate **prospect** of peace. B
- ②Long-term **prospects** for the economy have improved. C
- ③She is one of China's best **prospects** for a gold medal. D
- ④a delightful **prospect** of the lake A

课后素养评价(二十七)

I. 单词拼写

- In addition, attracted by interesting topics, the students are free to take part in the weekly (每周的) discussion.
- With the help of artificial intelligence, the number of ticket inspectors (检查员) has on the decrease.
- He was so stubborn that he insisted (坚称) on organising the trip by himself.
- His father bought him some shaving (刮胡子) cream and taught him how to use it.
- The students found their “troubles” seemed not worth mentioning at all compared with what those innocent (天真无邪的) kids were going through.
- If parents express excitement about the prospect (景色) of a walk in the countryside, they are more likely to pass this feeling to their children.

- We were surprised to find the branch bent (弯曲) but did not break after the big storm.
- The church (教堂) dating from the 18th century is under repair at present.
- This fertiliser enhances (改进) the soil, so the vegetables and fruit are healthier and better.
- The language of nursery rhymes (儿歌) is concrete but imaginative, and they delight children because they have strong rhythm and a lot of repetition.

II. 短语填空

at the risk of; transform... into; used to; break out; come out; early on; come round; as if

- He acted as if he hadn't heard any of it.
- It was at midnight that a fire broke out, which caused many more deaths.
- The medical workers treated the patients at the risk of being infected.

4. In only 20 years, the country has been transformed into an advanced industrial power.
5. Can you imagine the successful young man used to be a naughty boy?
6. For three days and nights they watched by her bed waiting for her to come round.
7. The company ran into trouble early on, when a major order was cancelled.
8. All the old crowd have come out for this occasion.

III. 完成句子

1. With the food running out, the climbers had to return to the camp.
在食物即将用尽的情况下,登山者们不得不返回营地。
2. To be honest, I did see Tom bending the tree when I passed the playground.
坦白地说,在我经过操场时我确实看见汤姆正在弄弯小树。
3. The teacher insists that we (should) keep a diary to improve our ability to express ourselves in English.
老师坚持要求我们写日记来提高我们用英语表达的能力。
4. Regular exercise is as important to us as a healthy diet.
有规律的锻炼和健康饮食对我们是一样重要的。
5. The teacher treats her students very well, as if they were her own children.
这位老师对她的学生非常好,就好像他们是她自己的孩子。

IV. 完形填空

While visiting my sister last year on a windy October day, we heard an eastern spinebill chick (幼鸟) chirping—she had been blown into her garden. We kept 1 for hours to see if her mother would find her, but she was a no-show. The chick had very 2 flying skills and got 3 between a bamboo and the Laserlight fence.

With my brother-in-law's help, we 4 the wire wrapped around her leg so we could 5 the chick from certain death. Then, we gave her honey with water from an eyedropper. After ringing a now retired wildlife rescuer for 6, we added ground oats to the mix.

Covered with tissues in a takeaway food container, the chick 7 the night and continued to feed well. In the morning, I 8 her in a cage outdoors. Her chirping 9 the attention of an adult male spinebill which started 10 her insects through

the cage, and she 11 accepted. He even 12 my head at one stage when I was taking photos of her.

She was now about 12 kilometres away from where she'd been found, too 13 for him to be her father, yet he still fed her.

I am thankful for his 14 and believe her future, under the wing of her handsome tutor after she flew off with him a week later, will be just 15.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者和姐姐救了一只小鸟,后来一只成年鸟过来喂小鸟,作者相信在这只大鸟的帮助下,小鸟的未来是美好的。

1. A. watching B. balancing
C. accompanying D. tracking
A 根据下文“to see if her mother would find her”可知,观察是为了看鸟妈妈是否会发现她。故选 A。
2. A. superb B. limited
C. new D. different
B 根据下文“With my brother-in-law's help, we 4 the wire wrapped around her leg”可知,“我们”把她从铁丝上解救下来,说明小鸟的飞行技能非常有限。故选 B。
3. A. hidden B. engaged
C. trapped D. absorbed
C 根据下文“With my brother-in-law's help, we 4 the wire wrapped around her leg”可知,“我们”把她从铁丝上解救下来,说明小鸟被困住了。故选 C。
4. A. smoothed B. burned
C. discovered D. unfastened
D 根据上文“got 3 between a bamboo and the Laserlight fence”可知,小鸟被困住了,所以“我们”帮她解开了。故选 D。
5. A. separate B. remove
C. train D. rescue
D 根据上文“we 4 the wire wrapped around her leg”可知,“我们”解开了缠在小鸟腿上的铁丝,所以是营救了她。故选 D。
6. A. appearance B. contact
C. permission D. advice
D 根据上文“ringing a now retired wildlife rescuer”可知,“我们”给专业人士打电话,寻求建议。故选 D。
7. A. missed B. enjoyed
C. survived D. passed
C 根据上文“Covered with tissues in a takeaway food container”以及后文“the night”可知,小鸟被安置在容器里,盖着纸巾,熬过了一夜。故选 C。

8. A. placed
C. followed

B. returned
D. grasped

A 根据下文“in a cage outdoors”可知,是把小鸟放在户外的笼子里。故选 A。
9. A. shifted
C. attracted

B. escaped
D. disturbed

C 根据下文“the attention of an adult male spinebill”可知,吸引了成年雄性棘喙鸟的注意。故选 C。
10. A. robbing
C. showing

B. sharing
D. feeding

D 根据下文“he still fed her”可知,这只成年雄性棘喙鸟是喂小鸟的。故选 D。
11. A. readily
C. unwillingly

B. barely
D. secretly

A 根据下文“he still fed her”可知,这只成年雄性棘喙鸟是喂小鸟的,而小鸟也是欣然接受的。故选 A。

12. A. knocked on
C. turned around

B. pointed at
D. landed on

D 根据“my head”可知,他落在“我”的头上。故选 D。
13. A. far
C. dangerous

B. troublesome
D. strange

A 根据本句“She was now about 12 kilometres away from where she’d been found”可知,她现在离她被发现的地方大约 12 千米远,太远了,他不可能是她的父亲。故选 A。
14. A. courage
C. tolerance

B. assistance
D. profession

B 根据上文“he still fed her”可知,这只成年雄性棘喙鸟喂小鸟也是帮助了“我”。故选 B。
15. A. endless
C. rosy

B. suitable
D. romantic

C 根据上文“under the wing of her handsome tutor”可知,在她英俊的导师的翅膀(庇护)下,小鸟的未来将是美好的。故选 C。

Section III Using language

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The spring breeze is pleasantly warm and **sweeps** above the flowers on both sides of the road.

吹过,掠过
2. The fields around had been sown with **wheat**.

小麦
3. As evening came, the coastline **faded** into darkness.

逐渐消失
4. A few newspapers and magazines were **piled** on a table.

堆放,摞起
5. The weather can be quite **bleak** on the coast.

阴冷的
6. Looking round, he discovered a small **wagon** with a horse.

四轮运货车
7. The cherry blossoms that we planted during the conference **bloomed** this April.

开花
8. For the farmers in my hometown, they usually **reap** wheat in June every year.

收割
9. The boy dropped the apples he had stolen and cut away across the **orchard**.

果园

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <u>charm</u> <i>n.</i> 魅力,魔力 | <u>charming</u> <i>adj.</i> 迷人的 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--|--|
| <u>relax</u> <i>v.</i> 放松;休息;使(松弛),放松 | <u>relaxation</u> <i>n.</i> 放松;消遣 |
| | <u>relaxed</u> <i>adj.</i> 轻松自在的,放松的;舒适的,悠闲的,轻松的 |
| <u>appearance</u> <i>n.</i> 到来,出现;外表,外观 | <u>appear</u> <i>v.</i> 到来,出现;似乎;好像,看来 |
| | <u>disappear</u> <i>v.</i> 消失,不见;失踪,丢失 |
| | <u>disappearance</u> <i>n.</i> 消失,失踪;消亡,不复存在 |
| <u>confused</u> <i>adj.</i> 困惑的;不清楚的;难懂的 | <u>confuse</u> <i>v.</i> 使困惑;混淆,弄错 |
| | <u>confusing</u> <i>adj.</i> 令人困惑的,模糊不清的,难懂的 |
| | <u>confusion</u> <i>n.</i> 困惑;混乱;慌乱 |

III. 补全短语

1. nothing but 只有,只不过
2. add... to ... 把……加进……
3. be irrelevant to 与……不相干
4. have a point 有道理
5. be seen as 被看作……
6. replace... with ... 用……替代……
7. all the time 始终;一直

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: what 引导主语从句

What the author wrote made me feel confused.
作者写的内容令我困惑。

2. 句型公式: as 引导时间状语从句

And as times change, old words become as normal to young people as the new ones are to me.

而且,随着时代的变迁,旧词对年轻人来说就像新词对我一样平常。

3. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作后置定语

The Lake Poets were a small group of poets living in the Lake District of England in the late 18th and early 19th centuries.

湖畔诗人是 18 世纪末 19 世纪初生活在英格兰湖区的一小群诗人。

任务型课堂

1. fade v. 逐渐消失;褪色

[教材原文]... when the memory of snow, and ice, and bleak winds, has faded from our minds as completely as they have disappeared from the earth...

……当冰雪和寒风的记忆从我们的脑海中完全消失,就像它们从地球上消失一样……

[归纳拓展]

fade away 消失;衰弱

fade down 安静下来

fade from 从……逐渐消失

[即学即练]

(1) 写出下列句中 fade 的含义

① The colours of the skirt gently **fade** each time you wash it. (颜色)褪去

② Hopes for the missing men are **fading**. (希望)逐渐破灭

③ They arrived home just as the light was **fading**. (光)变暗

④ Flowers soon **faded** when they have been cut. 凋谢;枯萎

(2) 单句语法填空

① Hopes of reaching an agreement seem to be

fading away.

② His name will never fade from the memory of the world.

2. sweep v. 吹过;掠过;打扫;风行;扫视

[教材原文]... and the wheat, piled in graceful sheaves, or waving in every gentle wind that sweeps above it, tinges the landscape with a golden colour.

……麦子整整齐齐地一束束堆着,或者在阵阵微风中摇曳着,给大地染上了金黄的色彩。

[归纳拓展]

(1) sweep up 打扫;清扫

sweep away 消灭;摧毁

sweep over/across/around 横扫

(2) sweeper n. 清洁工;清扫机

[即学即练]

完成句子

① She swept up the grains of wheat that had spilled on the ground.

她打扫了撒在地上的麦粒。

② Her habitation was swept away, and she and her child were left shelterless.

她的住处被风刮跑了,她和孩子没有了栖身之处。

• 多义词汇专练

sweep: A. v. 吹过,掠过 B. v. 彻底消除 C. v. 席卷,横扫 D. v. 打扫,清扫

① Minutes after the last movie ended yesterday at the Plaza Theatre, employees were busy **sweeping** up popcorns and gathering coke cups. D

② At the Beijing Olympics she **swept** away any doubts about her ability to perform consistently by becoming the first Jamaican woman ever to win the 100 metres Olympic gold. B

③ The cooling wind **swept** through our bedroom windows, making air conditioning unnecessary. A

④ Deputy Agriculture Secretary sees an epidemic (流行病) **sweeping** across America's farmland. C

语法探究

非谓语动词作定语、补语、状语

「语法感知」

- ①... I saw the ground so fantastically **carpeted**.
 ②... wake up **to find** yourself in another quite different, ...
 ③... I can see the children **flattening** their noses against the window, ...
 ④... flattened my nose against the cold window **to watch** the **falling** snow...
 ⑤... last year I was out of the country, **sweating** in a hot climate, ...
 ⑥Carson urged people **to make** themselves aware of the facts and do something about the situation.

1. 以上句子中,句①、句③和句⑥为非谓语动词作宾语补足语,过去分词表示被动或完成;现在分词表示主动或进行;不定式表示将来。
 2. 句②、句④中的不定式和句⑤中的现在分词在句中作状语;句②中的不定式作结果状语,句④中的不定式作目的状语,句⑤中的现在分词作伴随状语。
 3. 句④中的现在分词作定语;单个的现在分词一般放在名词前面,现在分词短语放在名词的后面。

「语法精讲」

一、不定式

(一)不定式作定语

不定式作定语一般情况下会置于被修饰词的后面,并且与被修饰词构成一定的逻辑关系,其用法如下:

1. 主谓关系:被修饰词是不定式动作的发出者。此时被修饰词前通常有 only, first, next, 序数词或形容词的最高级修饰。
 She is always the first **to come** and the last **to leave**.
 她总是第一个来最后一个离开。
2. 动宾关系:被修饰词是不定式动作的承受者。此时需要注意,如果动词不定式中的动词是不及物动词时,其后应该有相应的介词。但当不定式修饰的名词是 time, place, way 时,不定式后可省略介词。
 There are many interesting things **to see** there.
 那里有许多有趣的东西可以看。
3. 修饰关系:动词不定式对所修饰的词起到补充、说明的作用。这些被修饰的词有 wish, way, chance, ability, decision, attempt, reason, answer 等。

Can you think up a good way **to deal with** the ever increasing prices?

你们能否想出一个应对日益上涨的物价的好办法?

4. 动词不定式作定语有时也可以表示一种将来的动作。

We are invited to a party **to be held** in our club next Friday.

我们受邀参加下周五在我们俱乐部举办的聚会。

(二)不定式作补语

1. 不定式作宾语补足语

不定式作宾语补足语时相当于名词,跟在某些及物动词的宾语之后,对宾语作进一步的补充、说明,并与该宾语构成逻辑上的主谓关系。

I wanted something **to happen** to me, but nothing happened.

我希望在我身上会发生些什么变化,可是什么都没发生。

I know nothing about him and I beg you **to tell** me nothing.

他的情况我一无所知,我也请求您别告诉我。

名师点拨 ■■■■

在一些使役动词(如 make, let, have 等)和感官动词(如 see, watch, observe, notice, hear, feel 等)之后,作宾语补足语的不定式需省略 to。用于被动语态时,省略的 to 要还原回来。

She let her hand **fall** from his arm and said no more.

她放开他的胳膊,没再说什么。

Tom is always hard-working, so he doesn't have to **be made to study hard**.

汤姆一直很努力,所以没有必要强迫他刻苦学习。

2. 不定式作主语补足语

在“... be said/believed/known/reported/considered/found/thought to do sth.”结构中,不定式作主语补足语。

They **are said to have developed** a new approach to teaching, which **is said to improve** classroom teaching greatly.

据说他们已经研究出一种新的教学方法,这种方法据说可以极大地改善课堂教学。

(三)不定式作状语

不定式作状语主要表示目的、结果或原因,也可以表示条件、方式或比较。

He stood up **to be seen better**.

他站起来以便大家能更清楚地看到他。(目的)

He searched the room **only to find nothing**.

他满屋子找,却一无所获。(结果)

She wept **to hear the news**.

她听到这个消息哭了。(原因)

To hear him talk, you would think he owned the whole world.

如果你听他讲话,你会以为整个世界都是他的。(条件)

To do his best, he could not finish his task on time.

即使竭尽全力,他仍然不能按时完成任务。(让步)

二、现在分词

(一)现在分词作定语

1. 现在分词作定语说明被修饰词的性质或状态,表明动作是主动、进行的意义;单个分词作定语一般放在被修饰词的前面(前置定语);分词短语作定语一般放在被修饰词的后面(后置定语)。

a **flying** plane=a plane that is flying 一架正在飞行的飞机

a young man **sitting** next to me=a young man who/that is sitting next to me 一个坐在我旁边的年轻人

2. 现在分词作定语的时候,与被修饰词之间存在逻辑上的主动关系,表示事物存在的状态或动作正在进行;有时现在分词作定语可以转换为主动的定语从句。

The man **speaking to** the teacher is our monitor's father.

=The man **who is speaking to** the teacher is our monitor's father.

正与老师谈话的那个人是我们班长的父亲。

(二)现在分词作宾语补足语

1. 现在分词作宾语补足语

现在分词作宾语补足语表示正在进行的主动性的动作或状态。以下动词后可跟现在分词作宾语补足语:see, watch, hear, feel, find, get, keep, notice, observe, leave, catch, have, make, let 等。

Can you hear her **singing** the song in the next room?

你能听见她在隔壁房间唱歌吗?

He kept the car **waiting** at the gate.

他让小汽车在门口等着。

2. 当句子变为被动结构时,原来作宾语补足语的现在分词形式便转换为主语补足语。

They found the result very **satisfying**.

=The result was found very **satisfying**.

他们发现结果令人非常满意。

They heard him **singing** in the next room.

=He was heard **singing** in the next room.

他们听到他正在隔壁房间唱歌。

(三)现在分词作状语

现在分词作状语可以表示时间、原因、结果、条件、让步、方式或伴随情况等。

Hearing the news, they all jumped with joy.

听到这个消息,他们都高兴得跳了起来。(时间)

Being a league member, he is always helping others.

由于是团员,他经常帮助他人。(原因)

He stayed at home, **cleaning and washing**.

他待在家里,又擦又洗。(伴随)

Playing all day, you will waste your valuable time.

要是整天玩,你就会浪费宝贵的时间。(条件)

He dropped the glass, **breaking it into pieces**.

他把杯子弄掉了,结果摔得粉碎。(结果)

三、过去分词

(一)过去分词作定语

过去分词作定语有两种情况,如果是单个的过去分词,通常放在所修饰的词的前面;如果是过去分词短语,则放在所修饰的词的后面。过去分词(短语)作定语的时候,与被修饰词之间存在逻辑上的被动关系,表示被动或完成。过去分词(短语)作定语时可以转换为被动的定语从句。

The **excited** children are opening their presents.

兴奋的孩子们正在打开他们的礼物。

Some of the people **invited to the party** can't come.

有些被邀请参加聚会的人不能来。

After completing and signing it, please return the form to us in the envelope **provided**.

=After completing and signing it, please return the form to us in the envelope **which is provided**.

填完表格并签名之后,请把它装入所提供的信封里返给我们。

(二)过去分词作补足语

1. 过去分词作宾语补足语,说明宾语的状态或性质,宾语是其逻辑主语,一般是过去分词动作的承受者,即逻辑上的被动关系。

I saw his eyes **fixed** on me with curiosity.

我看见他的眼睛盯着我,充满了好奇。

We want the work **finished** by Saturday.

我们想要那项工作在周六前完成。

We found the house **deserted**.

我们发现这所房子已废弃了。

名师点拨 ■■■■

能够接过去分词作宾语补足语的动词:

(1) 表示感觉或心理状态的动词, 如 see, watch, observe, hear, feel, notice, think 等。

(2) 表示愿望、想法的动词, 如 want, should like, would like, prefer 等。

(3) 表示“致使”含义的使役动词, 如 have, make, get, keep, leave 等。

2. 过去分词有时亦可作主语补足语。

The song is often heard **sung** everywhere in China.

在中国到处经常听到有人唱这首歌。

(三) 过去分词作状语

过去分词作状语可表示原因、时间、条件、让步、方式或伴随情况等。过去分词作状语可转换成状语从句。当过去分词作状语时, 其逻辑主语一般就是句子的主语, 并且与之构成逻辑上的被动关系。

Asked what had happened, his face turned red.

当被问及发生了什么事情的时候, 他的脸红了。(时间)

Written in a hurry, this article was not so good!

因为写得匆忙, 这篇文章不是很好! (原因)

Given another hour, I can also work out this problem.

再给我一个小时, 我也能解出这道题。(条件)

Followed by the old man, we went upstairs.

我们上了楼, 后面跟着那个老人。(伴随)

Left at home, John didn't feel afraid at all.

虽然约翰被单独留在家里, 他一点都不害怕。(让步)

「语法冲关」

I. 用括号内所给动词的适当形式填空

- The building is said to be (be) the tallest building in the world.

- She asked me to answer (answer) the phone in her absence.
- Explained (explain) a hundred times, he still can't understand it.
- Can you see the star moving (move) in the sky?
- Mrs Brown was much disappointed to see the washing machine she had had repaired (repair) went wrong again.
- The letter posted (post) today will reach you in a week.
- He telephoned me, saying (say) that he wouldn't come for supper.
- Listen to the birds singing (sing) beautifully in the garden.
- She bought a bookshelf to put (put) her books on.
- Having hurried (hurry) through his breakfast, he went to wait for the school bus.

II. 完成句子

- These are the books to be distributed among the students.
这些是要分发给学生的书。
- His illness is not such as to cause anxiety.
他的病还没有到令人焦虑的程度。
- I found those students studying very hard.
我发现那些学生学习非常努力。
- Frightened by the horror movie, the girl didn't dare to sleep alone.
因为被恐怖电影吓坏了, 这个女孩不敢单独睡觉。
- He won't like such questions discussed at the meeting.
他不喜欢在会上讨论这样的问题。
- The man followed by security guards is our chairman.
被保安人员跟着的那个人是我们的主席。

课后素养评价(二十八)

I. 选词填空

charm; nothing but; gentle; fade; replace...
with...; contrast with; wheat; have a point

- The snow was icy and white, contrasting with the brilliant blue sky.

- This town, clean and quiet, has a charm you couldn't find in a big city.
- He is the gentlest man I have ever known.
- The doctor recommended that we shouldn't replace supper with snacks.
- With time passing, the outward colour will fade.

6. The price of wheat has decreased by 15%.
7. Personally, I think Hawking has a point.
8. The whole story is nothing but a pack of lies.

II. 单句语法填空

1. The man sweeping (sweep) the street is one of the volunteers who make contributions to the neighbourhood.
2. Caught (catch) in the flood, the man tried to climb the nearby tree.
3. There are many interesting things to see (see) there.
4. Tom is always hard-working, so he doesn't have to be made (make) to study hard.
5. This is the reason why I have come so far to look for you.
6. What he said made me feel rather confused.
7. With online shopping increasingly popular, the Internet is seen as a way of reaching target customers.
8. The woman talks all the time and hardly stops to draw breath.
9. He raised his voice in order to make himself heard (hear).
10. They use computers to keep the traffic running (run) smoothly (顺畅地).

III. 阅读理解

A

Why would anyone want to write a poem? One reason to write a poem is to dig from yourself some thought, feeling, comprehension or question that you didn't know was in you, or in the world. Other forms of writing, such as scientific papers, political analysis and journalism, attempt to record something known. Poetry is a release of something previously unknown.

Poetry opens our eyes and offers increase of reach. We live so often on a lonely island, separated from ourselves and others due to social or personal reasons. To step into a poem is to agree to risk. Writing takes down all protections to see what steps forward. Poetry is a trick of language, in which the writer is both a magician and an audience. You reach your hand into the hat and surprise yourself with a rabbit or memory, with unusual verbs or rhymes. Poems lead to revolutions of being. Whatever the old order was, a poem will change it.

What we want from art is whatever is missing

from the lives we are living and making. Something is always missing, so art-making is endless.

There is also the matter of connection. You can't write an image, a metaphor (暗喻), a story, a phrase without approaching the shared world, without recognising that your supposed solitude (独处) is at every point touching some others. You can't read a good poem without recognising your own face in the poet's experience. It allows us to feel more strongly and accurately what is already present. Then it expands that and expands us.

Does art change anything by its existence or non-existence? I'd argue that art, if it is genuinely art, is a force for the good. That the rearrangement of words can reopen the potential of both inner and outer worlds—I cannot say why I feel this to be true, except that I feel it so when I read good poems.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章主要论述了有人想要写诗的原因。

1. How does the writer introduce the topic?

- A. By listing numbers.
- B. By giving examples.
- C. By quoting a saying.
- D. By making a comparison.

D 推理判断题。通读全文可知,第一段中的“One reason to write a poem is to dig from yourself some thought, feeling, comprehension or question that you didn't know was in you, or in the world.”引出了主题。接下来“Other forms of writing, such as scientific papers, political analysis and journalism, attempt to record something known. Poetry is a release of something previously unknown.”通过将其他写作形式和诗歌进行比较,从而对前文写诗的原因进行具体阐述。由此可推测,作者通过作比较介绍本文主题。故选D。

2. What is the similarity between poetry and magic?

- A. They bring surprises.
- B. They follow traditions.
- C. They change the world.
- D. They are arts of language.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Poetry is a trick of language, in which the writer is both a magician and an audience. You reach your hand into the hat and surprise yourself with a rabbit or

memory, with unusual verbs or rhymes.”可知,写诗的人和魔术师很像,魔术师把手伸进帽子里变出兔子,而写诗的人用记忆、不同寻常的动词或押韵创造新的东西,二者都可以带来惊喜。故选 A。

3. What can a good poem do according to the text?

- A. Criticise social reality.
- B. Apply new expressions.
- C. Bridge poets and readers.
- D. Remind readers of the past.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“*There is also the matter of connection.*”和“*You can't read a good poem without recognising your own face in the poet's experience.*”可知,诗会创造联系,读好诗的时候你会体验作者的经历;由此可推测,一首好诗会给诗人和读者创造桥梁,将诗人和读者联系起来。故选 C。

4. What is the author's attitude towards art?

- A. Objective.
- B. Favourable.
- C. Unclear.
- D. Doubtful.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*Does art change anything by its existence or non-existence? I'd argue that art, if it is genuinely art, is a force for the good.*”可知,在提到艺术的作用时,作者认为真正的艺术是一种向善的力量;由此可推测,作者对艺术持肯定态度。故选 B。

B

To me, Shakespeare is a bit of a touchy subject in the theatre industry. I believe Shakespeare's plays to be the most challenging in terms of language. When you have challenging language, then understanding the plot and topics discussed becomes a challenge as well. It's like a chain. If you don't understand it from the start, it makes things hard later on and people tend to give up on it. Regardless of all of this, I believe Shakespeare's plays are important in the sense that they are where true theatre started. William Shakespeare is a name everyone knows regardless of whether you enjoy his work or not.

Many high schools or colleges do at least one Shakespeare's play every few years and I like that. I think it's important to expose students to plays that are a bit more challenging than they're used to. Of course, it's not easy to understand these plays but then think about the people who act in those plays.

When acting, you have to understand your character inside and out and not only that, but you need to completely know everything going on around you as well. So to understand the script is one thing, but then to take it to that next level in terms of acting in a Shakespeare's play is a whole other thing. How about memorising the lines? That's one of the hardest things actors have said they had to get through. It is such heightened language that it's almost like learning a foreign language. Shakespeare's play is tough and that's what I think I love about it the most. The challenge is understanding. Once you have that, then you have room to play with it.

Therefore, if people walked into a Shakespeare's play with more of an open mind, their experience would be so much better. There is an immense amount of exploration and discovery in his plays and the experience can be really satisfying. It's hard stuff, but it's fascinating and we should be embracing it.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。尽管莎士比亚剧本中的语言因很难理解而极具挑战性,但学生们欣赏莎士比亚的戏剧仍是非常重要的,同时作者也谈到了欣赏莎士比亚戏剧的方法。

5. What's the main idea of the passage?

- A. The characteristics of Shakespeare's plays.
- B. How to perform Shakespeare's plays successfully.
- C. The importance and way of enjoying Shakespeare's plays.
- D. How to understand the tough language of Shakespeare's plays.

C 主旨大意题。本文介绍的是学生们欣赏莎士比亚戏剧的重要性以及方法。第一段开篇引出话题,第一段中的“*Regardless of all of this, I believe Shakespeare's plays are important in the sense that they are where true theatre started.*”点明主题;第二段用“*I think it's important to expose students to plays that are a bit more challenging than they're used to.*”进一步谈自己的观点并以演员排练莎士比亚戏剧为例对自己的观点进行佐证,最后作者谈如何欣赏莎士比亚的戏剧。故选 C。

6. What's the biggest challenge in understanding Shakespeare's plays?

- A. The plot and topics.
- B. The challenging language.

C. Understanding the characters.

D. How to understand from the start.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段第二句“I believe Shakespeare’s plays to be the most challenging in terms of language.”可知,作者认为从语言方面讲,莎士比亚戏剧是最具有挑战性的。故选 B。

7. What does the underlined word “heightened” mean in Paragraph 2?

A. Outstanding and lively.

B. Strange and mechanical.

C. Complicated and difficult.

D. High-levelled and interesting.

C 词义猜测题。根据画线词所在句子中的“that it’s almost like learning a foreign language”可知,莎士比亚的语言就像是外语,且下文中进一步说“Shakespeare’s play is tough”。由此可推知,heightened 表示“复杂的,困难的”。故选 C。

8. What does the writer suggest you do when enjoying Shakespeare’s plays?

A. Act them out.

B. Remember the lines in them.

C. Learn Shakespeare’s language.

D. Enjoy them with an open mind.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段第一句“Therefore, if people walked into a Shakespeare’s play with more of an open mind, their experience would be so much better.”可知,如果人们以一种开放的心态进入莎士比亚戏剧,那么他们的体验就会好很多。故选 D。

IV. 完形填空

As my husband, Doug, stood on the busy New York city street trying to stop a taxi, I tried to protect my daughter from the cold December wind and rain. I put my head down to kiss her tiny face.

1 and wet, my husband gave up his attempt to flag down a taxi. I knew the 2. Just after her first birthday, we were told our daughter Katie has a 3 brain illness. Since that moment, Doug and I felt like runners in a marathon race where the finish line kept 4. We knew Katie was running out of time. It had taken months before we finally had a name for the 5, but we were told only a few of specialists in the world knew how to 6 it. Now, as we finally found a brilliant doctor to 7 our girl, we were in a strange 8 in the cold rain.

Just at the moment, a middle-aged woman pulled over and said, “Pardon me? May I offer you a ride?” Before we could say anything, she continued, “It’s really no 9 for me. Just get in.” It was

then that I noticed her thick Irish accent, which 10 me up like hot soup. We simply said, “Thanks! Roosevelt Hospital, please,” as we got in her car for the ride.

“Are you going for the baby?” she asked us. I nodded my head, holding back my 11. At the hospital, we 12 her a dozen times for the ride. As the woman hugged me, I 13 her face was wet with tears. She promised to pray for us before she left.

After three more visits to New York and two more 14 operations, Katie is cured. But the voice of the Irish woman still rang as a constant reminder of a tiny ray of light that appeared in our 15 days.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。作者和丈夫带着生病的女儿在雨中打车,一位热心的女士给了他们战胜困难的勇气。

1. A. Excited B. Frustrated
C. Worried D. Satisfied

B 由于沮丧和下雨的天气,作者的丈夫放弃了拦下一辆出租车的尝试。故选 B。

2. A. feeling B. spirit
C. message D. sense

A “我”知道他的那种感觉。故选 A。

3. A. simple B. rare
C. normal D. natural

B 就在她一岁生日之后,“我们”被告知“我们”的女儿凯蒂患有一种罕见的脑部疾病。根据下文的“but we were told only a few of specialists in the world knew how to...”可知选 B。

4. A. coming B. lowering
C. disappearing D. running

C 从那一刻起,道格和“我”就像跑马拉松的赛跑者一样,终点线不停地消失。故选 C。

5. A. race B. illness
C. doctor D. challenge

B 过了好几个月,“我们”才终于知道了这个病的名字,但“我们”被告知,世界上只有少数专家懂得如何治疗它。故选 B。

6. A. explain B. check
C. reach D. treat

D 世界上只有少数专家懂得如何治疗这种疾病。

7. A. protect B. meet
C. save D. encourage

C 此刻,当“我们”终于找到一位高明的医生来拯救“我们”的女儿时,“我们”却被困在一座陌生城市的冷雨中。故选 C。

8. A. country B. hospital
C. town D. city

D 根据第一段中的“New York city”可知选 D。

9. A. trouble B. difference
C. question D. loss
A 那位中年女士说:“这对我来说真的没有什么麻烦。”故选 A。
10. A. picked B. called
C. warmed D. woke
C 就在那时,“我”注意到她那浓重的爱尔兰口音,就像热汤一样温暖“我”。此处 warm 是动词。故选 C。
11. A. surprise B. anger
C. smile D. tears
D “我”点头并忍住“我”的眼泪。故选 D。
12. A. thanked B. praised
C. respected D. accepted

- A 在医院里,对于她热心的帮助,“我们”数次表示感谢。故选 A。
13. A. guessed B. believed
C. understood D. noticed
D 当那个女人拥抱“我”的时候,“我”注意到她的脸上满是泪水。故选 D。
14. A. eye B. brain
C. kidney D. heart
B 在经历过三次去纽约和两次脑部手术后,凯蒂的病被治愈了。故选 B。
15. A. busiest B. luckiest
C. darkest D. happiest
C 但是,那位爱尔兰女士的声音仍然不断地在“我们”耳边回响,那是“我们”最黑暗的日子里一束微弱的光。故选 C。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. puzzled *adj.* 困惑的,无法理解的
2. tremble *v.* 颤抖,发抖
3. precise *adj.* 精确的;一丝不苟的
4. ban *v.* 禁止,取缔
5. dozen *number* 一打;许多
6. thorough *adj.* 仔细的;缜密的
7. launch *n.* 推出,发起
8. elegance *n.* 优美;简洁
9. reputation *n.* 名誉,名望
10. passionate *adj.* 具有强烈信念的
11. or so 大约;左右
12. rather than 而不是
13. be aware of 意识到
14. in addition to 除……之外(还)
15. scores of 大量;许多
16. in particular 尤其,特别
17. urge... to do 敦促……做

(二)阅读词汇

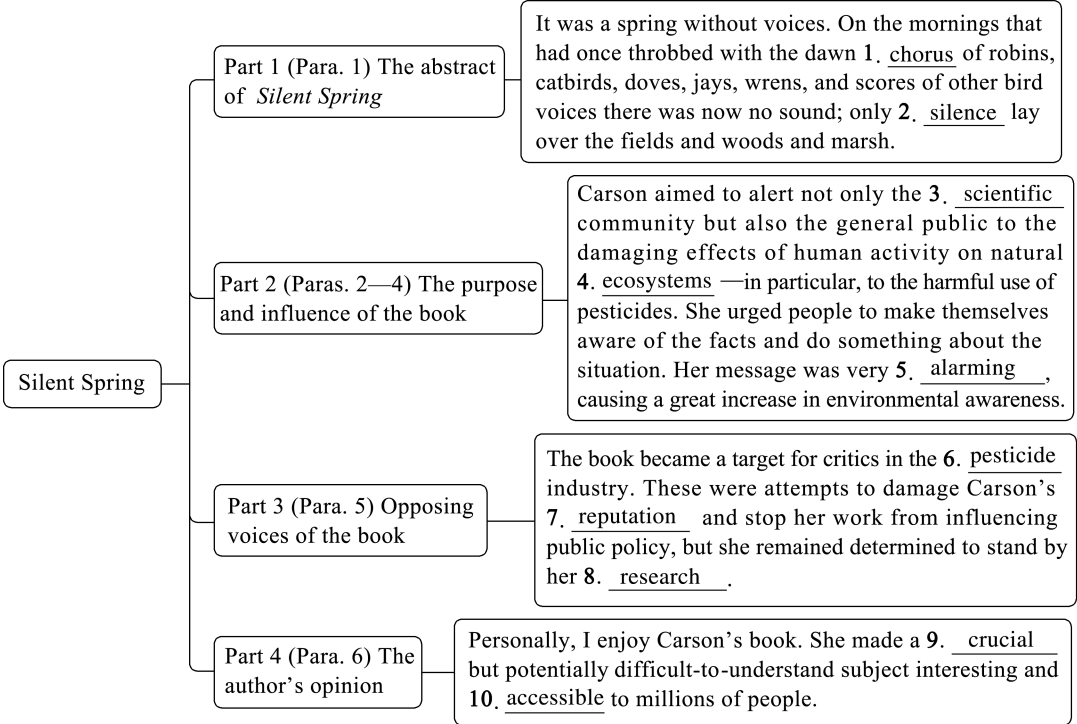
1. diamond *n.* 钻石
2. dove *n.* 鸽子

3. knowingly *adv.* 故意地
4. marine *adj.* 海洋的
5. fable *n.* 寓言
6. chorus *n.* 合唱曲
7. backyard *n.* 后院
8. moribund *adj.* 垂死的,奄奄一息的
9. throb *v.* 生机勃勃;热闹
10. robin *n.* 知更鸟
11. catbird *n.* 猫鹊
12. jay *n.* 松鸦
13. wren *n.* 鹪鹩(一种褐色小鸟)
14. marsh *n.* 沼泽,湿地
15. posthumous *adj.* 死后获得的
16. put... at risk 使……受到威胁
17. stand by 坚持;支持
18. target for ……的目标
19. cause harm to 对……造成危害
20. alert... to 给……提醒……;使……意识到……
21. gypsy moth 舞毒蛾

多维化析文

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Why did many people get puzzled and disturbed?
- A. Because they didn't speak of birds again.
 - B. Because the feeding stations were destroyed.
 - C. Because most birds were gone.
 - D. Because birds' voices were unusual.
- 答案:C
2. What can we learn about Rachel Carson?
- A. She was born in 1962.
 - B. She was a writer by profession.
 - C. She thought pesticides were harmful.
 - D. She used too many pesticides daily.
- 答案:C
3. What caused a great increase in the awareness of protecting the environment?
- A. Carson's research.
 - B. The fire-ant programme.
 - C. The green movement.
 - D. Some gypsy moths.
- 答案:A

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

Rachel Carson was a scientist by profession, 1. who has talent as a writer. By imagining a world without birds, she aimed to alert not only the 2. scientific (science) community but also the general public to the damaging effects of human activity 3. on natural ecosystems—in particular, to the harmful use of pesticides, such as DDT. She believed that the chemical industry was 4. knowingly (knowing) causing harm to plants, animals and even humans, and wished to see pesticides used in a more responsible, limited and carefully 5. monitored (monitor) way. She urged people 6. to make (make) themselves aware of the facts and do something about the situation. *Silent Spring* contains a lot of scientific research and case studies. The 50 or so 7. pages (page) at the end of the book list Carson's sources, 8. showing (show) how thorough and precise she was as a scientist. Her message was very alarming, causing a great increase in environmental

awareness. **9.** Its (it) impact was immediate and far-reaching; the use of DDT **10.** was banned (ban) and the EPA was established in the US.

Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Though Carson's research was strong and was supported by most scientists who reviewed her work, the book quickly became a target for critics in the pesticide industry.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。Though 引导让步状语从句, 而 who 引导的定语从句修饰先行词 scientists。

[尝试翻译] 虽然卡森的研究很有说服力, 而且得到了大多数审阅过她的著作的科学家的支持, 但是这本书很快就成了杀虫剂行业批判的对象。

2. This is not so much because of the quality of her arguments, strong though they are, but because of the beauty and elegance of her writing.

[句子分析] 本句中 not... but... 连接并列表语(介词短语), though 引导让步状语从句, 且使用了倒装语序。

[尝试翻译] 这倒不是因为她的论据的质量, 尽管她的论据很有力, 而是因为她文笔的美丽和高雅。

3. Her book not only changed the world; half a century later it remains a book that deserves to be reread today, so that we can once again feel ourselves warm

to the fire of its passionate message.

[句子分析] 本句是一个并列复合句。第一个 that 引导的定语从句, 修饰先行词 book; so that 引导目的状语从句。

[尝试翻译] 她的书不仅在当时改变了世界; 半个世纪后的今天, 它仍然是一本值得人们重读的书, 以再次感受她充满感情的文字带给我们火焰般的温暖。

思维品质培养

Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. What's the moral lesson behind "A Fable for Tomorrow"?

The moral lesson is that financial profit should not come at the expense of the environment and the creatures living in it.

2. In what different ways do *First Snow* and *Silent Spring* raise people's awareness of nature?

First Snow shows the beauty of nature—and in particular the snow—through its words and imagery, while *Silent Spring* describes an unnatural spring without the beauty of birdsong. They each raise people's awareness of nature by highlighting the interplay between nature and human behaviour.

课后素养评价(二十九)

I. 单词拼写

- Smoking might be banned (禁止) totally in most buildings in big cities.
- From his puzzled (困惑的) look, we can tell that he is not aware of the topic we are discussing.
- His mouth became dry, his eyes widened, and he began to tremble (发抖) all over.
- He found it difficult to get the precise (精确的) location of the marsh.
- They launched (发起) an online activity to raise money to set up a school for them.

- I want to serve as a volunteer of this international tennis competition because I'm really passionate (具有强烈信念的) about tennis.
- Such is the elegance (优美) of this typeface that it is still a favourite of designers.
- Diamonds (钻石) are said to be the hardest known mineral.
- He had made a thorough (缜密的) investigation. No wonder he knew so much about it.
- When he was still very young, Ba Jin established his reputation (名声) he still enjoys today as one of China's greatest writers.

II. 短语填空

in particular; be aware of; be regarded as; rather than; dozens of; stand by; alert... to...; speak of

1. He mistakenly believed that his family would stand by him.
2. They had been alerted to the possibility of further price rises.
3. Facing up to your problems rather than running away from them is the best approach to working things out.
4. The computer game is designed for game lovers, young ones in particular.
5. It was several minutes before the hostess was aware of her mistakes.
6. When they were talking, one of them spoke of his experience in China.
7. As we know, English is regarded as a global language, which plays an important role in our life.
8. She was picked out from dozens of applicants for the job.

III. 完成句子

1. Worried, we urged/urge them to solve the problem as soon as possible.
我们很担心,所以敦促他们尽快解决这个问题。
2. What they want to do at present is to replace the old car with a new one.
他们目前想做的是将旧车换成一辆新车。
3. The manager did attempt to ban using phones during working hours at that time.
经理那时确实试图禁止在工作时间使用手机。
4. Unless it snows heavily, we will go to school as usual.
我们还是会照常去学校,除非下大雪。
5. Hard though they tried, they couldn't make her change her mind.
尽管他们做了很大努力,还是没法让她改变主意。

IV. 七选五

A new report says plastic is responsible for the damage to the oceans and the undersea environment. The findings were announced recently at a United Nations conference. 1

Plastic thrown away carelessly makes its way into rivers and other waterways. 2 After a while, it collects in the sea. And plastic never goes away. Plastic is not biodegradable—destroyed by bacteria or natural processes. Instead, it just breaks up into smaller pieces over time. The oceans contain a lot of chemicals and other pollutants. 3 That means harmful material may get into our food supply.

4 Human beings cause pollution and they can take steps to stop it. They can use fewer single-use containers and throw plastic away correctly. Plastic recycling programmes also work where old bottles and other plastic are collected, broken down and used to make new products.

The report also calls on companies to improve methods for using plastic. 5 And it calls for information about the way plastic is thrown out or removed from use.

By putting a new value on plastic, industry has a special reason to clean up the environment. But all of the companies must join to deal with the problem.

- A. Then, fish may eat the plastic.
- B. It asks them to better measure and direct plastic use.
- C. The plastic eventually reaches coastal areas and ocean waters.
- D. The report talks about the harm to sea life and what might be done to improve the situation.
- E. Plastic should be gathered together and reused.
- F. But people can make a big difference.
- G. It is convenient to use plastic bags in everyday life.

答案: 1~5 DCAFB

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. The reporter was **banned** from entering the company unless he was permitted. 禁止
- 2. More and more young couples admitted that living together with **dozens** of relatives proved to be great fun. 许多
- 3. To increase levels of community service, some schools have **launched** compulsory volunteer programmes. 发起
- 4. Regular six-month checkups allow your dentist to give your teeth a **thorough** cleaning and examine your mouth and gums. 仔细的
- 5. The front courtyard and the **backyard** are places for children to play. 后院
- 6. The **diamond** shines brightly in the sun. 钻石
- 7. They rounded off their performance with a mixed **chorus**. 合唱曲
- 8. It was this campaign that established the paper's good **reputation**. 名誉, 声誉

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <u>tremble</u> <i>v.</i> 颤抖, 发抖 | trembling <i>adj.</i> 发抖的; 哆嗦的 |
| <u>puzzled</u> <i>adj.</i> 困惑的, 无法理解的 | puzzle <i>v.</i> 使困惑 <i>n.</i> 谜, 智力游戏 |
| | puzzling <i>adj.</i> 令人困惑的 |
| | puzzlement <i>n.</i> 迷惑; 困惑 |
| <u>passionate</u> <i>adj.</i> 具有强烈信念的 | passion <i>n.</i> 激情 |
| <u>elegance</u> <i>n.</i> 优美; 简洁 | elegant <i>adj.</i> 高雅的; 优美的 |
| <u>alert</u> <i>v.</i> 提醒, 使(某人)意识到 | alertness <i>n.</i> 警戒; 机敏 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. stand by 坚持; 支持
- 2. alert... to ... 使……意识到……
- 3. or so 大约; 左右
- 4. rather than 而不是
- 5. be aware of 意识到
- 6. in addition to 除……之外(还)
- 7. scores of 大量; 许多
- 8. in particular 尤其, 特别

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 形容词作状语

Many people spoke of them, puzzled and disturbed.

许多人谈到它们, 都感到困惑和不安。

2. 句型公式: though 引导让步状语从句时的倒装

This is not so much because of the quality of her arguments, strong though they are, but because of the beauty and elegance of her writing.

这倒不是因为她的论据的质量, 尽管她的论据很

3. 句型公式: make+宾语+宾语补足语

Carson urged people to make themselves aware of the facts and do something about the situation.

卡森敦促人们要意识到事实, 并对现状采取行动。

4. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作状语

The 50 or so pages at the end of the book list Carson's sources, showing how thorough and precise she was as a scientist.

书的最后 50 页左右列出了卡森的资料来源, 展示了她作为一名科学家是多么一丝不苟。

任务型课堂

1. ban v. 禁止, 取缔 n. 禁令

[教材原文] Now **banned** in many countries, it is still used in some for malaria control.

现在在许多国家被禁止使用,但在一些国家仍被用于控制疟疾。

[归纳拓展]

(1) a ban on... ……的禁令

put/place/lay a ban on 禁止……

lift/remove the ban 解除禁令

(2) ban sb. from doing sth. 禁止某人做某事(通常用于被动语态)

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① There is to be a total ban on smoking in the office.

② We are banned from reporting any details about her case.

③ Chemical weapons are banned (ban) internationally.

(2) 翻译句子

法庭禁止他参加足球比赛。

He was banned from taking part in football matches by the court.

2. puzzled adj. 困惑的, 无法理解的

[教材原文] Many people spoke of them, **puzzled** and disturbed.

许多人谈到它们,都感到困惑和不安。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be puzzled about 对……迷惑不解

(2) puzzle n. 难题; 谜 v. 使迷惑; 对……苦苦思索
puzzle out 琢磨出……的答案

puzzle over sth. 苦苦思考某事(物)

in a puzzle about (sth.) 对(某事)困惑不解

(3) puzzling adj. 令人困惑的; 费解的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① To explain the puzzling (puzzle) findings, he offered two theories.

② There was a puzzled (puzzle) look on her face.

③ It's good for students to puzzle things out for themselves.

④ The class puzzled over a poem by Shakespeare.

(2) 一句多译

他们为何不接受他的忠告,这使我困惑不解。

① What puzzled me was why they didn't take his advice.

② I was puzzled about why they didn't take his advice.

③ I was in a puzzle about why they didn't take his advice.

④ Why they didn't take his advice puzzled me.

3. 形容词作状语

[教材原文] Many people spoke of them, **puzzled and disturbed**.

许多人谈到它们,都感到困惑和不安。

[句式分析] 本句是简单句,主干是 Many people spoke of them; puzzled and disturbed 为形容词短语在句中作状语。

[归纳拓展]

形容词作状语,说明主语的性质和状态。形容词作状语的特点是形容词的逻辑主语就是句子的主语,并且通常可以用并列句或主从复合句来改写。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Hopeless (hope), we watched the house being destroyed before our eyes.

② Curious (curiosity) about everything, we looked around.

③ Overjoyed (overjoy), she dashed out of the house.

(2) 完成句子

① The children finally arrived home, safe and sound.
孩子们最终安然无恙地回到了家。

② After his journey from abroad, Richard returned home, tired.

结束国外的旅程回到家,理查德感到疲惫。

③ Surprised and happy, Tony stood up and accepted the prize.

既惊讶又高兴,托尼站起来领了奖。

4. more... than... 与其说……倒不如说……

[教材原文] Some also said that her work was **more** emotional **than** scientific.

一些人还说,她的作品与其说是科学之作,不如说是情感之作。

[句式分析] 句中 more... than... 意为“与其说……倒不如说……”;另外,此结构意思还可以是“比……多,比……更”。

[归纳拓展]

- (1)no more than 只不过;仅仅
no more+*adj.*+than 同……一样不
not more... than... 不如;不及
- (2)more than 超过;不止
more than one+单数名词,意为“不止一个……”,
在语意上虽为复数,但作主语时,谓语动词用单数。

- (3)more than { 基数词
“多于;超出”(相当于 over)
名词
“不仅仅”(相当于 not only)
形容词/副词
“非常;很”(相当于 very)
从句“超出……”

[即学即练]

- 完成句子
- ①This book is not more difficult than that one.
这本书不如那本书难。
- ②He's no more able to read Spanish than I am.
他和我都不懂西班牙语。
- ③He is more than a writer; he is also a professor.
他不仅仅是一位作家,还是一名教授。
- ④她在这部电影中与其说是演员,不如说是制片人。而且她必须比别人做得更多,这让她很累。
She is more a producer than an actress in this film. And she had to do more than others, which makes her more than tired.

多义词汇专练

1. The baby is just one day old and has not yet left hospital. She is quiet but **alert**. B
A. *v.* 使(某人)意识到 B. *adj.* 警觉的 C. *v.* 向……报警
2. **launch**: A. *v.* 发起,发动 B. *v.* 发射 C. *v.* 发行
- ①We will **launch** a rocket next week. B
②He plans to **launch** a big attack on the enemy. A
③If a company **launches** a new product, it makes it available to the public. C

写作探究

诗歌

「写作指导」

诗歌是一种抒情言志的文学体裁,是一种用高度凝练的语言生动形象地表达作者丰富的情感、集中反映社会生活并且有一定节奏和韵律的文学体裁。在写作时应注意:

1. 思考你想要在诗中表达什么。想一想你为什么要写诗,你的目标读者是谁,然后据此进行你的写作。
2. 谨慎选择正确的词语。两个读法相近的词或者同义词能组成有趣的双关语。
3. 使用具体的意象和生动的描述。这样可以引起感官上的共鸣,帮助读者更加沉浸于文字中。
4. 运用诗歌手法增强诗歌的美感和意蕴。押韵是最为重要的诗歌写作手法之一。押韵可以为诗句增加节奏感和韵律感,增强意蕴,或者让整首诗歌更为连贯,同时也让诗歌更有美感。
5. 尝试在诗歌结尾增加一个转折点。把最有力的启示或洞悉放在诗歌结尾,给读者一些可以思考的空间。

「典题示例」

阅读下面的诗歌,然后用英语写一首有关春天的诗歌。

LINES WRITTEN IN EARLY SPRING

I heard a thousand blended notes,
While in a grove I sate reclined,
In that sweet mood when pleasant thoughts
Bring sad thoughts to the mind.

To her fair works did Nature link
The human soul that through me ran;
And much it grieved my heart to think
What man has made of man.

Through primrose tufts, in that green bower,
The periwinkle trailed its wreaths;
And this my faith that every flower
Enjoys the air it breathes.

The birds around me hopped and played,
Their thoughts I cannot measure;
But the least motion which they made
It seemed a thrill of pleasure.

The budding twigs spread out their fan,
To catch the breezy air;
And I must think, do all I can,
That there was pleasure there.

If this belief from heaven be sent,
If such be Nature's holy plan,
Have I not reason to lament
What man has made of man?

写于早春

我躺卧在树林之中，
听着融洽的千万声音，
闲适的情绪，愉快的思想，
却带来了忧心忡忡。

大自然把她的美好事物
通过我联系人的灵魂，
而我痛心万分，想起了
人怎样对待着人。

那边绿荫中的樱草花丛，
有长春花在把花圈编织，
我深信每朵花不论大小，
都能享受它呼吸的空气。

四围的鸟儿跳了又要，
我不知道它们想些什么，
但它们每个细微的动作，
似乎都激起心头的欢乐。

萌芽的嫩枝张臂如扇，
捕捉那阵阵的清风，
使我没法不深切地感到，
它们也自有欢欣。

如果上天叫我这样相信，
如果这是大自然的用心，
难道我没有理由悲叹
人怎样对待着人？

Step 1: 审题谋篇

| | |
|------|---|
| 文体 | 诗歌 |
| 格律 | 抑扬格五音步 |
| 修辞手法 | 押韵、重复、比喻 |
| 要点 | 1. 用花与树表达希望 2. 用棕榈表达胜利 3. 用鸟的歌唱表达喜悦 |

Step 2: 要点补全

①Spring, is the year's pleasant king,
Then blooms each thing, then maids dance in a
circle,
Cold doth not sting, the pretty birds do sing.
令人愉快的春天,你是快乐之王总领全年;
万紫千红争艳,少女环舞翩跹,
乍暖还寒,鸟啼鸣唱。

②The palm and may make country houses
beautiful,
Lambs frisk and play, the shepherds pipe all day,
And we hear aye birds tune this merry lay.
棕榈树和山楂花,为农舍梳妆,
羊羔嬉闹奔跑,牧笛终日悠扬,
百鸟齐鸣,歌声谐婉四处飘荡。

③The fields breathe sweet, the daisies kiss our
sole,
Young lovers meet, old wives a sunning sit,
In every street these tunes our ears do greet.
四野四围飘香,雏菊亲吻脚掌,
少男少女互诉衷肠,老妇晒春阳,
大街小巷,总有歌声在耳畔荡漾。

Step 3: 句式升级

①采用重复、押韵升级 Step 2 中的①句。
Spring, the sweet spring, is the year's pleasant king,
Then blooms each thing, then maids dance in a
ring,
Cold doth not sting, the pretty birds do sing.

②采用重复、押韵升级 Step 2 中的②句。
The palm and may make country houses gay,
Lambs frisk and play, the shepherds pipe all day,
And we hear aye birds tune this merry lay.

③采用重复、押韵升级 Step 2 中的③句。
The fields breathe sweet, the daisies kiss our feet,

Young lovers meet, old wives a sunning sit,
In every street these tunes our ears do greet.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Spring

Spring, the sweet spring, is the year's pleasant
king,

Then blooms each thing, then maids dance in a
ring,

Cold doth not sting, the pretty birds do sing:
Cuckoo, jug-jug, pu-we, to-witta-woo!

The palm and may make country houses gay,
Lambs frisk and play, the shepherds pipe
all day,

And we hear aye birds tune this merry lay:
Cuckoo, jug-jug, pu-we, to-witta-woo!

The fields breathe sweet, the daisies kiss our
feet,

Young lovers meet, old wives a sunning sit,
In every street these tunes our ears do greet:
Cuckoo, jug-jug, pu-we, to-witta-woo!
Spring! The sweet spring!

「学以致用」

春天是万物复苏的季节,请你以“春天”为题用英语写一首诗歌。

【参考范文】

Spring

Today is the day when bold kites fly,
When cumulus clouds roar across the sky.
When robins return, when children cheer,
When light rain beckons spring to appear.

Today is the day when daffodils bloom,
Which children pick to fill the room.
Today is the day when grasses green,
When leaves burst forth for spring to be seen.

课后素养评价(三十)

I. 单句语法填空

- Don't lose heart; all your friends will stand by you.
- As she turned back she caught the puzzled (puzzle) look on her mother's face.
- Dozens (dozen) of flats had been completely destroyed.
- The furniture managed to combine practicality with elegance (elegant).
- When I was standing before the judges, I was so nervous that I kept trembling (tremble).
- Beyond these, I also think you need to be passionate about what you do.
- We time the process to manufacture cars very precisely (precise).
- If we do not deal with pressure properly, it may cause harm to the body.

II. 补全句子

- 许多学校都禁止学生在课堂上使用手机。(ban)
Scores of schools ban students from using cellphones in class.

- 计划制订得不够仔细,这导致了该项目的失败。(thorough, 分词作状语)

The plan had not been made thoroughly,
resulting in the failure of the project.

- 事故后他的车受损不严重,还是值得修修的。(deserve)

His car was not badly damaged and deserved to
be repaired/deserved repairing after the accident.

- 她很严厉——如果她不要求,我们一句话也不敢说。(unless)

She's very strict—we don't dare to say a word
unless she asks us to/unless asked to.

- 我想买一台这个牌子的洗衣机,因为它因质量好、价格低而享有良好的声誉。(as)

I want to buy a washing machine of this brand, as it
has a good reputation for good quality and low price.

- 尽管很累,这位工人仍旧被催促去修理汽车。(though, urge)

Tired though he was/is, the worker was/is urged
to repair the car.

7. 意识到了吸烟的危险, 这名男子让他的儿子戒烟。
(形容词作状语, “make+宾语+宾语补足语”结构)

Aware of the danger of smoking, the man made/
makes his son quit smoking.

III. 语法填空

Iceland is a land of volcanoes. Nowhere is
1. more evident (evident) than on the Westman
Islands off the southern coast of Iceland. Here,
2. centuries (century) of volcanic eruptions formed
many eye-catching sea cliffs (悬崖), among 3. which
one stands out: A part of the volcano-formed coast
on Heimaey looks exactly like the head of a large
elephant 4. sticking (stick) its trunk in the water.

In fact, it looks so much like an elephant that
many people think it must have been shaped by
humans. That is not 5. the case, however. The
elephant's realistic 6. appearance (appear) is, at
least partially, due to the fact that the cliff
7. consists (consist) of a special rock. The rock
gives the figure “skin” that looks wrinkled and grey,
just like that of a real elephant.

The most common theory is that the rock
formations came from the Eldfell Volcano, which
8. has erupted (erupt) many times since the 1940s.

In spite of the strong resemblance to an
elephant, some people 9. actually (actual) see
something different when they look at the rock
formation. They see the fictional character Cthulhu,
a sea beast.

Whether you see an elephant 10. or a fictional
beast, as one of many attractions on Heimaey, the
rock does draw curious sightseers.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假如你叫李华, 是一名高中生。你和外国笔友
Lucy 都是文学爱好者, 尤其喜欢英文诗歌。最近,
Lucy 发来电子邮件, 询问你最喜欢哪一首英文诗歌、
作者是谁、你为什么喜欢它。

1. 请根据自己的亲身体会, 用英语给 Lucy 写一
封电子邮件;
2. 词数 80 左右; 开头和结尾已经给出, 不计入总
词数。

【参考范文】

Dear Lucy,

I am glad to tell you about my favourite poem.
You know, I like Robert Burns very much. My

favourite poem is A Red, Red Rose. In this poem,
Burns compares the woman he loves dearly to a red
rose that is in full bloom in June. Whenever I read
the poem, a red rose will appear in my mind.
Though the words he uses are simple and easy to
understand, Burns expresses his feelings so
powerfully that I am deeply impressed. Besides, I
like the rhymes at the end of the sentences, which
make the poem read well. Have you ever read poems
by Burns? How do you like them?

Looking forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两
段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I live in a small but lovely neighbourhood. Our
house is neither large nor luxurious, but it has a
fairly big garden. My father loves his garden. He
planted some seeds in it and took good care of the
plants, watering them, applying fertiliser, weeding
and getting rid of bugs. He was never tired of doing
all that stuff. But at that time, I didn't understand
why working in the dirt excited him so much.

Unfortunately, in the summer vacation before
senior high school, my father was seriously injured
in an accident. He had to stay in bed for a while. My
mother had several business trips, so she couldn't
take care of the garden. I didn't want my father to
worry. I said that I would take care of his garden
until he recovered. I assumed that the little plants
would continue to grow as long as they had water,
and luckily it rained fairly often, so I didn't think
much about the garden.

One Saturday morning, my father said to me,
“Christine, the vegetables should be about ready to
be picked. Let's have a salad today!” I went out to
the garden and was upset to see that many of the
lettuce (生菜) leaves and carrots had been half eaten
by bugs. There were hundreds of bugs all over
them!

I panicked for a moment but then I quietly went
to the nearest supermarket to buy some vegetables.
When I was making the salad, my mother came
home and saw the bag from the supermarket in the
kitchen. I was embarrassed and admitted, “Dad

would like a salad, but the garden is a disaster. I don't want to disappoint him, so I went to the store and bought some vegetables." My mother smiled, saying, "Honey, you know what is the right thing to do."

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

My father seemed very pleased when I took the salad to him. "It looks so good. Your salad makes my mouth water," Dad couldn't wait to try it. He forked a piece into his mouth and chewed slowly, his face spreading in a satisfied smile. Giving me a thumbs-up, he said, "Little did I know you are so good at gardening. You are a man of your word." My father kept praising me, which made my ears

burning. Feeling bad about what I had done, I forced a bitter smile. How could I cheat my father?

Feeling guilty, I decided to do the right thing. With tears welling up in my eyes, I told my father I didn't live up to his expectations and that the garden was a mess. To my surprise, instead of scolding me, my father patted me on the shoulder gently and told me to turn to him if I needed any help. Under his guidance, I learned to apply fertiliser, weed and remove bugs. The vegetables became better and better day by day, and so did my father. I began to enjoy taking care of vegetables and I finally understood my father's pleasure of working in the dirt.

阶段综合提升(三)

Unit 5—Unit 6

I. 阅读理解

A

After a two-year pause, our summer programme in Madrid is back. A tradition of 62 years has made Rollins' Verano Espanol the most popular abroad programme on campus.

Programme Highlights:

- Earn 8 Rollins credit hours (two courses) in 6 weeks
- Small class sizes, 8 students max, per class
- All levels of Spanish proficiency allowed (from nothing to advanced)
- Stay at a centrally located dorm
- Full orientation during arrival weekend; Airport pick up, transportation to the dorms
- Internship (实习) option/Included weekend long trip to the scenic mountain town of Candelario/weekly cultural activities

Verano Espanol: a Rollins Tradition

• Rollins' Verano Espanol (Spanish Summer) celebrates its 62nd anniversary and is one of the oldest and most prestigious American summer study programmes in Spain.

• INB students: Do you know that you can complete your language, international experience and internship requirements in just 6 weeks in Madrid?

• Internships available at IFEMA, the Trade Fair Institution of Madrid, with over 30 years' experience of staging trade fairs, it is the most important of its kind in Spain and one of the leaders in Europe.

Verano Espanol: Why Madrid?

For its unique blend of culture, history, food, and fun, Madrid is one of the world's top destinations. It is one of the world's most lively cities, with unparalleled cultural offerings and a vibrant nightlife. According to *Lonely Planet*, "No city on earth is more alive than Madrid, an attractive place whose sheer energy carries a simple message: this is one city which really knows how to live."

Last information session: Thursday, Feb. 10th. Bieberbach-Reed (Campus Center, by the Marketplace). Stop by anytime between 12:30—1:30 pm.

Programme application deadline: March 28

Programme Travel Dates: 14 May—25 June

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍的是一个在马德里的西班牙语课程。

1. By participating in the programme, you can _____.
- A. take classes with big size
 - B. live at the countryside dorm
 - C. enjoy trips during weekdays
 - D. gain the opportunity for internship

D 细节理解题。根据 **Programme Highlights** 部分中的“• Internship (实习) option/Included weekend long trip to the scenic mountain town of Candelario/weekly cultural activities”可知,通过参与该项目,你可以获得实习机会。故选 D。

2. According to *Lonely Planet*, Madrid is chosen as the programme's destination mainly for its _____.

A. climate B. location
C. culture D. scenery

C 推理判断题。根据 **Verano Espanol: Why Madrid?** 部分中的“No city on earth is more alive than Madrid, an attractive place whose sheer energy carries a simple message: this is one city which really knows how to live.”可知,据《孤独星球》报道,马德里被选为该项目的目的地主要是因为它的文化。故选 C。

3. When will the programme get started according to the passage?

A. On February 10th.
B. On March 28th.
C. On May 14th.
D. On June 25th.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Programme Travel Dates** 部分中的“14 May—25 June”可知,这个项目 5 月 14 日开始。故选 C。

B

Thirteen years ago, Ava Kaufman was fighting for her life. Now, thanks to a donor heart and successful organ transplant, she's alive—and saving others.

“My life changed on a dime,” said Kaufman, who was a professional dancer and black belt in taekwondo (跆拳道) when an autoimmune disease went undiagnosed and she ended up on life support in intensive care with organ failure. On her birthday in 2009, she received a new heart and promised that if she could live to raise her young daughter, she would do everything she could to give back. Today, Kaufman is doing just that.

Kaufman started her non-profit, Ava's Heart. She and her organisation offer transplant patients services that are often not covered by insurance, including food, gas, and housing. She found out that patients often must show financial security and be able to afford transportation and housing near their

transplant hospital to get listed. And for some patients hoping to receive a transplant in a big city like Los Angeles, where rents are high and hotels are expensive, the cost alone could be a barrier.

Kaufman runs two housing locations where she houses up to five transplant patients and their families at a time, at no cost, after their surgery. This allows them to remain close to their transplant hospital for the duration of their aftercare. Since she started, Kaufman has helped about 175 people with post-transplant housing, and about 150 more with support services and financial assistance.

At 72, Kaufman works out every day and has no plans to slow down. “I feel like I was chosen to do this,” she said.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了 Kaufman 经历心脏移植手术后成立慈善机构 Ava's Heart,以帮助更多的移植病人重获新生的故事。

4. What left Kaufman's life in danger?

A. A heart from a donor.
B. An undiagnosed disease.
C. An organ transplant.
D. A promise.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“who was a professional dancer and black belt in taekwondo (跆拳道) when an autoimmune disease went undiagnosed and she ended up on life support in intensive care with organ failure”可知,未能确诊的自身免疫力疾病使 Kaufman 生命处于危险之中。故选 B。

5. What does the underlined phrase “on a dime” in Paragraph 2 probably mean?

A. Immediately.
B. Slightly.
C. Frequently.
D. Occasionally.

A 词义猜测题。根据画线短语后的“who was a professional dancer and black belt in taekwondo (跆拳道) when an autoimmune disease went undiagnosed and she ended up on life support in intensive care with organ failure”可知,Kaufman 曾是一名职业舞者并获得过跆拳道黑带段位,但是由于生病,她的人生很快发生了改变。由此可推知,此处指她的人生在生病后立即发生了变化。所以画线短语 on a dime 意为“立即,马上”。故选 A。

6. What can we infer about Ava's Heart?

- A. It has offered housing to 175 patients after their transplant surgeries.
- B. It plans to slow down because no profit can be made from the patients.
- C. It was started by Kaufman to help the transplant patients with insurance.
- D. It makes a great difference to the patients who can't afford the cost.

D 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“Since she started, Kaufman has helped about 175 people with post-transplant housing, and about 150 more with support services and financial assistance.”可知, Kaufman 的机构已经为很多病人提供了住所、服务和经济援助。由此可推知, Ava's Heart 对不能支付移植费用的病人帮助很大。故选 D。

7. What is the best title for the text?

- A. A Woman Fighting for Life
- B. Never Lose Heart in Future
- C. Home Is Where the Heart Is
- D. Heart Donation to Those in Need

C 标题归纳题。通读全文, 尤其根据第三段中的“Kaufman started her non-profit, Ava's Heart. She and her organisation offer transplant patients services that are often not covered by insurance, including food, gas, and housing.”可知, 本文主要介绍了 Kaufman 在心脏移植手术后, 创建了非营利组织——Ava's Heart, 通过为移植病人提供术后住处来帮助他们。C 项“Home Is Where the Heart Is”符合文义, 最适合做本文的标题, 选项中的“Home”指的是 Ava's Heart 无偿为移植病人提供的住处。故选 C。

C

While it may sound like something that has crawled out of your nightmares, cyborg cockroaches (蟑螂) have arrived as friends rather than foes. Scientists have designed a new remote controlled insect, equipped with a battery “backpack” that is powered by solar panels.

The cockroach, which is part insect and part machine, is intended to enter dangerous areas, monitor the environment or undertake search and rescue missions without being recharged. The researchers had to install some components into a tiny pack to allow for the cockroach's natural movements.

The cockroaches are still alive, but sensory organs attached to the end of their bodies send electrical impulses that cause the insect to move right or left. A battery is necessary for the sending and receiving of these electrical signals, which needs to be charged up. While it's possible to build docking stations for recharging the battery, they need to return and it could disrupt time-sensitive missions. To solve the tough problem, the team wanted to create a more practical version that does not need to return to a docking station when it runs out of power.

Therefore, they designed an on-board solar cell that could continuously ensure that the cockroach stays charged while it works. However, cockroaches have a limited surface area available for all the components necessary to move its legs and keep it powered. The solution was to design a special “backpack” that could neatly carry both the wireless leg-control module and rechargeable battery. This was attached to the top of the insect on its front, and was 3D printed to fit perfectly to the curved surface of cockroach. It allowed for this electronic device to be stably fixed on the insect for over a month, while leaving enough space to implant the solar panel.

Famously able to survive a nuclear war, cockroaches have been the inspiration for a number of technologies in recent years. Different teams of scientists have designed remote-controlled robo-bugs that can climb walls, carry objects and find humans during search-and-rescue missions.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了“太阳能蟑螂”及其工作方式和作用。

8. What is a cyborg cockroach?

- A. A tiny backpack with a solar panel.
- B. A robot working as a power station.
- C. A kind of bug discovered by scientists.
- D. An insect remote-controlled by humans.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Scientists have designed a new remote controlled insect, equipped with a battery ‘backpack’ that is powered by solar panels.”可知, 电子蟑螂是由人类遥控的昆虫。故选 D。

9. What is a big challenge to create cyborg cockroaches?

- A. The components are too small.
- B. Recharging can delay urgent tasks.
- C. Sending electrical impulses is dangerous.
- D. Their organs can't receive signals timely.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“While it's possible to build docking stations for recharging the battery, they need to return and it could disrupt time-sensitive missions. To solve the tough problem, the team wanted to create a more practical version that does not need to return to a docking station when it runs out of power.”可知,制造电子蟑螂的最大挑战是充电会延迟紧急任务。故选 B。

10. What do we know about the cyborg cockroaches in Paragraph 4?

- A. The special backpack is fixed on their legs.
- B. 3D printing solves all problems perfectly.
- C. They have a limited surface to store power.
- D. They can still get charged while working.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“Therefore, they designed an on-board solar cell that could continuously ensure that the cockroach stays charged while it works.”可知,电子蟑螂在工作时仍然可以充电。故选 D。

11. What is the best title of the passage?

- A. A Solar Powered Cockroach
- B. The Future of Rescue Mission
- C. New Recharged Solar Panels
- D. Cockroaches' Special Backpack

A 标题归纳题。第一段中提到“Scientists have designed a new remote controlled insect, equipped with a battery ‘backpack’ that is powered by solar panels.”,并且文章主要介绍了“太阳能蟑螂”及其工作方式和作用,由此可知,A项“太阳能蟑螂”最适合做本文的标题。故选 A。

D

Despite their endless social activities, closely packed urban environments often come with the hidden phenomenon of increased loneliness. According to Dr Vivek Murthy, United States Surgeon General, the global “loneliness epidemic” is an overlooked consequence of urban living that carries serious risks, associated with heart disease, depression, anxiety, and dementia.

While there are many ways to overcome loneliness, such as redesigning urban architecture to help facilitate social interactions or making it easier for people to own pets, a new study also recommends adding nature into the mix.

The findings, published in the journal *Scientific Reports*, follow a review of assessments provided by more than 750 UK residents who volunteered to use a custom-built smartphone app for two weeks. The participants were questioned randomly three times a day using a technique called an “ecological momentary assessment”. In addition to questions about overcrowding and social inclusion (融入), the volunteers were asked about their natural surroundings, such as “Can you see trees, plants and water right now?” Feelings of “momentary loneliness” were then ranked on a five-point scale.

According to the more than 16,600 assessments received, overcrowded environments increased feelings of loneliness by a shocking 38%, regardless of age, gender, education level, or occupation. When people were able to interact with green spaces or hear birds or see the sky, however, loneliness dropped by 28%. Social inclusivity, defined by the research team as feeling welcomed by a group or sharing similar values, also dropped loneliness by 21%.

These findings appear to correlate (联系) with previous research into the mental benefits of walking through natural areas. Johanna Gibbons, leader of the research team, further indicates that high-quality green and blue spaces such as parks and rivers in dense urban areas, which is often viewed as a key weapon in the fight against climate change, can also be critical in improving our own well-being and reducing feelings of isolation. She said, “I believe deep in our souls, there are really deep connections with natural forces.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章论述了喧嚣的城市中孤独感对人们的影响。

12. What problem is discussed in Paragraph 1?

- A. Urban living lacks social connection.
- B. Loneliness is a growing threat in cities.
- C. Modern cities are getting overcrowded.
- D. Aging population are facing more risks.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段第一句“Despite their endless social activities, closely packed urban environments often come with the hidden phenomenon of increased loneliness.”可知,在城市里,孤独是一个日益严重的威胁。故选 B。

13. What did the social survey focus on?

- A. How loneliness affected people of all ages.
- B. What the root of the loneliness in cities was.
- C. How hi-technology improved people's lives.
- D. What people's favourite living surroundings were.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“In addition to questions about overcrowding and social inclusion (融入), the volunteers were asked about their natural surroundings, such as ‘Can you see trees, plants and water right now?’”可知,社会调查主要关注的是找到城市中孤独的来源。故选 B。

14. What might help deal with urban loneliness according to the new survey?

- A. A life experience in nature.
- B. Low rates of social activities.
- C. An overcrowded environment.
- D. A design of urban architecture.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“When people were able to interact with green spaces or hear birds or see the sky, however, loneliness dropped by 28%.”可知,亲近大自然可以帮助减少城市孤独。故选 A。

15. What can be inferred from the last paragraph?

- A. Playing hard is harmful to mental health.
- B. People in green spaces may be more cheerful.
- C. Global warming changes our characteristics.
- D. Everything is connected with natural forces.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Johanna Gibbons, leader of the research team, further indicates that high-quality green and blue spaces such as parks and rivers in dense urban areas, which is often viewed as a key weapon in the fight against climate change, can also be critical in improving our own well-being and reducing feelings of isolation.”可知,公园绿地可以提高我们的幸福感,减少孤独感,使我们更加积极地对待生活。故选 B。

II. 七选五

Picture this: you've just settled into your

workday and pulled up that big report you need to finish, when a friend sends you a couple of celebrity videos through social media. 16 And then the next thing you know, an hour has gone by while that big report sits, ignored, on your desk. So how does that happen?

To understand this, we conducted a series of studies with 6,445 people. Through this research, we identified three factors: the amount of media the person has already viewed, the similarity of the media they've viewed, and the manner in which they viewed the media.

We found the order and types of content we consume can affect our decision to keep consuming similar content. But what drives this effect? 17 When something feels more accessible, it becomes easier to process, leading us to enjoy it more.

These results also explain why it's so easy to get distracted by apps on social media at work.

18 They offer bite-sized content that makes it easy to quickly consume several videos in a row. They often automatically suggest similar content, and many of them even automatically start playing similar videos, reducing the potential for interruptions.

19 To fight the pull, make an effort to just watch one video. If you really want to watch multiple in a row, choose videos that seem unrelated. You can also use a social media timer that urges you to take a break after a certain amount of time, or even just consciously remind yourself to consume different kinds of content.

So, if you're struggling to climb out of a rabbit hole, try to find ways to reduce the similarity, repetitiveness, and relatedness of the content you're consuming. 20 Once you manage to break free, you'll be back at that big report in no time.

- A. It can be difficult, but it's not impossible.
- B. You figure you'll just take a few minutes to watch them.
- C. Accessibility refers to how familiar a given kind of content feels.
- D. These platforms are designed to trap viewers in a social media rabbit hole.
- E. Prior research suggests that the three factors all increase the accessibility of similar media.

- F. The good news is, a better understanding of the problem can give us the tools to escape it.
- G. This will become a problem if it keeps you from doing the things you actually want to be doing.

答案: 16~20 BEDFA

III. 完形填空

Jason Box, 85, started learning Welsh, his native language, at the age of 70. He grew up in South Wales, where he was 21 and educated in English and since the age of 23 has lived and worked in Birmingham. After retiring, he decided that he wanted to reconnect with his roots. “I’m a Welshman and everybody should be able to speak their 22 language.”

With 23 time on his hands, he started looking on the Internet for ways to learn Welsh, but the exercises he 24 didn’t help him with pronunciation. Then last year he started 25 with SpeakWelsh, which offers a series of podcasts (播客) and runs twice-monthly classes with a teacher, where he meets and practises with other 26 learners.

Jason is one of a number of older adults learning languages in 27 life. While younger people are 28 thought to be quick language learners, there is no evidence to suggest that senior learners are slower 29 absorbing new information according to Meg, head of languages at a university in London. 30, he says, the key element to being a successful language learner is motivation.

“I was excited at the prospect of learning a language,” says Jason. “I 31 not doing it in my younger days. When you’re bringing up a family and working, you’re 32 to those things. Learning a language and meeting people is exciting. It’s 33 to go out and I look forward to it.”

Learning a language could potentially help to 34 the growing concern around loneliness and among older people in the UK. “Loneliness is a terrible thing. Going to a class is socialising. If you get out, you are with other people and that’s a(n) 35 for sure,” says Jason.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了 70 岁的 Jason Box 是如何开始自学母语威尔士语的。

21. A. abandoned B. raised
C. lost D. changed

B 根据上文“He grew up in South Wales”可知,他在南威尔士被养育长大。故选 B。

22. A. foreign B. common
C. native D. formal

C 根据上文“Jason Box, 85, started learning Welsh, his native language, at the age of 70.”可知,这是他的母语。故选 C。

23. A. more B. limited
C. precious D. comfortable

A 根据上文“After retiring, he decided that he wanted to reconnect with his roots.”可知,他退休之后有更多时间学习。故选 A。

24. A. found B. finished
C. described D. recommended

A 根据上文“he started looking on the Internet for ways to learn Welsh”以及下文“didn’t help him with pronunciation”可知,此处是找到方法学习,但是这个方法对于发音没有帮助。故选 A。

25. A. breaking B. learning
C. meeting D. challenging

B 根据上文“he started looking on the Internet for ways to learn Welsh”可知,他开始找网络资源学习。故选 B。

26. A. podcast B. computer
C. language D. geography

C 根据上文“speak their 22 language”以及“with SpeakWelsh, which offers a series of podcasts (播客) and runs twice-monthly classes with a teacher”可知,这是一个用来学习语言的播客软件,用这个软件可以与其他语言学习者会面练习。故选 C。

27. A. busy B. free
C. earlier D. later

D 根据上文“Jason Box, 85, started learning Welsh, his native language, at the age of 70.”可知,他在晚年才开始学习语言。故选 D。

28. A. suddenly B. generally
C. initially D. apparently

B 根据下文“there is no evidence to suggest that senior learners are slower”可知,年轻人被普遍认为是快速的语言学习者。故选 B。

29. A. in terms of B. by means of
C. on behalf of D. in spite of

A 根据上文“younger people are 28 thought to be quick language learners”以及“senior learners are slower 29 absorbing new

information”可知,此处在进行青老年学习语言速度的对比,从这两方对比的讨论方面说明老年人学习语言的可能性。故选 A。

30. A. Instead B. Therefore
C. However D. Besides

A 根据上文“there is no evidence to suggest that senior learners are slower 29 absorbing new information”可知,掌握新知识不完全与年龄有直接关系,相反,学习动机才是最关键的因素。故选 A。

31. A. enjoy B. consider
C. suggest D. regret

D 根据下文“not doing it in my younger days”可知,此处是 Jason 对于年轻时没有学习母语而感到遗憾。故选 D。

32. A. attached B. opposed
C. led D. committed

D 根据上文“When you’re bringing up a family and working”可知,Jason 年轻时有工作和家庭两方面的压力,完成工作以及经营家庭是需要他全身心投入其中的。故选 D。

33. A. hard B. equal
C. nice D. safe

C 根据上文“Learning a language and meeting people is exciting.”可知,Jason 认为学习语言是一件值得期待的好事。故选 C。

34. A. cause B. increase
C. ease D. voice

C 根据下文“Loneliness is a terrible thing. Going to a class is socialising. If you get out, you are with other people”可知,现在老年人有缓解孤独的方式,可以缓解大众对他们的担忧。故选 C。

35. A. solution B. benefit
C. opportunity D. experience

B 根据上文“Loneliness is a terrible thing. Going to a class is socialising.”可知,学习语言、与人社交是老年人缓解孤独的方式之一,这是有好处的。故选 B。

IV. 语法填空

Many artists draw with pens and brushes, but few “paint” with knives. Wang Jing, a woman from Shenyang city in northeast China’s Liaoning Province, **36. has been engaged/has been engaging** (engage) in this novel art form for 27 years.

In 1995, Wang was inspired by an **37. accidental**

(accident) cut by a knife on a piece of red paper, which left a white line. Using knives and paper, she then completed a painting of a pair of peacocks that later became **38. a** source of motivation for her 27-year efforts.

Unlike traditional paintings, onto which colours are “added”, “knife painters” apply varied pressure on the paper in different **39. directions** (direction) to create different colours and tones.

The novel art form was known to few people just after Wang **40. created** (create) it. Even Wang herself was not expecting to make **41. it** something big at the beginning. But thanks **42. to** her huge enthusiasm for the art form, she has persisted with it for the past 27 years.

Wang has completed hundreds of paintings about Chinese culture, figures, landscape, flowers and birds. Her favourite is a 28-metre-long painting **43. which/that** pictures 20 lifelike egrets (白鹭).

“Painting on paper with knives is a delicate art and each line in the painting is as thin as a hair,” said Wang, **44. adding** (add) that once the marks are left on the paper, they cannot be covered, so it requires the painter to be **45. completely** (complete) absorbed in the work. Wang said, “I will continue working in the craft and put the art on the map.”

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,请给你的英国朋友 Peter 写一封邮件,邀请他参加你校美术教师举办的关于中国画的线上讲座。内容包括:

1. 讲座时间及登录平台;
2. 讲座内容(介绍中国山水画及其创作技巧);
3. 表达希望。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右,开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考词汇:在线的;线上的 online 登录网站 log onto the website 中国山水画 Chinese landscape painting

【参考范文】

Dear Peter,

How’s everything going? I am writing to invite you to attend an online lecture about Chinese paintings, which is to be presented by an art teacher in our school.

The lecture is due on April 20 from 3:00 pm to

5:00 pm. If you would like to attend it, please log onto the website of my school and enter the Conference Room. It will cover not only the introduction to Chinese landscape painting but also some basic techniques.

You are keen on Chinese painting. I hope you will benefit a lot from it.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

One Friday afternoon, some of my classmates planned to take a hike in a jungle (丛林), including my friends Jake and Liam. They asked me if I would like to go with them. I love outdoor activities, so I immediately agreed.

It was sunny the following morning. I was in a very good mood. I was so excited about hiking since it was the first time that I had hiked with them. I ate a light breakfast. After that, I hurriedly ran out of my house to meet them in the school playground.

The jungle where we were going was far from our school. Its name is Salymbia Jungle. It took about three hours to go there by bus, but it wasn't a boring journey as we were all eager to hike. After we got off the bus, we found a local guide to ensure our safety. The guide, whose name is Thomas, said that he had hiked in the Salymbia Jungle lots of times and that he was familiar with the route. When we arrived, Thomas told us never to leave the group. He warned us that we would easily get lost in the jungle if we walked alone. Then we began to hike.

There were various plants which we had never seen before. All of us were amazed at the beauty of

the scenery and the sounds of the creatures. Sadly, after hiking for about an hour, I found that my watch on my wrist was gone. I realised that my watch had fallen off. It was a gift from my grandma, and I loved it very much. Without thinking, I turned back and tried to find my watch. Since I was the last one walking in the group, nobody noticed it when I walked away.

I wasn't worried about getting lost because I thought I could find my watch easily. However, when I finally found my watch and tried to catch up with my friends, they had gone far. I immediately realised that I was alone and lost.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

The sky started to become dark and I was very worried. I didn't know what to do. I called out to my friends, but there was no reply. I tried to look for a way but none of the scenes seemed familiar. I walked for a few more minutes and I got tired and hungry. I felt frightened. Finally, I gave up and took a rest. As I was falling asleep, I heard a human voice. It was unbelievable, and then I heard someone else. I screamed, "Help!"

Fortunately, they found me with great effort. My friends Jake and Liam told the guide that they found I was lost, and finally some rescuers were called to help. They led me back to the bus. Seeing me, my friends told me they were really worried. I apologised to them for leaving the group without telling them. Instead of feeling angry with me, they comforted me and helped me calm down to learn a good lesson from it. And I truly learned a good lesson from it—never leave your group members when you're in a new place.

读后续写技能养成

精彩结尾之自然结尾

「技能概述」

1. 自然结尾:指顺着续写给文中所叙之事的自然发展,以它的必然结果作结尾,无套话和空话,简单、自然,可使文章的结构显得十分完整的一种结尾方式。
2. 续写技巧:根据给文中故事情节的发展,采用叙述性语言结尾或描述人物的动作或心理活动等结尾。

「范例体悟」

(第二段)*We had no idea where we were and it got dark. I remembered Uncle Paul telling us to keep to the track. But there was no track in sight! We tried to locate the farm house but in vain. Just as we were at a loss where to head, I spotted my cowboy hat lying on the grass in a short distance*

away. “Wow, we are back where the rabbit incident occurred!” With ease, we found the track leading to Uncle Paul’s farm house.

分析文中结尾设计的特点:

此处结尾是自然式结尾。它是基于上文作者同父亲乡间骑马,因马受惊吓而迷路,找到掉落的帽子后,自然地就找到回农场的路。思路清晰、自然、顺理成章。

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. award *v.* 颁奖
2. wink *v.* 眨眼示意
3. bubble *v.* 冒泡;洋溢着(某种感情)
4. gratitude *n.* 感激
5. rush *v.* 快跑
6. promise *v.* 答应,许诺
7. inspiration *n.* 灵感
8. die away 消散
9. bid farewell to 告别
10. set out/off 出发
11. nod at sb. 朝某人点头

II. 佳句背诵

1. At the award ceremony, David was awarded the award for the most outstanding performance.
在颁奖典礼上,大卫被授予最杰出表现奖。
2. With gratitude, we bid farewell to this kind woman, setting out on our journey home.
带着感激之情,我们告别了这位善良的女士,踏上了回家的旅程。
3. She was bubbling over with excitement.
她兴奋不已。
4. Satisfied, Mum nodded at Emma, with a joy bubbling from her heart.
妈妈满意地朝艾玛点了点头,心中涌起一股喜悦。
5. Surely she happily agreed and she’s already had inspiration for the next issue!
她肯定很高兴地答应了,而且她已经有了下一期的灵感!

6. His eyes filled with tears, Easton rang the doorbell and thanked Officer Matthew again.
Then he got into his car and drove away.
他的眼睛充满了泪水,伊斯顿按响了门铃,再次感谢马修警官。然后他上了车,驱车离去了。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. When asked to keep safety in mind, the sisters promised not to go out without permission.
当被要求注意安全时,姐妹俩承诺未经允许不会外出。
2. Many years later, Abe still held this book. He couldn’t forget how his stepmother loved him.
多年以后,亚伯仍然拿着这本书。他无法忘记继母对他的爱。
3. At that moment, with tears, I hugged her tightly, saying “thank you” for her forgiveness.
那一刻,我含泪紧紧地拥抱着她,对她的原谅说“谢谢”。
4. All his anger dying away in an instant, he rushed in the direction of his home.
他的怒气顷刻间消散,朝自己家的方向奔去。

II. 用自然结尾技巧完成语段

(第二段) *With everything ready, Bernard started out on his new business.* He took the popcorn around to the houses and sold all his popcorn. He earned a lot of money. Then, he wanted to be independent. Therefore, he asked Mrs Meredith to teach him how to make popcorn. After that, not only did he sell popcorn, but he also added cream and salt to the popcorn to make it taste better. Bernard grew up to be a remarkable man. (设计一个自然结尾) He never forgot the help of the Meredith family. He and his family have lived a happy life ever since.